



Class E 178

Book 1

Copyright No. E 468

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.



SKIRMISH LINE ADVANCING.

COMPLETE
SCHOOL HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES.

BY
EDWARD S. ELLIS, A. M.

PHILADELPHIA
PORTER & COATES.

COPYRIGHT, 1892.
BY PORTER & COATES.

INTRODUCTION.

THE study of history is so fascinating that digression is a constant temptation. The record of our country from the first settlement to the present time overflows with incidents of the most striking nature. The numberless State, county, and local compilations prove the inexhaustible resources of this mine—resources so limitless as to be practically useless. No memory can retain a tithe of the matter, nor is it desirable that such a feat should be within the grasp of any intellect.

But all should be familiar with the leading facts in the history of our country. It is impossible for any one to appreciate his priceless heritage as a citizen of the republic without a comprehensive knowledge of the salient and instructive features of its birth and existence. The story is one of heroic endeavor, patient suffering, sturdy enterprise, patriotic struggle, dauntless courage, wonderful progress, and marvelous achievement, that has made the United States a beacon-light among the nations of the earth.

That in the sweep of events errors have been made it would be idle to deny. Profound as should be the pride of every American in his birthright, he must not

close his eyes to the truth, nor admire the sun any the less because there are spots upon its face. "To err is human" is as true of nations as of individuals. That historian only is faithful to his work who aims at unerring accuracy and unvarying impartiality.

From the mass of material we have sought to select and group those facts which illustrate and bear directly upon the progress of our country. We have not distracted the student's attention by countless foot-notes, anecdotes of doubtful authenticity, or disquisitions upon questions of trifling importance which are to be found in more pretentious works. It is hoped that an interest will be excited in the pupil which will lead him to pursue at his leisure an extended course of historical study.

The plan pursued, we believe, if conscientiously followed by the student, will give to him an intelligent knowledge of the subject, and will so impress it upon his mind that it will remain through life, and form the nucleus to which he can add in after years.

The method adopted is as follows:

First.—A clear, succinct grouping of historical incidents.

Second.—A series of exhaustive questions upon those incidents.

Third.—A division of the subject-matter into topics, to be elucidated by the pupil.

Fourth. Subjects for written compositions suggested by the incidents and topics.

Fifth.—Questions for discussion. These questions shape themselves naturally from the historical matter, and are so presented as to contain an affirmative and negative view. Their discussion by the class cannot fail to excite interest, promote research, impress the truth, and broaden the knowledge of the student.

A rigorous study of the Complete School History in accordance with these methods must be effective in the highest attainable degree. History should not be skimmed over nor merely read, but studied with the thoroughness of a problem in mathematics. In no other way can its full meaning secure a dwelling-place in the memory and understanding of the pupil.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	5
------------------------	---

PART I.

THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND DEVELOPMENT.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. THE FIRST DISCOVERERS OF AMERICA	13
II. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS	15
III. OTHER EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA	20

PART II.

THE COLONIAL PERIOD.

IV. THE FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENT	28
V. SUBSEQUENT HISTORY OF THE SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA .	33
VI. SETTLEMENTS IN MASSACHUSETTS	37
VII. THE OTHER NEW ENGLAND COLONIES	45
VIII. SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK	47
IX. SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE	49
X. SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND, THE CAROLINAS, AND GEORGIA	53
XI. INTERCOLONIAL WARS	56
XII. LIFE IN THE COLONIAL TIMES	63
XIII. THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS	67

PART III.

THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

CHAPTER	PAGE
XIV. THE CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION	70
XV. EVENTS OF 1774-75	74
XVI. EVENTS OF 1776	80
XVII. EVENTS OF 1777	85
XVIII. EVENTS OF 1778	88
XIX. EVENTS OF 1779	93
XX. EVENTS OF 1780	98
XXI. EVENTS OF 1781.—CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION	102

PART IV.

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES.

XXII. WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-97	107
XXIII. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797-1801	113
XXIV. JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-09	116
XXV. MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-17. THE WAR OF 1812. FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR	120
XXVI. MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION continued.—SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR	125
XXVII. MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION continued.—CLOSE OF THE WAR	129
XXVIII. MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817-25	133
XXIX. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1825-29	137
XXX. JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-37	139
XXXI. VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-41	142
XXXII. HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION, 1841-45	145
XXXIII. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, 1845-49. THE WAR WITH MEXICO	149
XXXIV. TAYLOR AND FILMORE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1849-53	155
XXXV. PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853-57	158
XXXVI. BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857-61	160
XXXVII. GROWTH OF THE STATES	164

PART V.

THE CIVIL WAR.

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65	170
XXXIX. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (continued), 1862	178
XL. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (continued), 1863	196
XLI. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (continued), 1864	208
XLII. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION (continued), 1865	217

PART VI.

THE MANHOOD OF THE NATION.

XLIII. JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865-69	223
XLIV. GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION, 1869-77	228
XLV. HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION, 1877-81	233
XLVI. GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION, 1881-85	235
XLVII. CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION, 1885-89	237
XLVIII. HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1889-93	241

APPENDIX.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE	247
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES	251
LIST OF STATES AND TERRITORIES	265
LIST OF PRESIDENTS AND VICE PRESIDENTS	267
QUESTIONS FOR THE USE OF CLASSES	268
CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY	308
TOPICAL ANALYSIS	321
SUBJECTS FOR COMPOSITION	331
QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION	334
LIST OF BOOKS RECOMMENDED TO STUDENTS OF AMERICAN HISTORY	336
GENERAL INDEX	337

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER I.

THE FIRST DISCOVERERS OF AMERICA.

1. America's First Visitors.—The first discoverers of America probably came from Asia. We know little more than the fact that at some remote period navigators from China, driven far out of their course by storms, were swept across the Pacific Ocean and found a home in the new world. Others doubtless pushed their way across Bering Strait, and, being well pleased with the strange country, made it their home. But these first visitors and their descendants perished long ago, and only a few scattered ruins remain to tell the story of their settlement in America.

2. The Mound Builders.—Proofs abound that our country was once inhabited by a people who disappeared many centuries before the continent was discovered by Columbus. The Mississippi Valley contains immense earth-works, and in Mexico and Peru are found the remnants of monuments, temples, idols, and works

reared by the mound builders, who attained a high degree of civilization.

3. The Northmen.—A thousand years ago the Northmen, as the natives of Norway and Sweden were called,



A NORTHMAN SHIP.

were the most daring navigators in the world. In A. D. 860, Naddod, a famous sea-rover, was driven by a storm upon the coast of Iceland. He stayed only a short time: four years later it was visited by another Northman, who carried home such a

glowing account that a colony went thither from Norway. It did not prosper, however, and the settlement was soon abandoned.

4. Settlement of Iceland and Greenland.—Ten years later a second settlement was made in Iceland, and continued to prosper for hundreds of years. Eric the Red established a colony in Greenland, and it is believed that his sons looked upon the continent of America. They were on their way to join their father in Greenland when a storm carried them so far south that they saw the mainland, but sailed away without touching the shore.

5. Visits by Other Northmen.—Other Northmen visited America and formed settlements, which prospered for a time, but gradually disappeared, until the existence of the new world was forgotten by the old. Centuries passed and silence brooded over the great oceans, across which no navigator dared to steer his tiny ship. Until the close of the fifteenth century

America was as unknown to the old world as if it had no existence.

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.

1. Geographical Knowledge of this Period.—Five hundred years ago the land divisions of the earth were supposed to be Europe, Asia, and Africa. Their boundaries were unknown and their remote sections were believed to be uninhabited. At that time Europe carried on an extensive trade with India by means of caravans. Navigation had received a strong impulse from the invention of the mariner's compass, and an instrument termed the astrolabe by which latitude could be reckoned. Wonderful stories were brought back by those who had visited China and Japan, and many of the learned people believed that the world was round. With this belief naturally came one that China could be reached by sailing around Africa or going directly west across the Atlantic. These people had no thought that the continent of America lay between them and Asia.

2. Christopher Columbus.—Christopher Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy, about 1435. His father was a poor wool-comber, and Christopher was the eldest of four children. He attended the University of Pavia, but when in his fifteenth year he became a sailor. He visited England, Iceland, the Azores, the Guinea coast, and learned to be a skillful sailor.

3. Geographical Belief of Columbus.—Columbus was one of those who believed the earth to be round, and that by sailing two or three thousand miles westward he could reach the coast of Asia. He supposed

the globe to be much smaller than it is, and never suspected the existence of America.

4. **At the Court of Portugal.**—Columbus determined to try the new route, but he was too poor to bear the cost of such an expedition. He explained his plan to King John of Portugal, who thought well of it, but



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

referred him to the learned men at court. They ridiculed the idea.

5. **Expedition to the Cape Verde Islands.**—King John, however, was so impressed with the arguments of Columbus that he secretly fitted out an expedition and sent it westward. He was unwilling to pay the large reward asked by Columbus, and tried to cheat him by this underhand method. The navigators sent out by the king persevered until they reached the Cape Verde

Islands, when they became so frightened that they at once returned.

6. Columbus at the Spanish Court.—Disgusted with the meanness shown by King John, Columbus now went to Spain and laid his plans before Ferdinand and Isabella, the king and queen. Spain at that time was busy fighting the Moors, and Columbus had much trouble in finding those who believed in his ideas. For seven years he importuned King Ferdinand, and at last was told that his schemes were too visionary to be considered.



QUEEN ISABELLA OF SPAIN.

7. Columbus now turned his face toward France, but he was stopped before going far by the glad news that the queen would grant his prayer. She and a number of the members of the Spanish court believed in his ideas. The king remained indifferent and complained of the lack of funds. The queen replied that she would pledge her jewels to raise the money. This sacrifice, however, was not necessary, for St. Angel, treasurer of Aragon, and the friends of Columbus advanced the money.

8. Sailing of the Expedition.—The scheme was regarded by many as so desperate that Columbus had great difficulty in obtaining sailors. But he was not the one to be discouraged, as he had already proved, and finally securing crews with which to man the three small vessels, the *Pinta*, *Santa Maria*, and *Nina*, sailed from Spain, August 3, 1492.

9. The Voyage.—As the tiny ships sailed westward

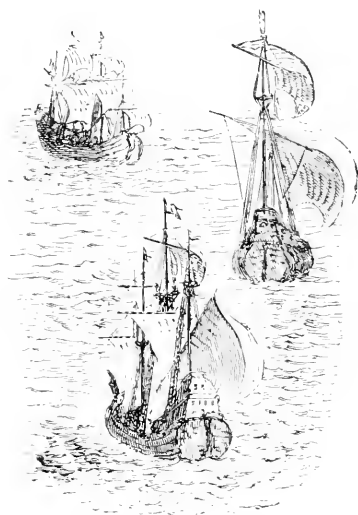
over the unknown ocean and their native land was left farther and farther behind, the sailors became frightened and were filled with all manner of superstitious fears. Many times they were on the point of throwing Columbus overboard and turning the ships back to Spain. It required all his tact and skill to restrain them, but he was determined that nothing should thwart his purpose.

10. At the crisis of discontent, when open mutiny was about to break out, unmistakable signs of land appeared. A bird hovered about the ships for several hours, patches of weeds and grass drifted past, and several of the sailors declared that they could detect

the odor of earth in the air, although land was not yet in sight.

11. First Sight of Land.

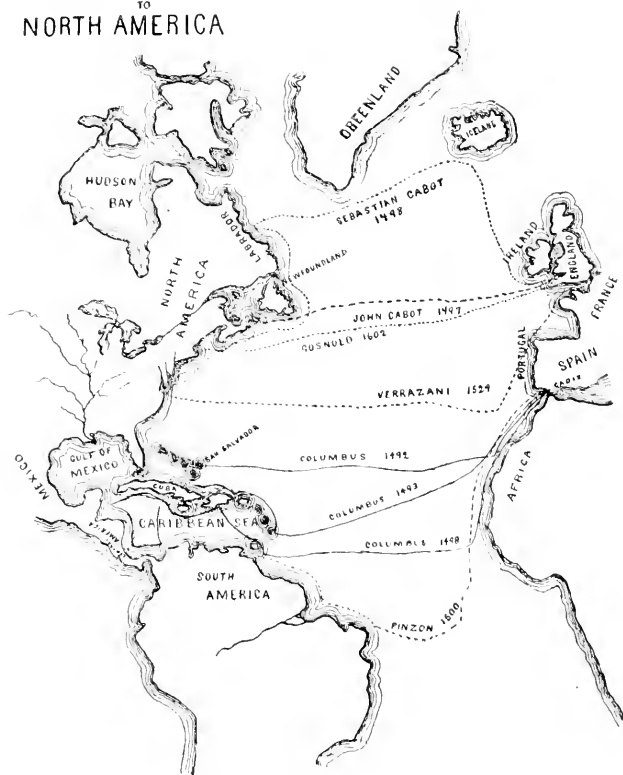
—On the evening of October 11th, while Columbus was standing near the stern of his vessel, the *Santa Maria*, he saw a point of light moving to the west as if carried by a person who was rapidly walking. Before the night had passed some one on the *Pinta* raised the cry, "Land!" When day dawned, the shore, clothed in tropical verdure, lay before them.

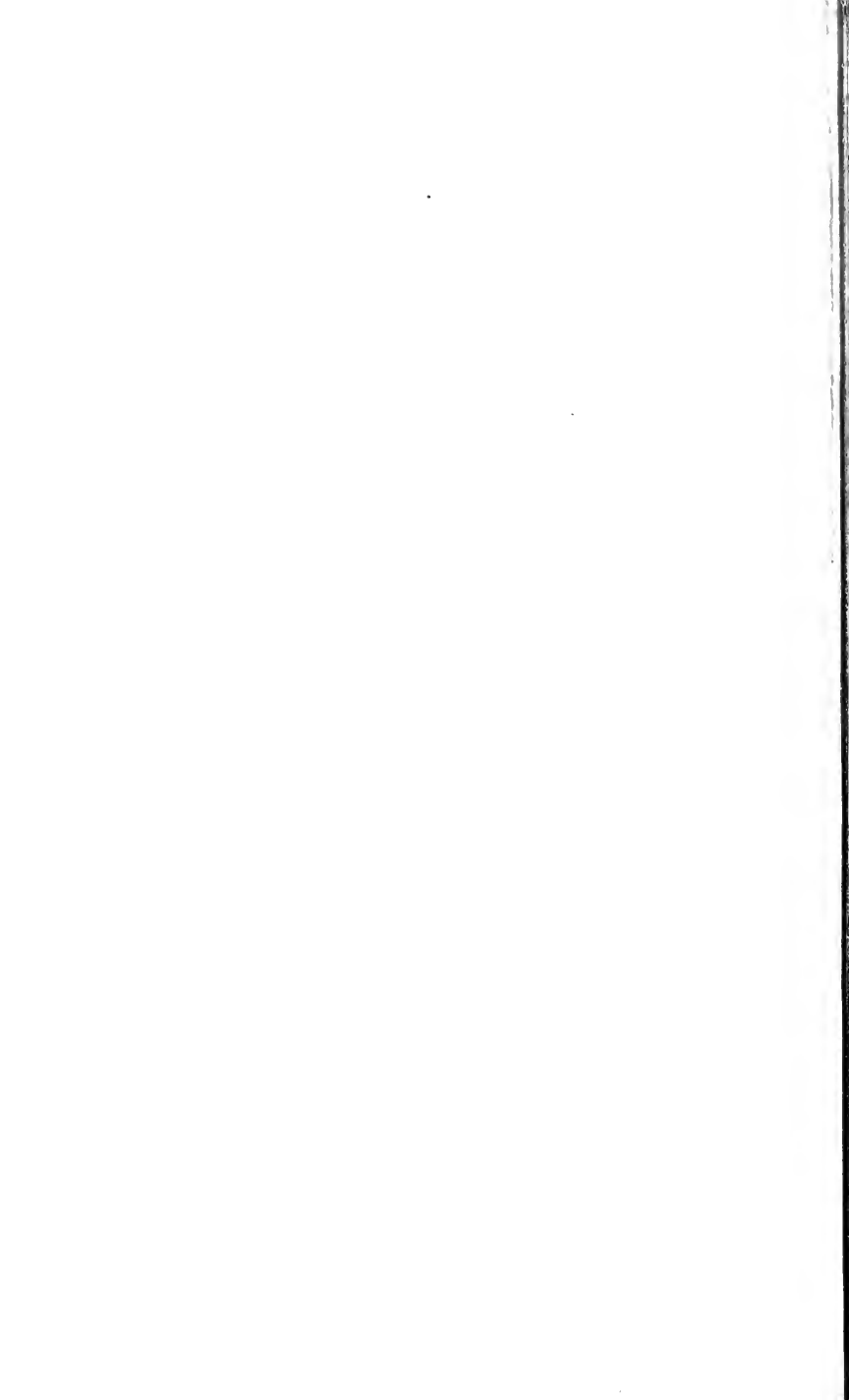


CARAVELS OF CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.
(After an engraving published in 1584.)

12. While the officers and sailors were gazing in wonder at the strange sight they saw scores of naked men swarming from among the trees to the edge of the

EARLY VOYAGES TO NORTH AMERICA





sea. There they stopped and stared in awe at the three vessels, which they supposed to be huge birds from some unknown land.

13. Landing of Columbus.—Clad in armor and a splendid uniform, and accompanied by a retinue of officers and men with banners, Columbus was rowed ashore, and first set foot upon the new world on Friday, October 12, 1492. He immediately sank upon his knees, kissed the ground, and gave fervent thanks to God. He then formally took possession of the country in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella.

14. The Indians.—Columbus gave the name of San Salvador to the island on which he landed. He visited other islands, all of which he supposed lay off the eastern coast of India. Because of this belief he called the copper-colored natives *Indians*.

15. Return of Columbus to Spain.—Columbus was received with the highest honors on his return to Spain. He carried with him nine natives of the new world and a quantity of gold ornaments. The account which he gave King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella filled them with wonder and gratitude. When they learned of the exuberant wealth of the newly-discovered country, its fine climate, its splendid forests, its mineral richness, and its thousands of natives ready to become converts to Christianity, the rulers gave thanks to God for the triumph he had granted to them.

16. Other Voyages by Columbus.—Columbus made three other voyages. On his second voyage he planted a colony on the island of Hispaniola, or Hayti. He first saw the mainland near the Orinoco River, in 1498, but died, May 20, 1506, in ignorance of the fact that instead of discovering a few outlying islands of Asia he had discovered the continent of America.

CHAPTER III.

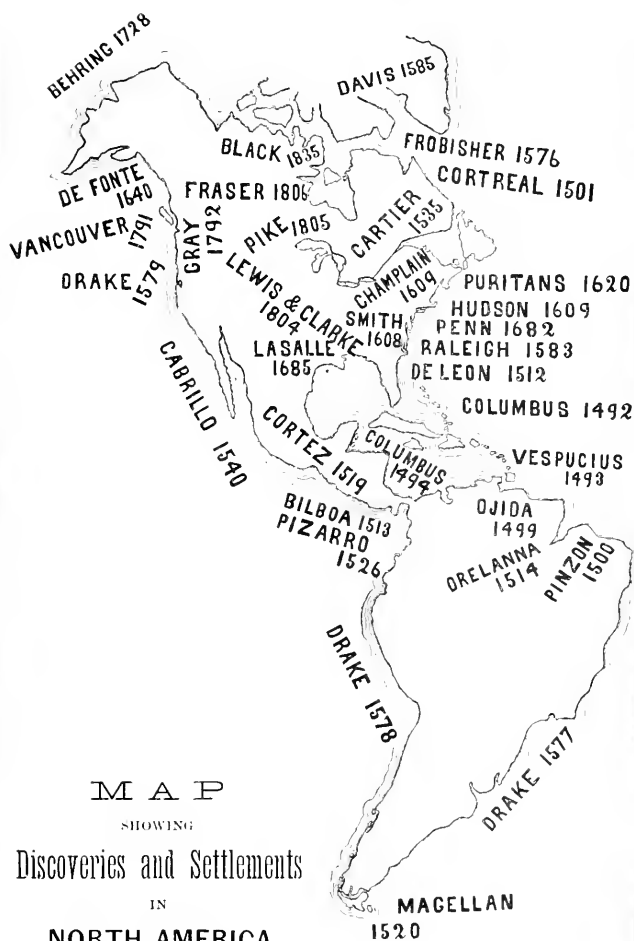
OTHER EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA.

1. **How America was Named.**—An Italian, Amerigo Vespucci (am-a-re'go ves-poot'chee), or, as it is written in Latin, Amer'icus Vespu'cius, accompanied an expedition to the new world. He was a friend of Columbus, and discovered a part of South America in 1499. When his description of the new country was published it was suggested that it should be named America. The suggestion was adopted, and thus the two continents bear the name of one who never had the right to be called their discoverer.

2. **Interest of the Leading Maritime Nations.**—At the time of the discovery of America by Columbus, Spain, England, France, and Holland were the leading maritime nations of Europe. They were roused by the achievements of the great navigator, and made haste to send out expeditions of discovery to the westward. Although Columbus was an Italian, he sailed under the flag of Spain, and that country, therefore, had a just claim to the land he discovered.

3. **John Cabot.**—All the nations named now hastened to send exploring expeditions westward. Despite the grandeur of the discovery of Columbus, there was much disappointment at his failure to open a trade with the Asiatic islands. John Cabot, an Italian by birth, living in England at the time, believed that the spice regions which Columbus failed to find lay farther to the north, and King Henry VII. of England gave him authority to carry out the project he had in mind.

4. In May, 1497, Cabot sailed from Bristol with his son Sebastian and eighteen persons. He sighted Cape





Breton or Newfoundland more than a year before Columbus discovered the mainland, and took possession of the country in the name of England. He was received with great honor on his return home, dressed in silks, and called the "Great Admiral."

5. Discoveries by the Cabots.—The following year, accompanied by his son Sebastian, he set out to find the route to Japan and China, and coasted as far south as North Carolina. Sebastian continued his father's discoveries, cruising from Newfoundland to Chesapeake Bay. Like all his predecessors, he failed to find the route to Asia, but his achievements gave to England a title to a vast portion of the new world.

6. Spanish Explorations in America.—**Ponce de Leon.**—Since the existence of America was established, the problem was to find the shortest route to India by going around or across the continent. In 1512, Ponce de Leon (pōn'thā dā lā-ōn') an old navigator, set out to search for a fabled fountain in which he believed he could bathe and become young again. On Easter Sunday he sighted a land brilliant with flowers and verdure, which he named Florida. He returned home, having gained little glory and without having discovered the secret of renewing his youth.

7. Balboa.—In 1513, Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (vas'co noon'yeth dā bal-bō'ah) made his way across the Isthmus of Panama, and from the crest of the Andes looked down upon the Pacific Ocean. Impressed by the grandeur of his discovery, he solemnly declared that the ocean and all the lands bordering upon it should remain the property of the Spanish Crown for ever.

8. Magellan.—In 1520, Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese navigator in the service of Spain, sailed through the straits named after him, and was the first person to

circumnavigate the globe. He had discovered a water-route to India, but it was too long to be used. Continued search, therefore, was made for a shorter course across the continent, which was believed to be quite narrow.

9. **De Narvaez.**—In 1528, Pamphilo de Narvaez (pam'fee-lo dā nār-vā'ēth) landed near Tampa Bay, Florida, with 400 men and a number of horses, and



BURIAL OF DE SOTO.

attempted the conquest of the country. They aroused the enmity of the Indians, were nearly starved, suffered all manner of hardships, and after the loss of a large number the survivors finally reached the Gulf of Mexico. There they embarked in a miserable boat in the

hope of reaching their starting-point. At last only four were left alive, the commander having been lost at sea. After suffering incredible hardships the survivors succeeded in reaching the Pacific coast.

10. De Soto.—Hernando de Soto, with nearly a thousand men, landed at Tampa Bay in the spring of 1539, and set out to explore the interior. Traversing the present States of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, they reached the Mississippi River in 1541. Another



CITY GATES, ST. AUGUSTINE, FLORIDA.

year of aimless exploration followed, and De Soto sickened and died. That the Indians might not know of his death, his body was sunk at midnight in the Mississippi. The expedition returned down the river, and, half the original explorers having perished, the rest reached the Spanish settlements in Mexico.

11. The Oldest Town in the United States.—Pedro

Menéndez mā-nen'idēth began a settlement in Florida in 1565, which he named St. Augustine. It was the first permanent settlement planted in our country, and St. Augustine, therefore, is the oldest town in the United States.

12. French Explorations in America.—Verrazani.—France was as eager as her sister-nations to share the territory of the new world. Verrazani (vēr-ā-zā-ni) was first sent to search for the shorter route to India. This navigator, like Columbus, was an Italian. He sailed along the coast in 1524, but his account is so vague that it is uncertain where he went or what he did. It is believed, however, that he entered Newport and Narragansett Bays, and coasted from North Carolina northward along New England. He named the country New France. To Verrazani belongs the credit of first declaring the true theory of the size of the globe in opposition to that of Columbus and other navigators.

13. Cartier.—In the summer of 1535, Jacques Cartier (kā-tyē) ascended the St. Lawrence to the present site of Montreal. His attempts to found a colony were failures.

14. Ribaut.—In 1562, Captain John Ribaut (rī-bō) dropped anchor in the harbor of Port Royal, S. C. His companions were so charmed with the climate and country that all wanted to stay. He selected some thirty whom he left behind, and who began at once to erect a fort. They became so homesick after a time, however, that they built a rude ship and set sail for France. After much suffering the survivors were captured by an English vessel and carried prisoners to England.

15. Laudonnière.—Captain Laudonnière (lō-dō-ni-ēr), who accompanied the first expedition, repeated the attempt at colonization two years later. He erected a

fort on the St. John's River. When on the verge of starvation and about to leave, Ribaut arrived with supplies and joined him. The Spanish, however, claimed the country, and under the lead of the cruel Menéndez they attacked the settlement and massacred nearly every one of the colonists.

16. Champlain and De Monts.—Champlain marched from the banks of the St. Lawrence early in the seventeenth century, and discovered the lake in Northern New York which bears his name. Uniting with De Monts, *général*, he founded the colony of Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, in 1605. This and the settlement of Mount Desert were plundered and broken up eight years later by the English from Virginia, who claimed that they were within the boundaries of the Virginia patent.

17. Settlement of Quebec.—The first permanent French settlement in Canada was established in 1608 at Quebec by Champlain. He succeeded in the face of many difficulties in firmly fixing the authority of France on the banks of the St. Lawrence. His success in this direction has caused him to be termed the "Father of New France."

18. English Explorations in America.—**Frobisher and Gilbert.**—It was not until the close of the sixteenth century that England seemed to see that it was time to bestir herself if she hoped to gain any share in the partition of the new world. Acting under the belief that America offered a shorter route to India, Martin Frobisher in 1576 sailed far to the northward and entered Barren Bay. He was turned back by the ice, and nothing was accomplished. In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, while engaged in a second attempt to colonize the new world, was lost at sea.

19. **Attempts at Settlement by Raleigh.**—Sir Walter Raleigh, a half-brother of Gilbert and a favorite of Queen Elizabeth, set vigorously at work to carry out the views of his lost relative. The queen gave him a grant of land covering an immense territory, which was named Virginia in honor of the Virgin Queen. He sent out an exploring expedition in 1584, which returned the same year.

20. In 1585 colonists went out purposing to gather



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

gold, with which they believed the new world abounded. Landing near Cape Hatteras, they gave all their energies to hunting for the precious metal, and would have starved to death, had it not been for the arrival of Sir Francis Drake in time to take them back. On this visit to America the settlers learned the use of tobacco from the Indians, and introduced it into England.

21. In 1587, Sir Walter Raleigh sent a second colony, that he determined should remain in America. They formed a settlement near Roanoke Island, off the coast of North Carolina, and made many visits inland. They still believed that gold was plentiful, and wasted their time in searching for it. Virginia Dare was the first English child born in Virginia. She was the granddaughter of John White, the governor of the colony.

22. White sailed that year for England to obtain supplies. The war with Spain occupied so much atten-

tion that it was three years before he could return. When he did so, it was to find that every member of the colony, including his own family, had perished. History is silent as to the cause of their strange taking off. Sir Walter Raleigh had spent an immense sum of money in his vain attempts to found colonies in America. He now gave over his efforts and transferred his patents to other parties.

23. Dutch Explorations in America.—Henry Hudson.—Although Holland was a great maritime nation during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, she showed little interest in the new world. With the opening of the seventeenth century, however, she sent out Captain Henry Hudson, an English navigator in her service. In 1609 he sailed up the river which bears his name, searching, like all who had preceded him, for the short route to India. The discovery of Captain Hudson gave the Dutch their claim to the region extending from Cape Cod to the Delaware River. To this territory he gave the name of New Netherland.

PART II.

THE COLONIAL PERIOD.

CHAPTER IV.

THE FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENT.

1. **Slow Progress of Settlement.**—More than a hundred years passed after the discovery of America before a permanent settlement was made by the French, Dutch, or English. Spain alone had established a weak colony at San Augustine, Florida (1565). The rest of the vast continent was inhabited by Indians and wild animals.

2. The result, however, of the various explorations and attempts at settlement was the resolution on the part of the leading nations to colonize the new world. In the nature of things, such an inviting field could not remain long unoccupied by white men.

3. **The London and Plymouth Companies.**—King James I. of England granted the enormous territory known as Virginia to two companies, the London and the Plymouth. To the London Company was given the tract lying between the thirty-fourth and thirty-eighth degrees of latitude. This was called South Virginia. North Virginia, lying between the forty-first and forty-fifth degrees of latitude, was granted to the Plymouth Company.

4. Provisions of the Charters.—The charters of these companies provided that the English king should name a resident council for each of the colonies, who should elect their own presiding officer. He must not be a clergyman. The king or council had the power to change the laws made in America. The Church of England was the established religion, and it was provided that for five years all the property should be held in common.

5. Efforts of the Plymouth Company.—In 1606 the Plymouth Company sent out two ships, but one was captured by the Spaniards. The other cruised along the coast of Maine, and brought back a favorable report. A colony was despatched thither in the following year, but it did not remain long.

6. Expedition of the London Company.—The London Company sent three vessels from England, December, 19, 1606, containing one hundred and five men, but no women. Half of the colonists were "gentlemen," who felt above working, and who visited America to learn whether it contained anything worthy their attention. There were some soldiers and servants, but not more than one-fifth of the party were thrifty or willing to toil.

7. John Smith.—The colonists included one remarkable man. He was John Smith, who had met with many adventures in other parts of the world. He was brave, industrious, and possessed a strong will. No one understood better than he what was necessary to make the colony successful. It never could have survived without him.¹

¹ Few men have met with more romantic adventures than Captain John Smith of Virginia, and few have taken more pains to let the world know about them. It is said that when a boy he ran away from his home

8. The Fleet.—The fleet comprised the *Susan Constant*, of one hundred tons burden, the *God-speed*, of forty, and the *Discovery*, a pinnace of only twenty tons. The commander was Captain Christopher Newport. The weather continued so stormy that it was more than a month before the ships were able to leave the coast of England, and it was four months ere they reached Virginia.

9. Ascent of the James River.—Their intention was to land on Roanoke Island, where Raleigh had planted his colonies, but a storm drove them into the mouth of a large river, which they named James in honor of their king. It was the month of April, and the shores were radiant with blossoms and flowers whose fragrance floated across the smooth water. To the men, wearied with their long voyage, it was the fairest land on which they had ever gazed. They were eager to land and begin their new settlement.

10. Founding of Jamestown.—After searching along the river for a while, they selected a site, and named it Jamestown. The landing was made May 13, 1607, and Jamestown was the first permanent English settlement in America.

in Lincolnshire, England, and engaged in the Holland wars. Then he fought the Turks: on his way thither he was thrown overboard during a storm because he was a heretic, but swam safely to land; he killed three Mussulmans in succession at a sort of barbaric tournament. Being captured in battle, he was sold as a slave, but afterward killed his master, donned his garments, and rode into the Russian camp. He reached England at the time of the excitement about settling the new world, and embarked with others. He roused the envy of his associates and was landed in chains, but finally became president of the colony, where his marvelous adventures continued. It should be remembered, however, that Smith himself is the authority for most of these wonderful tales, and the probability is that they contain much more fiction than truth. Nevertheless, he was an extraordinary man, and rendered invaluable services in the colonization of America.

11. Sufferings of the Settlers.—The settlers were in a sad plight. Nearly all their food was gone, and it was too late to plant crops. The Indians attacked them, and killed one boy and wounded seventeen men. The rest were obliged to keep a continual watch, for the savages were alert and vengeful. They were angered at the prospect of having the strangers settle among them and take away their hunting-grounds.

12. Matters grew worse. By and by nearly every one was ill, and at the end of a few months half the colonists had died. The survivors lived in wretched hovels and in holes in the ground. It looked for a time as if Jamestown was to share the fate of the other attempts at planting colonies in America.

13. Services of John Smith.—In this dreadful crisis John Smith proved himself the right man in the right place. The settlers saw that he was the only one who could save them, and they made him president of the council, with full power to do as he thought best. He induced them to build a fort and log houses. He told them that every man who would eat must work, and that the only way to save themselves was by industry and self-reliance.

14. Captain John Smith saw that food must be obtained from the Indians or his people would starve. He therefore made long voyages among the waters of Chesapeake Bay, cultivating the friendship of the Indians and trading with them for supplies. The red men were eager to give him corn for the gaudy beads and trinkets of which they were fond.

15. Capture of Smith by the Indians.—On one of Smith's voyages up the Chick-a-höm'iny the Indians took him prisoner. To prevent their killing him, he roused their wonder by showing them the use of his pocket-

compass and making drawings of the moon and stars. He was taken before Powhatān, the great war-chief, who ordered him to be slain. Pocahōntas, the daughter of the chief, begged for his life, and he was allowed to return to Jamestown.

16. The "Starving Time."—Smith was so badly hurt in 1609 by the explosion of some gunpowder that he was obliged to go to England for treatment. Left without his guiding hand, the settlers fell a prey to



THE MARRIAGE OF POCAHONTAS.

disease and famine. Some were killed by Indians, and others in desperation seized a boat and became pirates. That winter (1609–10) is known in history as the "starving time." At the end of six months only sixty persons out of four hundred and ninety were left in Jamestown. These in despair decided to return to England. They

were about starting when Lord Delaware arrived with a new company of immigrants and abundant supplies. All landed, and Jamestown was saved from ruin.

17. The Third Charter.—A second charter had been granted the company in 1609, but the results were so bad that a third one was granted in 1612. This abolished the London council, and gave to the stockholders the right to regulate their affairs as they thought best.

18. Pocahontas.—Pocahontas naturally became a great favorite with the colonists. In 1613 she married John Rolfe, an English planter, and received Christian baptism in the rude little church at Jamestown. She visited England three years later with her husband, and attracted great attention. She was received at court and met her old friend, Captain John Smith. When about to return to America she fell ill and died. From the infant son whom she left some of the leading families of Virginia are proud to claim descent.

CHAPTER V.

SUBSEQUENT SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

1. Bad Government.—The promise to the colonists that after five years they should have land of their own was broken. The industrious supported the lazy, and under this bad rule the settlers were no better than slaves. Sir Thomas Dale, the governor, did something to help them, but Argall, his successor, ruled so badly that the colony was brought to the verge of ruin.

2. "The Great Charter."—The First Legislative Body in the New World.—The company in London granted a "Great Charter" to Virginia in 1618. This

gave to the settlers the right to have a voice in making their own laws. Sir George Yeardley (July 30, 1619) called together at Jamestown the first legislative body ever convened in America.

3. Method of Government.—The government of Virginia was vested in a governor, a "council of estate," and a "general assembly." The members of the assembly, or "burgesses," were chosen from the different plantations or "boroughs." The laws thus made were not binding unless ratified by the company in London, while the rules of the company were not binding until ratified by the colonial assembly. In 1621 these provisions were embodied in a written constitution. The plan of government was copied in time by the other colonies.

4. Prosperity.—A period of prosperity now came to Virginia. The settlers wrought hard, for they had for the first time the right to reap what they sowed. Both sides of the James were lined with settlements for more than a hundred miles. Excellent young women were sent from England, and the settlers ran up the price of the wives thus brought from one hundred to one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. Every freeman was allowed to vote. Religious toleration prevailed. The colonists now looked upon Virginia as their home, and gave up all thought of going back to England.

5. Introduction of African Slavery.—In 1619 a Dutch vessel called at Jamestown with twenty negroes that had been kidnapped on the African coast. The colonists needed help, and bought them. In this manner African slavery was introduced into America. Many other slaves were imported afterward, for the settlers were eager to raise all the tobacco possible.

6. Massacres by the Indians.—Powhatan, who had been a true friend of the English, died in 1618. His successor was a bitter enemy of the white people, and eager for the extermination of all who were in Virginia. He laid his plans with such skill and secrecy that few dreamed of danger until the massacre began. A converted Indian warned a few of his friends, and they spread the alarm as quickly as they could. Thus Jamestown and the nearest settlements were able to prepare themselves.

7. On the 22d of March, 1622, the Indians burst upon the colonists, assailing them with such fury that within an hour more than four hundred, including men, women, and children, were slain. The attack was so sudden that many of the settlers were killed with their own hatchets and implements. The massacre extended one hundred miles along the James. In the fierce war that followed, the whites, numbering four thousand, lost about half that number.

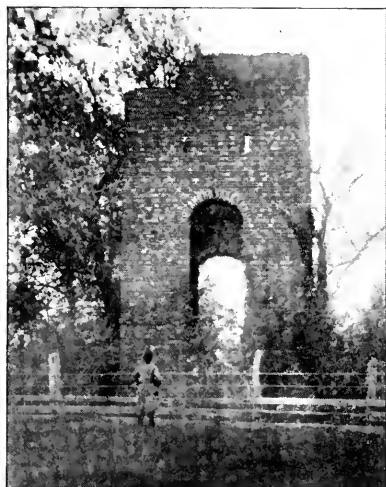
8. A War of Extermination against the Indians.—In 1644 the Indians slew about five hundred colonists. The survivors then began a war of extermination. They captured the leading chief, who was wounded and died a prisoner. At last the Indians sued for peace, and, after ceding a large tract of land to the settlers, withdrew farther into the wilderness.

9. Virginia a Royal Province.—King James was displeased with the liberal sentiments of the colony, and took away its charter in 1624. He allowed the people to elect their assembly, but appointed their governor and council. This made Virginia a royal province, and she remained such until the Revolution.

10. Oppressive Measures by the British Parliament.—The British Parliament oppressed the colony

in many ways. In 1660 it affirmed the Navigation Act of 1651, and the settlers were compelled to carry on their commerce in English vessels. They were also required to send all their tobacco to England. The members of the assembly were mostly loyalists, who imposed heavy taxes, voted themselves large salaries, refused to go out of office when their terms expired, and even fined the Quakers for not attending the English Church service.

11. Bacon's Rebellion.—The assembly finally became so oppressive that the people revolted in 1676.



RUINS OF JAMESTOWN, VA.

Governor Berkeley refused to provide the settlements with the means of defense against the Indians. Nathaniel Bacon formed a company, defeated the Indians, and then marched to meet the governor, who declared he was a traitor. During the struggle which followed Governor Berkeley was driven out of Jamestown and the little town burned, and only a few ruins to-day mark the

site of the first permanent English settlement in America.

12. Continued Prosperity.—While these troubles were taking place Bacon died. There was no one competent to take his place, and his followers dispersed. Governor Berkeley punished the leaders without mercy.

Virginia, however, continued to prosper. As early as the middle of the seventeenth century she had a population of thirty thousand, and traded extensively with England, Holland, and the colonies of New England.

CHAPTER VI.

SETTLEMENTS IN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. **Religious Persecution in England.—The Pilgrims or Puritans.—The Separatists.**—There was much religious persecution in England during the seventeenth century. Among those who suffered were the people known as *Pilgrims*, because of their wanderings. They were also called *Puritans* for the reason that they were dissatisfied with the ceremonies of the Church of England. They thought there should be greater purification from old observances and doctrines. Those Puritans who withdrew from the Established Church were called "Separatists."

2. **The Mayflower.**—In 1620 a band of one hundred and two Puritans sailed from Holland in the *Mayflower*. They landed at Plymouth, Massachusetts, on the 21st of December, after a long and stormy passage. They came ashore during a storm of snow and sleet, and straightway began building huts to shelter themselves and families.

3. **Character of the Puritans.**—The Puritans were well fitted to become pioneers. They were earnest, industrious, and deeply religious. Their lot was a hard one from the first. They suffered from the terrible severity of the weather. Before spring half of them died, and at one time there were only seven persons left to take

care of the sick. Yet none of them thought of giving up or going back.

4. Samoset and Massasoit.—The Indians had suf-



NATIONAL MONUMENT TO THE FOREFATHERS, PLYMOUTH, MASS.

fered so much from a recent pestilence that they did not molest the Puritans. When spring came and they began planting their crops, they received a visit one day

from an Indian named Sam-o'set. To their surprise and delight, he called out, when he saw them, "Welcome, Englishmen!" He had learned a few words of English from some fishermen on the coast of Maine. Mas'sa-soit, the chief of Samoset's tribe, soon after visited the colonists, and made a treaty of peace which lasted fifty years.

5. War Averted.—Ca-non'i-cus, a Narragansett chief, thought to frighten the settlers by sending them a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin. This was meant as a declaration of war. Governor Bradford returned the snake-skin at once. When the Indians received it, they found some powder and balls inside. They were wise enough to take the hint, and did not disturb the white people.

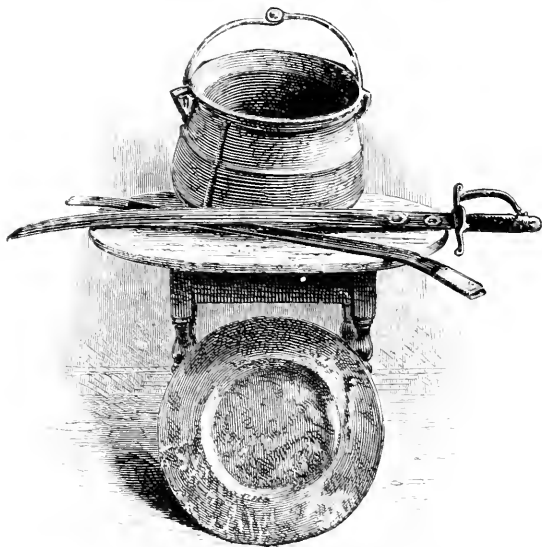
6. Captain Miles Standish.—Captain Miles Standish was at the head of military affairs at Plymouth. He was small of stature, but very brave. He showed no mercy to the hostile Indians. When he learned that a number were plotting to destroy the whites, he and his men fell upon and killed them all.

7. Prosperity of the Colony.—The health of the colonists improved with the coming of spring. The Indians taught them how to cultivate maize, or Indian corn, and they planted a great deal of it. The *Mayflower* returned to England in 1621, and the ship *Fortune* arrived later in the year with thirty-five colonists.

8. The Famine Year.—The people of Plymouth suffered much from lack of food. Their harvests failed, and they had to provide for the new-comers. The year 1623 is known as the "famine year," when they would have perished from starvation except for the shellfish taken from the waters. Four years after their arrival only one hundred and eighty-four were alive. The plan

of holding property in common was tried, but it failed just as it had at Jamestown.

9. Union of the Two Colonies.—A quantity of land being assigned to each settler, an improvement began. There was plenty to eat and affairs prospered. The progress, however, was slow. The colonists elected



MILES STANDISH'S SWORD, ETC.
(Now in Plymouth Hall.)

their own governor and made their own laws. In 1692, Plymouth was united under the name of Massachusetts with the Massachusetts Bay Colony.

10. The Massachusetts Company.—**Other Settlements.**—The Pilgrims were no more than fairly settled at Plymouth when other colonists began arriving in New England. In 1628 the Massachusetts Company was

formed, and in the same year they made a settlement at Salem. Two years later Governor Winthrop founded Boston, which became the capital of the province. Twenty thousand people settled in Massachusetts between the years 1630 and 1640.

II. The Massachusetts Bay Colonists.—The Massachusetts

Bay colonists were Puritans, but their views differed from those of their friends at Plymouth. The latter were Separatists—that is, they separated from the Church



GOVERNOR JOHN WINTHROP.

of England—but the people of the Massachusetts Bay Colony remained in the Established Church, although dissatisfied with many of its features. They sought to reform it from within. They had come to America, however, to maintain Puritan principles, and did not mean that any one should interfere with their purpose.

12. Persecution of the Quakers.—Great hostility was shown toward the Quakers. They were fined, whipped, thrown in prison, and banished, but they regularly returned, willing and even eager to suffer for conscience' sake. Four of them were put to death, after which the persecutions gradually ceased.

13. Intolerance of the Puritans.—**Banishment of Roger Williams.**—They also forbade any one to vote in civil affairs unless a member of their own Church. Those who persisted in using the old forms were sent back to England. Roger Williams was so bold in gainsaying this form of tyranny that the clergy and magistrates feared the peace of the colony would be destroyed. They ordered him to return to England, but he escaped them, and in the depth of winter fled

through the wilderness to the Narragansett Indians.



They gave him shelter and land, and he founded a settlement which he named Providence.

14. The United Colonies of New England.—The United

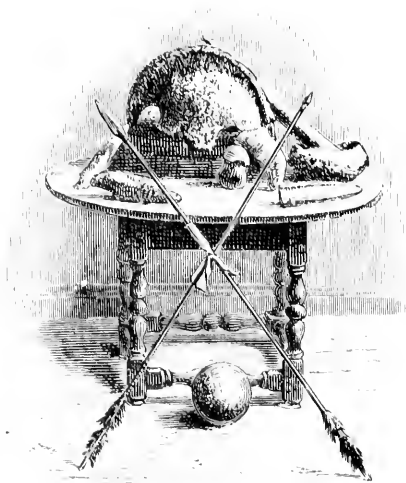
WILLIAMS' FLIGHT THROUGH
THE WILDERNESS.

Colonies of New England was formed in 1643 by a union of the colonies of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, New Haven, and Connecticut. The object of this union was mutual protection against the encroachments of the Dutch and French settlers and the attacks of the Indians.

15. King Philip's War.—On the death of Massasoit,

who had always been friendly to the colonists, his son Philip succeeded him. He was their bitter foe, and did his utmost to unite the New England tribes against them. While the settlers of Swansea were on their way to church, they were suddenly assailed by Indians, who killed one of them and wounded several. The Indians were finally driven off, but only to attack other settlements in the Connecticut Valley.

16. The Swamp Fight.—The settlers, however, were quick to rally, and they pressed the war with vigor. Learning that the powerful Narragansetts were on the point of joining Philip, a force of fif-



KING PHILIP'S ARMS.

teen hundred attacked their stronghold. One thousand warriors were slain and two hundred white men fell. This is known in history as the "Swamp Fight."

17. Death of Philip.—**Peace.**—The Narragansetts took a fearful revenge by burning, plundering, and killing in every direction. Gradually, however, the Indians were forced back, and Philip finally became a fugitive. He was chased from one place to another, and at last surrounded in a swamp near Mount Hope. While trying to escape he was shot dead by a friendly Indian.

18. Hostilities did not cease for several months, but the deathblow had been given to the Indian confederation. The warriors were mostly killed, and the rest subdued, many being sold as slaves to Barbadoes.

19. **Massachusetts made a Royal Province.—Sir Edmund Andros.**—The Navigation Act bore hardly on Massachusetts, which had a thriving commerce. The people pushed their trade with the West Indies despite the decree. Officers were sent over to enforce the law and assert the authority of the king. The colony was so defiant that its charter was annulled, and Massachusetts, in 1684, was made a royal province. Two years later Sir Edmund Andros arrived as the first royal governor of New England.

20. **Imprisonment of Andros.—Sir William Phipps.**—Andros was very tyrannical, but was endured for three years. Then, learning that James II. had been dethroned, the colonists seized Andros, put him in jail, and resumed their old form of government. Three years later Sir William Phipps, as royal governor, took charge of the province, which included Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia.

21. **The Salem Witchcraft.**—One of the strangest delusions ever known prevailed in Salem in 1692. Every one seemed to be filled with terror of witches, and many, under the influence of punishments and even torture, confessed themselves to be witches. During the panic the jails were crowded with the accused, twenty were put to death, and many of the people of Salem moved away. At last reason returned, and those who had been the most active in persecuting others were deeply sorrowful because of their fanaticism.

CHAPTER VII.

THE OTHER NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

1. Settlement of Maine and New Hampshire.—

About two years after the landing at Plymouth, Gorges and Mason received from the council for New England the grant of an extensive tract of land lying between the Merrimac and Kennebec Rivers. Several small fishing-stations were established near Portsmouth and Dover in 1623. The patent was dissolved soon after. Mason took the country west of the Piscataqua, and named it New Hampshire; Gorges took that which was east, and called it Maine.

2. Massachusetts claimed the region, and to secure a clear title bought the rights of the heirs of Gorges. Maine remained a part of Massachusetts until 1820. The settlements in New Hampshire were so weak that they were glad to place themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. This union was severed and renewed three times. At last, in 1741, New Hampshire became a royal province, and remained such until the Revolution.

3. Settlement of Connecticut.—In 1631 the Earl of Warwick transferred his grant of the Connecticut Valley to Lord Brooke, Lord Saye-and-Sele, and others. Before the English could take possession, the Dutch, who claimed it, built a fort at Hartford and began trading with the Indians. The English established a post at Windsor, and settlers came from Boston. Hartford was founded in 1635, and the erection of a fort at the mouth of the river shut out the Dutch.

4. Destruction of the Pequods.—The colonists were hardly settled in their new homes when the Pequod

Indians tried to persuade the Narragansetts to join them in a war against the whites. Roger Williams dissuaded them, and the Pequods entered upon the war without their help. They massacred thirty of the colonists, who sent a strong force under Captain Mason to attack their stronghold on Mystic River. He did so with such fierceness (June 5, 1637) that the whole tribe was slain.

5. The Charter Oak.—In 1662 a royal charter united New Haven and Connecticut colonies, and guaranteed to them all the rights agreed upon by the Connecticut colonists. In 1687 the tyrannical Governor Andros marched from Boston to Hartford and demanded the charter. During the debate the lights were suddenly put out. When the candles were relighted the charter was missing. Captain Wadsworth had slipped out in the darkness and hid it in the hollow of an oak. This tree was afterward known as the Charter Oak, and remained standing for a hundred and seventy years.

6. Governor Andros was not to be baffled; he declared the charter government at an end, and went back to Boston. Two years later, when he was deposed, the charter was brought from its hiding-place, the general court reassembled, and the government went on as before.

7. Settlement of Rhode Island.—Providence Plantation was settled by Roger Williams in 1636, the same year that Hartford was founded. A party of exiles from Massachusetts bought the land of Aquiday, an Indian chief, and established the Rhode Island Plantation. These people, remembering their own persecutions for the sake of their religion, generously allowed others to believe as they chose.

8. The request of the colonists that they might join the New England Union was refused because they had no charter. So Roger Williams went to England and secured a charter uniting the two plantations. When he came back, in 1647, the people met and agreed upon a set of laws which gave freedom of faith and worship to all.

CHAPTER VIII.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.

1. **Voyage of the Half Moon.**—We have learned that Henry Hudson, an English explorer in the employ of Holland, sailed up the Hudson in 1609. He made the voyage in a small vessel called the *Half Moon*, with only twenty sailors. He had been sent by the Dutch East India Company to search for a short route to China.

2. **The New Netherlands.**—The following year the Dutch began trading in furs with the Indians along the Hudson. In 1611 they explored the coast from the Delaware to a point beyond Boston harbor. They claimed all the country between, and gave to it the name of New Netherlands.

3. **Settlements by the Dutch.**—A trading-post had been built where Albany now stands, and others were established elsewhere. The Dutch traders erected some huts on Manhattan Island in 1613. No colony, however, was sent out until ten years later. The settlement at Albany was called Fort Orange, and the one on the present site of New York was known as New Amsterdam.

4. Among the privileges granted to the Dutch settlers was one giving to every person who planted a

colony of fifty the right to buy lands of the Indians. These lands, it was decreed, should belong to the heirs of the purchasers for ever. Great trouble was caused in after years by this law.

5. The Dutch Governors.—Peter Minuit, the first Dutch governor, took charge in 1626. He brought all the settlements under one government, and bought all Manhattan Island from the Indians for a sum equal to twenty-four dollars. Two years later the population was less than three hundred.

6. Wouter van Twiller became governor in 1633. He was an ignorant man. The ablest Dutch governor was Peter Stuyvesant (stīve'sant), who assumed charge in 1646. In 1655 he sailed up the Delaware with a small fleet and captured the settlements which the Swedes had planted there. He came to an agreement with Connecticut as to the boundary-line.

7. Capture of New Amsterdam by the English.—England, however, claimed all the territory between Virginia and New England, because Cabot had explored it many years before. In 1664 four English ships anchored in the harbor of New Amsterdam and compelled the town to surrender. The name was changed to New York. The population at that time was about fifteen hundred.

8. Subsequent History of New York City.—The people, who were rather pleased with the coming of the English, were disappointed by their rulers. They refused them many of their rights. They were glad, therefore, when nine years later a Dutch fleet appeared in the harbor. They returned to their old rule, but the following year New Amsterdam came into the hands of the English through treaty, and so remained until the Revolution.

9. The English Governors.—Governor Andros, the

marplot of the colonies, was the first English governor, but he was such a tyrant that he was called home. By permission of the Duke of York an assembly of the representatives of the people was called in 1683. Two years later, however, when the duke became James II. of England, he forbade such assemblages, abolished printing-presses, and annexed the colony to New England.

10. When Governor Andros was imprisoned in Boston, Nicholson, his deputy in New York, lost no time in fleeing from the angered people. Captain Leisler thereupon took charge until the arrival of Governor Sloughter. The aristocracy in New York were bitter enemies of Leisler. They secured his arrest under charge of treason, and induced the governor while intoxicated to sign his death-warrant. Leisler was hanged before the governor recovered his senses. New York took an active part in the intercolonial wars which followed, and was one of the most powerful colonies at the breaking out of the Revolution.

CHAPTER IX.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, AND DELAWARE.

1. **First Settlement in New Jersey.**—New Jersey was included in New Netherlands, and the Dutch erected a trading-post at Bergen about 1618. The Duke of York, having received from his brother Charles II. the grant of New Netherlands, kept that part now known as New York, but gave the portion lying between the Hudson and the Delaware to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. The first English settlement here was at

Elizabethtown in 1664. Several Dutch and Swedish settlements had been made at an earlier date.

2. East and West Jersey.—In 1674 the province was divided into East and West Jersey, a distinction which prevails at the present day. Lord Berkeley, who



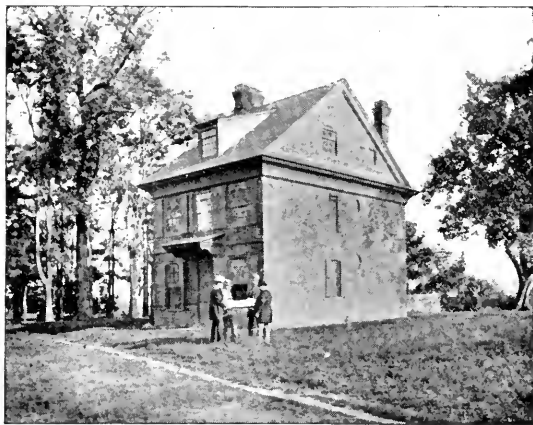
WILLIAM PENN.

owned West Jersey, sold it to a company of Quakers. A number of these persons soon after settled near Burlington.

3. After Sir George Carteret's death, East Jersey, his portion, was sold to William Penn and eleven other Quakers. There was great confusion over the land-titles, and in 1702 the proprietors surrendered their rights to the English Crown. New Jersey was united

with New York under one governor, but with her own assembly. In 1738, New Jersey was set apart as a distinct royal province, and so remained until the Revolution.

4. First Settlement in Delaware.—In 1638 the Swedes made a settlement near Wilmington, Delaware. They named the country New Sweden. They planted another settlement a short distance below Philadelphia. These settlements afterward fell into the hands of the Dutch, but they prospered for many years.



PENN'S HOUSE, PRESENT APPEARANCE.

5. William Penn.—King Charles II. of England owed William Penn a large sum of money on account of the services of his father, Admiral Penn. He paid the debt by granting to William Penn a large territory on the west side of the Delaware. To this grant the Duke of York added the present State of Delaware.

6. The Object of Penn.—**Founding of Philadelphia.**—Penn's object was to find a refuge for his sect, which was bitterly persecuted in England. He sent out large numbers of Quakers to the new country, and arrived

himself in 1682. He bought land of the Swedes, and the following year laid out the city of Philadelphia.

7. Penn's Beneficent Rule.—Pennsylvania prospered from the first. This was due to the wise administration of Penn and his successors. Although the king of England had been paid for the land, Penn bought it again of the Indians. The price was small, but it satisfied those simple folk, who found themselves dealing with honest men.



PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

8. Some of Penn's theories are worth remembering. The foundation principle was perfect freedom of conscience. Murder and treason only were punishable with death. This provision was insisted upon by the chief-justice, but no person was hanged in Pennsylvania during the lifetime of Penn. He maintained that a prison should be devoted to the reformation of the

criminal; arbitration should take the place of litigation, even between nations; an oath is unnecessary, as are cockpits, card-playing, and drunkenness; lying is a crime, and should be punished as such. He established jury trial, and in cases where an Indian was interested ordered that the jury should include an equal number of white men and Indians.

9. Penn made a treaty with the Indians which remained unbroken for sixty years. Seven thousand persons, representing several nationalities, arrived at Philadelphia in one year, and in three years the city gained more than New York in half a century.

10. Delaware, known as the "three lower counties on the Delaware," was also under Penn's government. At the request of the people Penn gave to them a deputy governor and allowed them to have their own assembly. The two provinces, however remained under one governor until the Revolution.

11. **Death of Penn.—His Heirs.**—Penn died in 1718, and his heirs retained their proprietorship and appointed the governors until 1779. In that year the State of Pennsylvania bought the claims of the heirs for about half a million dollars.

CHAPTER X.

SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND, THE CAROLINAS, AND GEORGIA.

1. **Settlement of Maryland.**—It has been shown that one cause of so many people coming to America was to escape persecution. Among those thus driven from their homes was Cecil Calvert, or Lord Baltimore. He was a wealthy gentleman and a Roman Catholic.

He obtained from King Charles a grant of land lying north of the Potomac River, and his brother made a settlement in 1634 near the mouth of the river.

2. The name of the new settlement was St. Mary's. The charter gave to freemen a voice in making the laws. In 1649 the "Toleration Act" was passed, which allowed all to worship God as they thought best. This liberality caused Maryland to become an asylum for persecuted persons.

3. **Conflicting Claims.—Civil War.**—Virginia claimed that Lord Baltimore's grant was for land belonging to her. Clayborne, a member of the Jamestown council, established two trading-posts in Maryland, and would not leave until he and his people were driven out. Clayborne was so obstinate that he went to England and appealed to the king, whose decision sustained Lord Baltimore's claims. In 1645, Clayborne entered Maryland again, excited a rebellion, and drove out Governor Calvert. The governor after a time was able to gather a force strong enough to frighten Clayborne into fleeing. There was no more disturbance.

4. There was much religious trouble, however, in Maryland, and civil war lasted for years. Sometimes victory was with one party and sometimes with the other. Finally, in 1691, Lord Baltimore was stripped of his rights as proprietor, and Maryland became a royal province. The Church of England was established, but, in 1715, the fourth Lord Baltimore recovered his rights and religious toleration was restored. This condition of things lasted until the Revolution.

5. **The Carolinas.—The Albemarle and Carter Colonies.**—A large tract of land south of Virginia was granted in 1663 to Lord Clarendon and several other noblemen. They named it Carolina in honor of

the king. The Albemarle colony was already planted by settlers from Virginia. The Carteret colony was established in 1670 by English immigrants. The first settled on the banks of the Ashley, but removed in 1680 to the present site of Charleston.

6. The colonies increased rapidly, but as they expanded much friction was caused between the settlers and proprietors. The latter became so discouraged that, in 1729, they returned to the Crown the right of government and seven-eighths of the land. The colonies were separated, and remained royal provinces until the Revolution.

7. **Settlement of Georgia.**—The last of the original thirteen colonies to be settled was Georgia. In 1732, General Oglethorpe, a wealthy and kind-hearted man, obtained from King George II. the grant of a tract of land which, in honor of the king, he named Georgia.

8. **Oglethorpe's Scheme.**—Oglethorpe's wish was to provide a refuge for debtors, who were harshly treated in England. He formed a settlement at Savannah in 1733. His experiment awakened great interest in England, and large sums of money were subscribed to help the enterprise.

9. General Oglethorpe was an excellent man. He proved his soldierly qualities by brilliantly defeating the Spaniards when they attacked the colony. Some of his rules, however, produced great discontent. They interfered with the just liberties of the people and caused many to leave the colony. This discontent increased to such a degree that the trustees finally gave up the task, and in 1752, after twenty years of trial, surrendered their charter to the Crown. Georgia continued a royal province until the Revolution.

CHAPTER XI.

INTERCOLONIAL WARS.

1. **King William's War.**—The wars between European nations naturally involved their colonies in America. The first struggle of this kind was between England and France, and was called King William's War. It lasted from 1689 to 1697. The Indians of Canada and Maine took the side of the French, while the powerful league known as the Iroquois or Five Nations of New York helped the English.

2. **Invasion of New England and New York.**—In the depth of winter the French and Indians came down from Canada on their snow-shoes and laid waste the border settlements of New England and New York. They committed fearful atrocities. The favorite time for attack by the Indians was between midnight and daylight, when people were sound asleep. Women and children, as well as men, were dragged from their beds and tomahawked.

3. **Invasion of Canada.—Peace.**—To check these barbarities the several English colonies in 1690 organized an invasion of Canada. Sir William Phipps captured Port Royal in Nova Scotia and secured a great deal of plunder. The combined land and naval expedition was a failure. After eight years of savage and desultory fighting, the war was ended by the treaty of Ryswick (rĭz'wik), which gave to each party the territory it held before fighting began. All the suffering, loss of property, cruelty, and death was in vain.

4. **Queen Anne's War.**—This was brought about by the war between France and Spain on the one hand and England on the other. The Iroquois, because of

their treaty with France, took no part in this war, which lasted from 1702 to 1713. From this cause New England suffered most. Her frontier was ravaged, and many of the exposed settlements were abandoned.

5. Port Royal was captured, in 1710, by the united English and colonial troops. The name of the place was changed to Annapolis. A formidable expedition sailed against Canada, but shipwreck destroyed more than a thousand men, and the attempt, as before, resulted in disastrous failure. The war was ended by the treaty of Utrecht (*ū'trēkt*), which ceded Acadia to England.

6. King George's War lasted from 1744 to 1748, and was between England and France. The most noted event of the struggle was the capture, after a long siege, in 1745, of the strong fortress of Louisburg. This was on the island of Cape Breton, and the colonial troops did most of the fighting. Peace was made by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (*āks-lä-chäpēl'*). To the indignation of the colonists, Louisburg was given back to the French by this treaty, and matters were left so that another war was certain to break out in the near future.

7. The French and Indian War lasted from 1754 to 1763, and was by far the most important struggle in which the colonies took part previous to the Revolution. France and England were powerful rivals, and their continual wars involved their colonies in America. Their contests had gradually taken the form of a struggle for supremacy in the new world, and could not end until one became the conqueror.

8. The English and French Colonies.—At the opening of the final struggle the English colonies occupied a narrow fringe of sea-coast a thousand miles in length. The French territory, beginning with Canada, extended to New Orleans. This long line was guarded

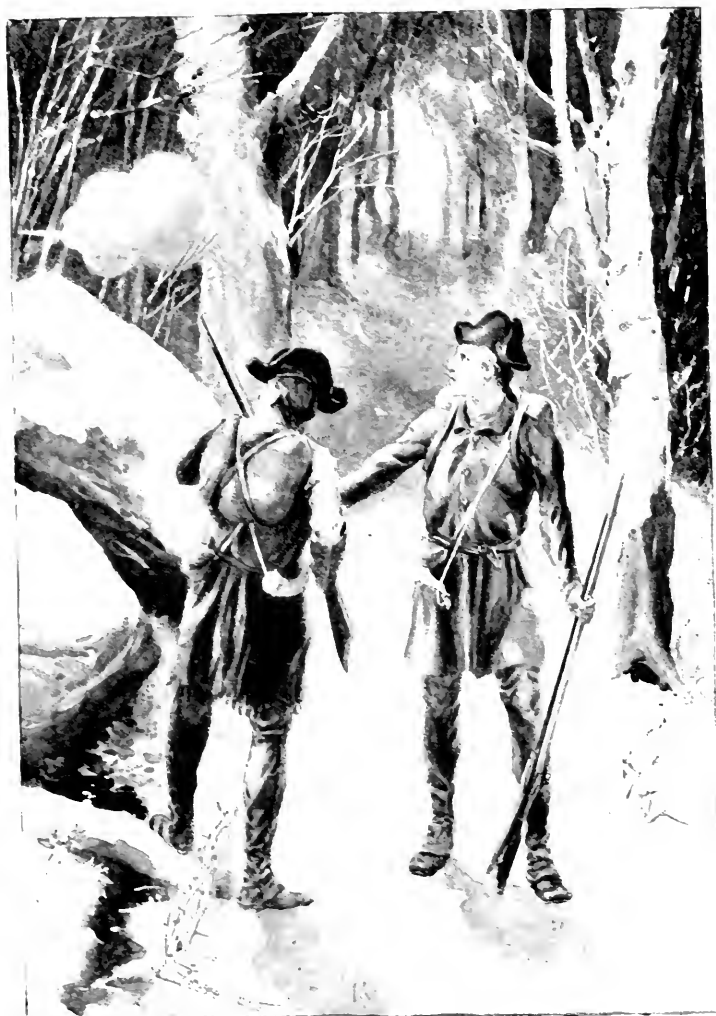
by more than sixty military posts. The region west of the Alleghany Mountains was claimed by both, and this dispute brought on the French and Indian War.

9. The fur-trade in the section named was very profitable and much sought by the French and English traders. They left the Indians out of the question, though they were the people to whom the land rightly belonged. The French seized the English surveyors along the Ohio and broke up a British post on the Miami (mē-a'mō). Pressing forward into the disputed territory, they built a fort at Presqu' Isle (presk ēl'), near the present site of Erie, Pennsylvania; a second near Waterford; and a third a few miles south, on French Creek.

10. **George Washington.**—Now, all this angered Virginia, because she claimed that section. Governor Dinwiddie decided to make a vigorous protest against the invasion. He selected as the bearer of his message a young man named GEORGE WASHINGTON.

11. Washington at that time was about twenty-two years of age. He was a skillful surveyor and a wonderful athlete. There were no young men of his acquaintance who could run as fast, leap as far, throw a stone to a greater distance, ride a horse better, or excel him as a hunter. He was brave, truthful, honest, an obedient son, and a man held in the highest respect by all who knew him. He was born February 22, 1732.

12. **Washington's Journey through the Wilderness.**—Young Washington left Williamsburg on the very day the letter of Governor Dinwiddie was placed in his hands. He had five companions, one of whom was the famous guide Christopher Gist. The journey to and from Le Boeuf (lēh būf') was fully a thousand miles. It led through dismal forests, over rugged moun-



AN ATTEMPT UPON THE LIFE OF WASHINGTON

tains, and across turbulent streams filled with rushing ice. The country contained wild beasts and wilder red men.

13. An Indian attempted to shoot Washington when a few rods away. His gun missed fire, and Gist captured him. Washington, however, would not allow him to be harmed, but let him go. To avoid capture themselves, they traveled all night, though the weather was bitterly cold. Often they slept with their clothing frozen upon them. In crossing the Alleghany on a raft Washington was thrown into the water, and saved himself by powerful swimming.

14. The trying journey occupied more than two months. The reply brought back by Washington from the French commander was a refusal to withdraw from the ground claimed by the English. He was there, he said, by orders from his superiors, and as a soldier he could regard no commands from any other source.

15. **Breaking Out of the War.**—It was not long before war began. Washington, then a major, was sent with a force to drive out the French, who had built a post where Pittsburg now stands. It was called Fort Duquesne (doo-cane'). The French were too strong, and after considerable fighting Washington was forced to retreat before the superior force.

16. **Braddock's Massacre.**—In 1755, General Braddock led an expedition against Fort Duquesne. He was a British officer, brave, but harsh and conceited. He sneered at Washington when the young Virginian warned him that the Indians did not fight like regular soldiers. He thought it very presumptuous in this young man to give him advice.

17. When within less than ten miles of the fort, Brad-

dock's army was suddenly assailed by hundreds of Indians and French in ambush. The Virginians sprang behind trees and rocks and began fighting after the manner of the Indians. This enraged Braddock, who ordered them to come out and fight like Englishmen. He struck several with his sword, and for three hours kept his soldiers firing by platoons when their enemies were nowhere in sight.

18. No man could have shown greater bravery than Braddock. He had four horses killed under him, and was on his fifth when he fell dead from the saddle. Every officer on Braddock's staff was either killed or wounded, except Washington. He exposed himself with the same fearlessness as his commander. Two horses were killed under him, and his clothing was pierced repeatedly by musket-balls. Finally, the British regulars broke into a wild panic and fled. Washington covered the retreat and saved the remnant of the army.

19. **Banishment of the Acadians.**—Acadia (the name given to the provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) was attacked shortly after the war began. The French forts at the head of the Bay of Fundy were taken, and the Acadians were carried away in ships and scattered among the English colonies. This seemed cruel and caused much hardship, but the step was taken because the Acadians secretly favored the French whenever war took place.

20. **Capture of Louisburg.**—**Founding of Pittsburg.**—For a time the English made no real progress. In 1758, Generals Amherst and Wolfe, after a severe struggle, captured Louisburg. In September of the same year a French fort standing on the present site of Kingston, Canada, and controlling Lake Ontario, was taken by an English expedition. Another expedition drove

the French away from Fort Duquesne and established an English fort there. They named it Pittsburg, in honor of William Pitt, the great prime minister of England.

21. Repulse of the English.—An English attack upon Fort Ticonderoga on Lake Champlain suffered a disastrous repulse. The following year, however, both Ticonderoga and Crown Point were evacuated upon the approach of General Amherst and his army.



CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.

22. The Capture of Quebec.—The death-blow to French rule in America would be the capture of Quebec. This great task was assigned to the brave and skillful Wolfe, who, in the summer of 1759, anchored off the city with eight thousand troops and a large fleet. Montcalm, the French commander, opposed him with a force equal to his own.

23. Week after week Wolfe vainly searched for some

weak point in the rocky wall miles in length. But cannon confronted him everywhere and the French soldiers were always on the alert. Montcalm kept his horses saddled night and day, ready to dash to any spot where needed. Knowing what great interests were at stake, he did not take off his clothing for months.

24. Wolfe was on the point of giving up when he discovered a narrow path winding among the rocks and



THE DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE.

bushes to the bluff above the city. In the darkness of night the soldiers silently climbed up the precipice and scattered the guard at the top. When the sun rose the astounded Montcalm saw the English army in line of battle on the "Plains of Abraham."

25. **Death of Wolfe.**—Montcalm attacked with his usual bravery. Whilst the issue remained doubtful, Wolfe

led a bayonet charge. He was struck twice by bullets, but pressed on until mortally wounded by a third ball. As they were carrying him to the rear he heard the exclamation, "They run! they run!" "Who run?" he feebly asked. "The French," was the reply. "God be praised! I die happy," he added, his pale face glowing with joy.

26. Death of Montcalm.—Montcalm was mortally hurt a few minutes later while trying to rally his troops. When told by the surgeon that he could live only a few hours, he replied, "It is well, for I shall not see the surrender of Quebec." The city surrendered five days later, September 18, 1759.

27. The Conquest of Canada.—The French attempted to retake Quebec the following year, but failed. The capture of Montreal in 1760 completed the conquest of Canada. A treaty of peace was signed in Paris in 1763, by which France gave to England all her possessions east of the Mississippi except two small islands south of Newfoundland. She ceded New Orleans and all her territory west of the Mississippi to Spain. The costly devastating wars were at an end, and England at last ruled America.

CHAPTER XII.

LIFE IN THE COLONIAL TIMES.

1. The Homes of Our Forefathers.—Life during the colonial times was widely different from what it is to-day. The first houses were built of logs put together with little regard for anything except strength and shelter. The danger from Indians often made these dwell-

ings the only means of defence against their attacks. The windows were few and small, the doors massive, and the interior was divided into one, two, or three rooms. The stairs by which the upper story was reached consisted of an inclined ladder. The chimney was of stone and was mainly on the outside of the building.

2. The Furniture.—The fireplaces were very broad, and most of the heat went up the chimney. The winters were severe, and it was necessary to get as near the fire as possible. Seats, therefore, were sometimes placed inside the fireplace. Glass was so scarce that most of the window-panes were made of oiled paper. The furniture generally consisted of rude benches, tables, and stools made by the head of the family. The floor was rough, and sometimes consisted of the hard earth itself. Carpets were unknown during the early days. The latch of the door was of wood, and was raised from the outside by pulling a string which dangled from a small hole. When this string was drawn in the door was locked.

3. How they Cooked, Ate, and Drank.—The poorer people used blocks of wood instead of plates. At first forks were unknown. Food was cut with a knife and eaten from the fingers. The pots and kettles were hung from a swinging crane in the fireplace, and the cooking was done in front in skillets and on griddles. These stood on legs, so that the coals could be raked under them. A piece of meat was sometimes broiled by laying it upon the live coals.

4. An oven for baking would occasionally be seen built in the side of the chimney. A whole pig was roasted by running an iron rod through it and turning it on a spit in front of the fire. The neat housekeepers strewed the floor of the best room with white sand,

which was marked off with ornamental designs. The rich colonists brought ponderous furniture from England—so strong and enduring that much of it is in existence to-day. They had pewter dishes, which were polished to the highest possible degree. The cumbrous but valuable silver-ware was brought forth only on rare occasions.

5. There was much drinking of wine and spirits. For a long time coffee and tea were unknown. Nearly every family made its own beer. The genteel folk used Madeira wine, and nearly every one drank rum and hard cider. The religious people made no objection unless a person indulged immoderately and neglected his duties.

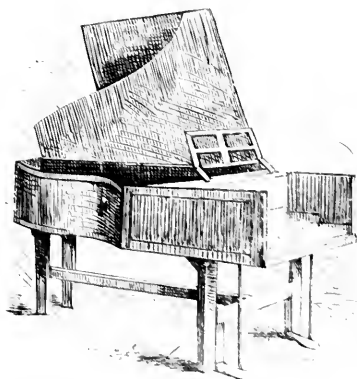
6. **Their Dress.**—No one wore trousers as they are now made. They stopped at the knees, below which the limbs were protected by stockings to the shoes. This gave the rich a chance to display their silver buckles and buttons. They were very fond, too, of lace and finery. The breeches of the laborers were made of leather, deer-skin, or the coarsest kind of cloth. The rich used velvet or fine material, and some of them were as proud of their appearance as any one who is seen to-day.

7. **The Schools.**—The schools were few and poor. The teachers had little education, and were harsh. The sessions were double the length of what they are in these times, and Saturday holidays and summer vacations were unknown. The whip was frequently plied, for our forefathers believed in the doctrine that to spare the rod is to spoil the child. Sunday-schools are not a century old in this country. The sermons at church were often two or three hours in length. The benches were hard and uncomfortable. When a listener dozed, a man

who was on the watch prodded him with the end of a pole to keep him awake.

8. Methods of Punishment.—The laws were severe. In Virginia seventeen offences were punishable with death. In Hartford the watchman rang his bell in the morning as an order for every one to rise from his bed. If a woman became too free with her tongue, she was pronounced a scold, and was punished by being placed near her door and gagged. For other offences the stocks and pillory and the ducking-stool were used.

9. Entertainments.—Human nature has always



HARPSICORD AT MT. VERNON.

been the same, and our ancestors managed to have their share of amusement.

Dancing was popular, and wedding festivities sometimes lasted several days. Horse-racing and cock-fighting prevailed in the Middle and Southern colonies. The New Englanders made the most of their militia

trainings. Even a funeral was accompanied by feasting and drinking, while the long winters were diversified by coasting, skating, and similar amusements.

10. Means of Travel.—**Ignorance.**—**First Printing-Press, Paper, and Colleges.**—In those early times the people traveled on foot, horseback, or by boat. Slavery prevailed everywhere. Ignorance was common. Many men and women were unable to write their names. The first printing-press was set up at Cambridge in 1639.

The first paper was the *Boston News Letter*, published in 1704, and the first daily paper did not appear until 1792. Harvard College was founded in 1636; William and Mary in 1692; Yale in 1700; Princeton in 1746; University of Pennsylvania in 1749; Columbia in 1754; and Dartmouth in 1769. Compared with the colleges of the present day bearing those names, they were as the tiny acorn to the full-grown oak.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

1. **Error regarding the Indians.**—The belief is general that the American race is disappearing. This, however, is not the case. There are 250,000 Indians to-day in this country, which is an increase of the number that roamed over the continent at the time of its discovery by Columbus. There is no reason to believe that they will not continue as long as the Caucasian race.



GROUP OF UTES AND WIGWAM, COLORADO.

2. **Endurance of the Indian.**—Although the Indian displays little muscular development, he is capable of immense endurance. General Crook states that he has seen an Apache run for fifteen hundred feet up the side

of a mountain without any increase in his respiration or the least evidence of fatigue.

3. Wrongs of the Indians.—One of the great wrongs perpetrated by the settlers of this country was their treatment of the Indians. The rights of the latter were disregarded; they were cheated out of their land; their confidence was abused; treaties were violated; and many times they were driven in very desperation to war. Osceola, the famous Seminole chieftain, was made a prisoner by an American officer while visiting our lines under a flag of truce, and died in prison. William Penn used the Indians justly, and, as a consequence, his treaty with them remained unbroken for more than half a century.

4. How the Indians Live.—The Indians are a migratory people. They live in rude tents and wigwams, moving from place to place in order to secure better hunting-grounds. They are fine horsemen, being trained from infancy to manage their ponies, to handle the bow and arrow or gun, to hunt and fish, to endure hardships, and to make war.

5. Treatment of their Women.—The women are treated like beasts of burden. A warrior considers it undignified to work. His squaw, therefore, is compelled to till the ground, to carry burdens, and to do all the manual labor required by the family.

6. The War-Path.—In former times the Northern Indians were accustomed to tie their long black hair in a knot on the crown. This was called a scalp-lock, and was meant as a defiance to the enemy to capture it. They were fond of daubing their faces with fantastic designs in paint, of placing stained feathers in their hair, and making themselves look as hideous as possible. They hoped to frighten their enemies by this means.

7. Indian Oratory.—Although the American race is inferior in every respect to the Caucasian, yet it has produced more than one great orator, warrior, and statesman. King Philip, Pontiac, and Tecumseh were striking examples in these respects.

8. The Indian's Conception of Heaven.—All people, no matter how degraded, have some idea of a Supreme Being. It is an instinct of our nature, and one of the most impressive proofs of the immortality of the soul. The Indian's conception of heaven is a material one. He believes it consists of happy hunting-grounds, where his dog shall bear him company and the feasting be without end. The Indian, however, is capable of accepting and understanding the truths of Christianity. The labors of the missionaries among them have proved this fact in numberless instances.

9. The Indian Susceptible to Education.—The Indian is susceptible to education and civilization. The various schools established by our government have shown striking and beneficent results. It is earnestly to be hoped that these influences may continue, and that at no remote day the "Indian Problem" may be solved happily and for ever.

PART III.

THE REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.

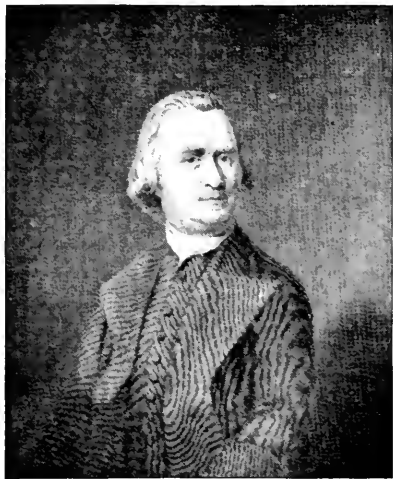
1. THE French and Indian War was the West Point for the American commanders in the Revolution. The training received by them proved of invaluable service when the inevitable conflict of arms took place.

2. **Indirect Causes of the Revolution.**—Many causes joined to bring about the war for independence. England treated the Americans as though they were a subjected nation. She enforced laws that favored the English merchants at the expense of those in the colonies. The navigation laws especially were unjust and oppressive. The American farmer was compelled to send his products to England and buy his goods there. American manufactures were not permitted. The prime minister went so far as to declare that the colonies had not the right even to make a horseshoe nail without permission from Parliament.

3. It was inevitable that the colonies should separate in time from the mother-country, but had they been treated generously the separation would have been postponed for a long time. It is not unlikely that when it should have taken place England would have consented and there would have been no war.

4. **Direct Cause of the Revolution.**—While there were many grounds for ill-feeling between England and the colonies, the direct cause of the Revolution was the Stamp Act. This was passed March 8, 1765. During the French and Indian War the colonists spent \$16,000,000, of which England repaid only \$5,000,000. She now imposed a tax on the Americans to meet the expenses of this war. Inasmuch as the colonies were not allowed to have any representative in Parliament, this was "taxation without representation." They called it tyranny, and resisted the enforcement of the law.

5. England, however, was stubborn and would not recede. She granted writs of assistance to her officers, which authorized them to search houses and stores for smuggled goods. The Stamp Act ordered that stamps bought of the British government should be put on all legal documents, newspapers, pamphlets, etc. The object, of course, was to secure a revenue to the English government at the expense of the colonies.



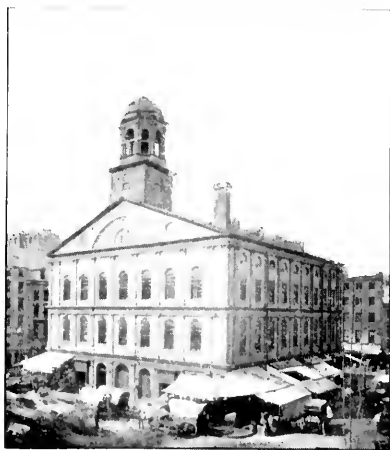
SAMUEL ADAMS.

6. This tyrannical act roused the Americans to the fighting-point. They mobbed the houses of the British officials, hanged others in effigy, seized the odious stamps, and compelled the agents to resign. The people, led by Samuel Adams, the "Father of the

Revolution," pledged themselves to use no articles of British manufacture until the duty should be taken off.

7. Repeal of the Stamp Act.—Delegates from nine of the colonies met in New York in October, 1765. They framed a Declaration of Rights and a petition to King George III. and Parliament. The opposition to the Stamp Act became so bitter and determined that even England was alarmed, and in 1766 repealed it.

8. Other Oppressive Measures.—The Boston Massacre.—At the same time, however, Parliament



FANEUIL HALL, BOSTON.

passed another law affirming its right to tax the colonies. Other articles were taxed. Troops were quartered, in 1768, in the colonies at their expense. The people refused to consent to this, and quarrels between the citizens of Boston and the soldiers were frequent. The patriotism of the citizens was roused by frequent meetings and addresses in Faneuil

Hall and elsewhere. In March, 1770, a collision resulted in the death of three citizens and the wounding of eight. This is known in history as the Boston Massacre.

9. Taxation without Representation.—Finally, the tax was taken off everything except tea. Even this was so arranged that, with the tax included, tea was cheaper in America than in England. The mother-country was contending for a principle and would not yield the right

of taxation. The Americans were also contending for a principle, and would not consent to taxation without representation.

10. The Boston Tea-Party.—The Americans determined they would not use tea. The cargoes which reached New York and Philadelphia were sent away again. At Charleston tea was stored in damp cellars, where it soon spoiled. At Boston, December 16, 1773, fifty men disguised as Indians boarded the ships at night and emptied three hundred and forty-two chests into the water. This is known as the famous Boston Tea-Party.

11. Retaliatory Measures by England.—**The War Spirit in the Colonies.**—England adopted retaliatory measures at once. She closed the port of Boston the following year, and General Gage was appointed governor of Massachusetts.



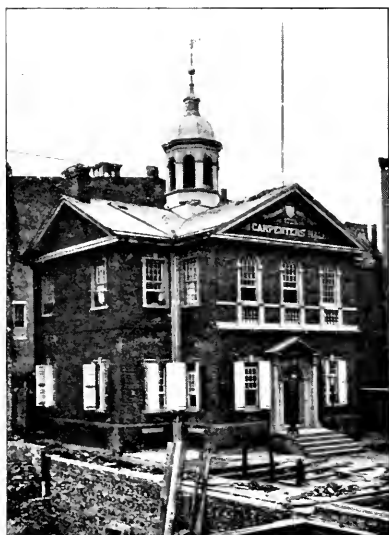
PATRICK HENRY.

The closing of the port caused much distress, but the other colonies came to the help of Boston. The anger against England increased every day. The only parties were the Whigs, who opposed royalty, and the Tories, who favored it. Minute-men began organizing and drilling. The ringing words of Patrick Henry, "Give me liberty or give me death!" were heard everywhere. Revolution was in the air and the conflict of arms was at hand.

CHAPTER XV.

EVENTS OF 1774-75.

1. **The First Continental Congress.**—The first Continental Congress met in Philadelphia in September, 1774. Every colony was represented except Georgia. Among



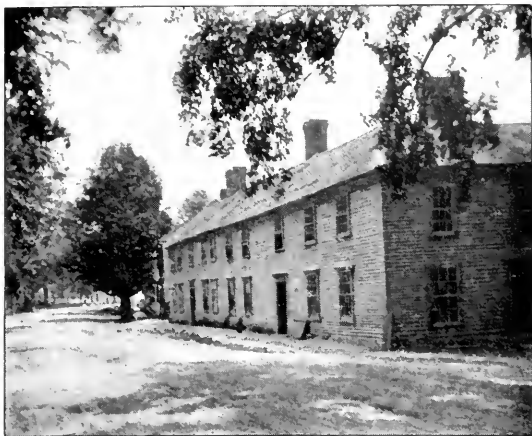
CARPENTERS' HALL, PHILADELPHIA, WHERE
THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS MET.

the representatives were men of marked ability. The majority were not prepared for independence, but hoped to induce England to change her course toward the colonies. They declared that obedience was not due to the recent acts of Parliament—that Massachusetts did right in resisting her oppressors; they protested against the quartering of troops among the people without their consent, and decided to hold no inter-

course with Great Britain.

2. **Battle of Lexington.**—These were bold words on the part of the representatives, and hastened the conflict. General Gage, the British commandant at Boston, sent out eight hundred men soon after midnight, April 19, 1775, to destroy some military stores at Concord, twenty miles away. The Americans were on the watch, and when the troops reached Lexington, they found the

minute men hastily gathering on the village green. Major Pitcairn ordered them to disperse. A skirmish followed, and eight of the Americans were killed and several wounded. One British soldier was killed and one wounded. The troops continued their march to Concord and destroyed the military stores.



HOUSES IN WHICH THE MILITARY STORES WERE CONCEALED, CONCORD.
(Still standing.)

3. The affray at Lexington set the Americans wild. Horsemen dashed off at headlong speed and spread the news. The minute men and all who had weapons snatched them up and ran toward the red coats, who were retreating for Boston. A deadly fire was opened upon the soldiers from behind rocks, trees, fences, and anything that offered protection. Had not reinforcements arrived from Boston, every British soldier would have been killed. Sixty-five were slain and a great many wounded. Of the Americans, forty-nine were killed.

4. It has been said that at Lexington was "fired the shot that was heard round the world." There was no

telegraph in those days, but the news was carried by men on horseback. As it spread, the colonists flamed with excitement. Men swarmed toward Boston, until



BOSTON AND VICINITY.

in a short time twenty thousand were throwing up intrenchments to shut the British in the city.

5. **Battle of Bunker Hill.**—A detachment of Americans fortified Breed's Hill at night without any sus-

DEATH OF GENERAL WARREN.



picion on the part of the British of what was going on. They were amazed the next morning to see what had been done. The works commanded the city, and General Gage determined to dislodge the Americans without delay. He sent Howe with three thousand men, while the roofs and steeples in Boston were black with people watching the thrilling sight.

6. The British marched slowly up the hill, and showed perfect discipline. The Americans waited until they were very near, when they fired with such deadly effect that the soldiers broke and fled. The officers rallied them, and a second advance was made. This was repulsed as decisively as before. The British officers with much difficulty brought their men together, and the third time charged up the hill. Fierce fighting followed, but at that critical moment the ammunition of the Americans gave out and they were compelled to retreat.

7. The Americans lost one hundred and fifty killed, two hundred and seventy wounded, and thirty taken prisoners. The British loss, as given by Gage, was two hundred and twenty-four killed and eight hundred and thirty wounded. The battle of Bunker Hill was fought June 17. In one sense it was a defeat for the Americans, and yet no victory could have benefited them more. It inspired them with confidence, and united the colonies in the determination to resist Great Britain to the last extremity.

8. **The Second Continental Congress.**—**Washington appointed Commander-in-Chief.**—The second Continental Congress, assembled in Philadelphia, May 10th, voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, and June 15th appointed General George Washington commander-in-chief. He modestly accepted the appoint-

ment, but declined to receive any pay. It should be remembered that Washington was never paid a dollar for his inestimable services to his country during the Revolution. He and Gates set out at once for Cam-



OLD ELM, AT CAMBRIDGE, MASS., UNDER WHICH WASHINGTON
ASSUMED COMMAND OF THE ARMY.

bridge to take charge of the army there. When they reached New York they heard for the first time of the battle of Bunker Hill.

9. Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.—

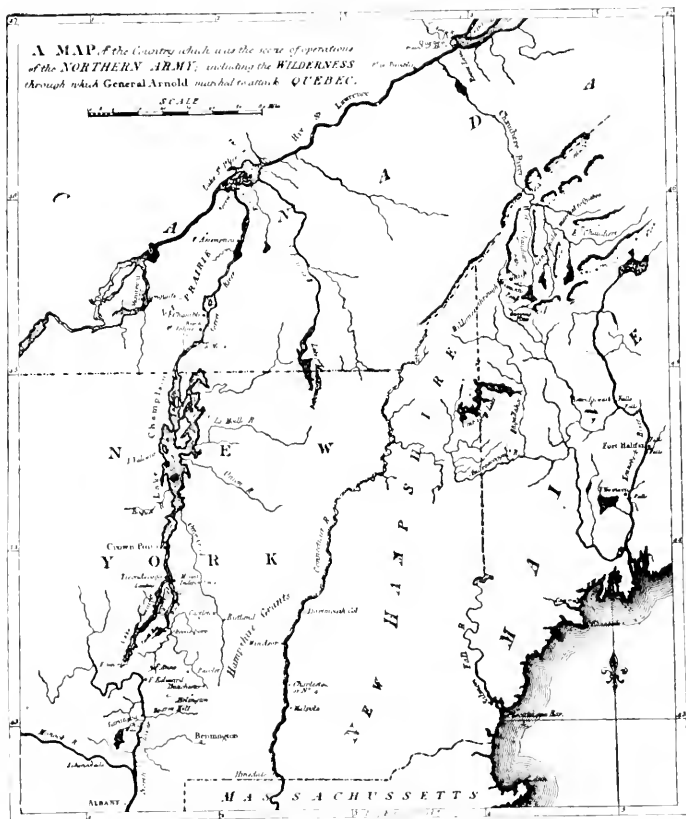
On the same day that the second Continental Congress assembled in Philadelphia, Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold by a brilliant dash captured Fort Ticonderoga. It was a complete surprise, no one being killed on either side. Valuable stores were secured for the Americans. Crown Point was captured two days later.

10. Siege of Boston by the Americans.—

Washington found a patriotic mass of fourteen thousand men awaiting his arrival before Boston. They were without uniforms, poorly disciplined, badly clothed and armed,

and had little ammunition. They formed the material for an effective army, and the wise leader set to work to mould them into form. He kept the British closely besieged in the city.

II. Invasion of Canada.—In the latter part of the



summer General Montgomery led a force into Canada and captured St. John's and Montreal. He then marched to Quebec, where he was joined by Colonel

Benedict Arnold. After besieging the town for several



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

weeks, an assault was made in the midst of a blinding snowstorm. The assailants numbered less than a thousand, were half starved, and in a wretched condition. Montgomery was killed, Arnold badly wounded, and his successor compelled to surrender. The miserable remnant of the army huddled in the ice and snow until spring, when they were glad to flee

before approaching reinforcements.

CHAPTER XVI.

EVENTS OF 1776.

1. **Evacuation of Boston.**—Washington continued to drill his army, and closely pressed the siege of Boston. Finally he sent a strong force which fortified Dorchester Heights. This gave him command of the harbor and town, and placed the British at his mercy. Feeling that he had no choice, General Howe left the city, with his fleet, army, and a number of Tories. They sailed to Halifax, Nova Scotia, March 17th.

2. British Attack on Charleston.—An English fleet attacked Charleston, June 28th. Fort Moultrie replied with such vigor that the enemy was repulsed. A great many were killed, and the crippled fleet sailed for New York.

John Penn John Hancock John Kent
Wm Lloyd Wm. Pava
Geo. Read Wm. Hooper Saml. Adams
Step. Hopkins Thos. Mifflin Geo. Clymer
Thos. Mifflin Charles Carroll of Maryland Thos. Mifflin
Thos. Mifflin Roger Sherman Saml. Huntington
Wm. Whipple Josiah Bartlett Benj. Franklin
Geo. Toulson Rich. Stockton
Wm. Williams John Morton
Oliver Wolcott Jas. Wilson Le. Grosvenor
Thos. Stone Samuel Chase Robt. B. R. Paulle
George Wythe Matthew Thornton
Gran' Lewis Jr. Benj. Harrison
Lewis Morris Alva. Clark Chas. Livingston
Arthur Middleton Jos. Hopkinson
Geo. Walton Cortely Braxton James Wilson
Richard Henry Lee Thos. Heyward Jr.
Benjamin Rush John Adams Robt. Morris
Lyman Hall Joseph Hewes Button Gwinnett
Francis Lightfoot Lee
William Ellery Edward Rutledge Jas. Smith

SIGNERS OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

3. The Declaration of Independence.—On the fourth day of July the Continental Congress adopted

the Declaration of Independence. This powerful paper was written by Thomas Jefferson, and was the official declaration of the colonies that they were for ever independent of Great Britain. It was received with the wildest joy throughout the country.



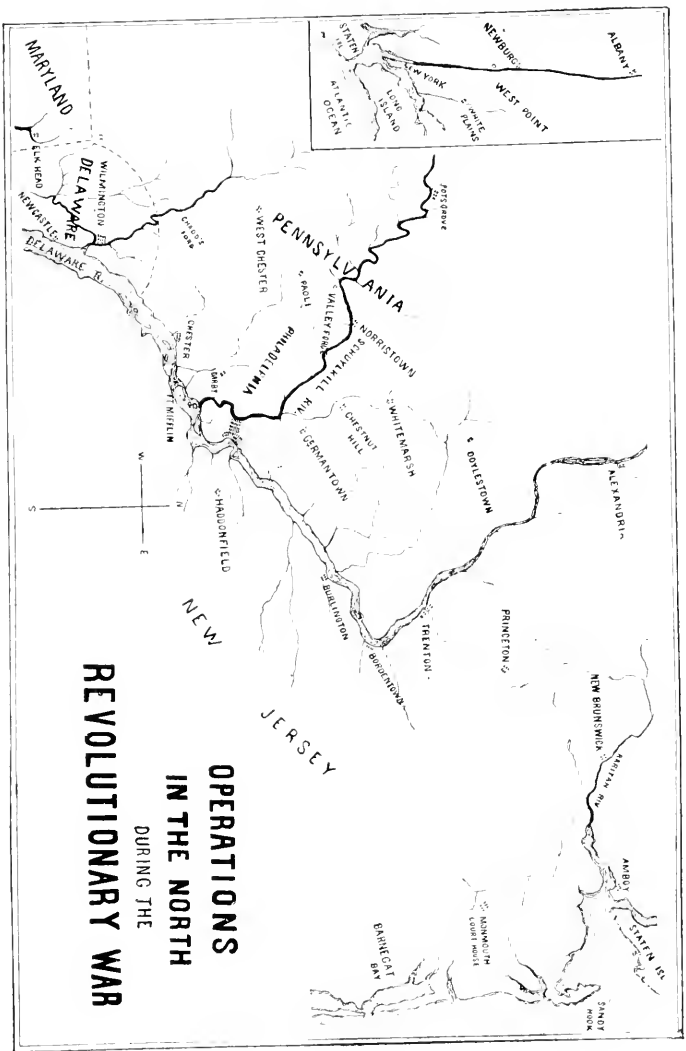
LIBERTY BELL, INDEPENDENCE HALL.

4. It was easy, however, for the colonies to declare themselves independent: the great task remained to secure that independence. The hardest kind of fighting and all manner of suffering and hardships were necessary. Great

Britain would never yield until she saw that it was useless to press the struggle further.

5. Necessity for Great Britain's Attempt to Subdue the Colonies.—Great Britain's own existence required that she should do her utmost to conquer the Americans. Had she not done so, her other colonies, in different parts of the world, would have risen against her rule. To avert such calamity she had to show them that the cost of their independence was too great for them to face.

6. British Demonstration against New York.—Shortly after reaching Halifax, General Howe sailed for New York. His brother, Admiral Howe, also arrived with reinforcements, and Clinton returned from his defeat be-



fore Charleston. These combined forces amounted to thirty thousand men, which was far superior to the force of Washington. Nevertheless, he hastened to New York to protect that city.

7. British Victory on Long Island.—The British landed on Long Island, and a battle was fought near Brooklyn, August 27th. The Americans were defeated with heavy loss. Washington was compelled to withdraw from Brooklyn, and all of Long Island was left in the hands of the enemy. The American commander took post on Harlem Heights.

8. Defeat of Washington at White Plains.—Washington's position was so strong that Howe sailed up the Sound in order to attack from the rear. Washington retreated to White Plains, where he was defeated in a battle. Fort Mifflin was captured, with two thousand Americans, November 16th.

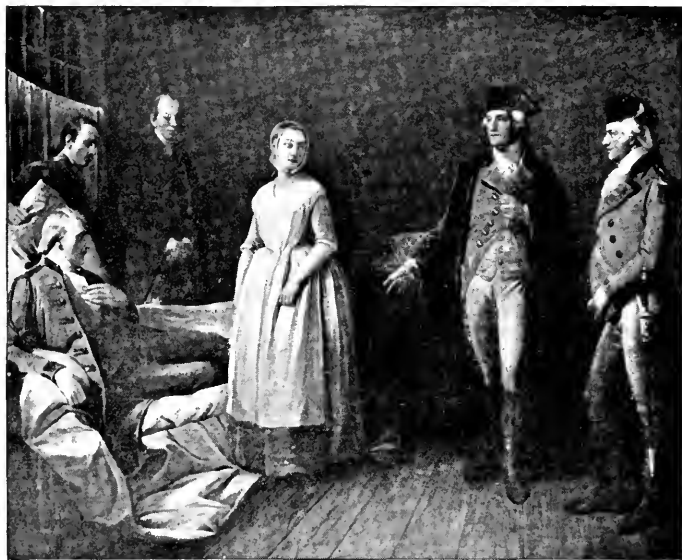
9. Washington's Retreat through New Jersey.—Unable with his inferior force to hold New York, Washington retreated across New Jersey toward Philadelphia. His ragged army was so closely followed by Cornwallis that the two armies were often in sight of each other and exchanged shots. Many of the patriots were barefooted, and their bloody footprints marked every mile of the frozen ground.

10. Dark Days.—Reaching the Delaware, Washington secured all the boats and hastily crossed to Pennsylvania. He had about five thousand men, while Cornwallis, with a well-disciplined army fully five times as great, was on the Jersey shore.

11. Those were the dark days of the Revolution. Congress had fled from Philadelphia; so many soldiers deserted from the patriot army that it seemed in danger of going to pieces; and thousands believed that the cause

of liberty was lost. Washington, however, was not discouraged, and at the very hour when despair was so general struck a blow that revived hope throughout the colonies.

12. Battle of Trenton.—In the midst of a driving storm of sleet, and with the weather intensely cold, his little army of two thousand four hundred men and



WASHINGTON'S VISIT TO THE MORTALLY-WOUNDED HESSIAN COMMANDER.

twenty cannon crossed the Delaware a few miles above Trenton. It was Christmas night, and the river was so full of rushing ice that many hours were consumed in forcing the dangerous passage. A rapid march was then made to Trenton, which was reached shortly after daybreak. The Hessians, who had been brought over by the British, were attacked, their leader mortally wounded, and one thousand prisoners taken. The Americans had

only two killed and four wounded. Washington visited the Hessian commander, Colonel Rall, as he lay dying in the house to which he had been removed.

CHAPTER XVII.

EVENTS OF 1777.

1. Renewed Hope of the Americans.—The victory at Trenton thrilled the colonists with renewed hope. Enlistments increased, confidence was restored, and the feeling became general that the crisis had been passed. Hard work remained to be done, but triumph in the end was sure.

2. Cornwallis was so near that Washington recrossed into Pennsylvania with his prisoners on the day of the victory. Three days later he returned to Trenton, where his army was increased to six thousand. Cornwallis with a larger force marched down from Princeton, with the resolve to wipe out the disgrace of a few days before.

3. Battle of the Assunpink.—A conflict took place January 2d across the Assunpink Creek, which flows through the town. The British were repulsed and lost a number of men. The firing ceased at dusk, and the forces encamped on opposite sides of the stream.

4. Victory at Princeton.—The situation of Washington was critical, for the ice-gorged Delaware was behind him and shut off his retreat in the face of the enemy. He therefore kept his camp-fires burning brightly, so as to make it appear that his army was present, but in the darkness he stole around the British forces, and reached Princeton, ten miles away, at day-break. There he assailed the enemy, captured more

than two hundred, and drove the rest pell-mell out of the town. One of the first cannon-balls fired crashed through a portrait of King George in the college buildings. The battle of Princeton took place January 3d.



GENERAL BURGoyNE.

5. The Two Armies in Winter Quarters.—This victory compelled the British to fall back to New Brunswick, where they remained during the winter. Washington withdrew to Morristown, went into winter quarters, and stayed until May. He busied himself in recruiting his army

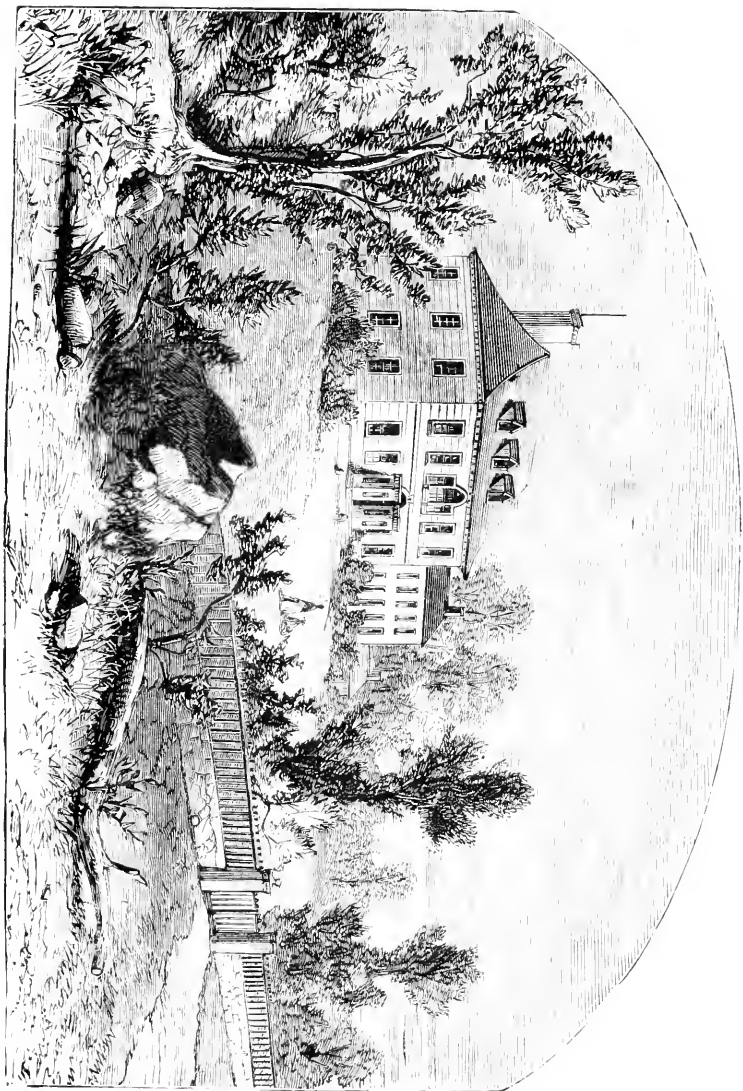
and in making forays upon the enemy.

6. Burgoyne's Invasion.—General Burgoyne set out with a large army from Canada, intending to capture Albany and join the British forces in New York. Had he succeeded, the American colonies would have been cut in twain. It looked for a time as if nothing could avert this calamity.

7. Ticonderoga was evacuated, the artillery and all the stores falling into the hands of the enemy. The same fate overtook Forts Crown Point and Edward, and the enemy secured full control of Lakes Champlain and George.

8. Victory at Bennington.—A force of Germans sent out from Fort Edward to capture horses and supplies was totally routed at Bennington by General Stark. General Gates, who was doing his best to oppose the advance of Burgoyne, found his army rapidly increased by reinforcements from New York and New England.

VIEW OF WASHINGTON'S QUARTERS AT MORRISTOWN.



9. Surrender of Burgoyne.—Burgoyne was in pressing need of supplies, and his situation became critical. He attacked the Americans at Bemis Heights, and after a hard battle was defeated. He was now gradually but surely hemmed in on every side until his situation was hopeless: he surrendered his whole army, October 16th, numbering nearly six thousand men.



GENERAL GATES.

10. Fall of Philadelphia.—Meantime, matters had gone ill elsewhere for the Americans. General Howe sailed from New York, and, entering Chesapeake Bay, marched upon Philadelphia. Washington's army was much weaker than the British, and he withdrew to Chadd's Ford, on the Brandywine. There he was attacked, September 11th, and defeated. Philadelphia was captured, and the British established themselves in winter quarters in that city and in Germantown.

11. Defeat at Germantown.—October 4th, Washington attacked the enemy at Germantown. For a time victory seemed within his grasp, but a dense fog prevented the co-operation of the different divisions, and the fierce resistance of the enemy in a stone house still further complicated matters. The Americans withdrew at the moment of triumph.

12. Washington at Valley Forge.—Howe now re-

duced the forts below Philadelphia which shut off his supplies. Nothing more could be done by Washington, and he went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, leaving the enemy in possession of the capital and the most important city in the colonies.

CHAPTER XVIII.

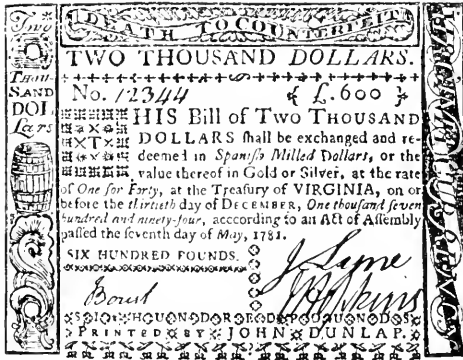
EVENTS OF 1778.

1. Sufferings of Washington's Army.—The winter of 1777-78 was unusually severe. Washington's army shivered and starved in their rags at Valley Forge, while Howe and his forces held high revel in Philadelphia,



WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT VALLEY FORGE.

twenty miles away. They were abundantly supplied with gold and lived on the fat of the land. The Continental currency in which the patriots were paid was almost worthless. Few of the soldiers had any bedding,



VIRGINIA CURRENCY.

and many could not obtain even straw. When they moved about they left their bloody footprints in the snow.



WASHINGTON IN PRAYER AT VALLEY FORGE.

During the coldest nights numbers huddled about the fires until daylight to save themselves from freezing.

2. **Help from Abroad.**—Baron Steuben, La Fayette, Pulaski, and De Kalb.—The spring, however, brought sunshine and hope. The sympathy of



GENERAL LA FAYETTE.

more than one European nation was roused in behalf of the struggling colonies, and a number of excellent officers joined the patriots. Among them were Baron Steuben and the Marquis de La Fayette.¹ The former became inspector-general of the army, and by his ability and skill brought it to a high state of discipline. Among others who gave great help to the Americans were Count Pulaski and the self-styled Baron de Kalb.

3. **Assistance from France.**—Through the efforts of Benjamin Franklin² the king of France concluded

¹ La Fayette, whose name will be for ever honored in America, was a chivalrous Frenchman who, when not twenty years old, with a lovely wife and great honors awaiting him in his own country, left them all and enlisted on the side of American independence. He bought a vessel with his own means, and, escaping the officers that sought to detain him, crossed the tempestuous Atlantic, landing at Charleston, whence he hastened to Philadelphia, where he asked Congress to permit him to serve as a volunteer without pay. He became a major-general before he was twenty-one, and enjoyed the fullest confidence and friendship of Washington.

² Benjamin Franklin was one of the most famous of Americans. He was born in Boston in 1706, and died in Philadelphia in 1790. His father

a treaty, February 6, 1778, with the United States, acknowledging its independence and pledging to give it material help. France loaned money, furnished military stores, and prepared to send a fleet to aid the colonies in the struggle.

4. Alarm of England.—England was alarmed. She sent commissioners to this country, and offered to give the colonies all that they asked, except the one great boon—independence. Since that was the aim of the patriots, and it was already in sight, the negotiations came to naught.

5. Evacuation of Philadelphia.—**Battle of Monmouth Court-house.**—The British army occupied Philadelphia until June. General Howe was succeeded by Sir Henry Clinton, who, afraid of being shut in by the French fleet, started overland for New York. Washington followed in hot pursuit, and overtook him at

was a soap-and-candlemaker, and Benjamin was the youngest son among seventeen children. By the most rigid economy he managed to buy a few books, which he studied whenever he could gain the chance. When seventeen years old he landed in Philadelphia with only a dollar or two in his possession. He secured work as a printer and was persuaded to go to England, where he found himself penniless, but he also found work and friends. He came back to Philadelphia, established a newspaper, and, beginning in 1732, published for twenty years *Poor Richard's Almanac*. This annual abounded with such quaint wit, homely philosophy, wise proverbs, and valuable household hints that it became popular in Europe as well as in America. He acquired a fine fortune and devoted himself to science. His discoveries in electricity made him renowned throughout the world. He was an ardent patriot, who contributed not only his best efforts, but his money, to the cause of American independence. He was immensely popular at the French court, and acquired great influence. He was thus enabled to render invaluable service to the colonies. On his return he was elected for three successive years president of Pennsylvania. He gave his entire salary, amounting to \$30,000, to benevolent objects. Great and deserving honors were shown to him on his death, his funeral being attended by more than twenty thousand persons.

Monmouth Court-house. The heat was so great that many soldiers in both armies were overcome. The battle was fought June 28, 1778.

6. Treachery of General Lee.—General Charles Lee, by disobedience of orders, came near losing the battle. At the critical moment, when all seemed lost, Washington assumed charge, ordered Lee to the rear, and turned the seeming defeat into victory. Molly Pitcher, seeing her husband, an artilleryman, fall at his post, seized the rammer and served the piece with great



MOLLY PITCHER.

skill during the rest of the battle. She was rewarded with a sergeant's commission and half-pay through life. The English stole off in the darkness, and continued their flight toward New York. General Lee was dismissed from the army for his incompetency. A few

WASHINGTON REPROVES LEE AT MONMOUTH.



years since proof was brought to light that Lee was a traitor to the American cause.

7. Retreat of General Sullivan.—General Sullivan marched with a considerable force to attack Newport. It had been arranged that the French fleet was to help him. This fleet had hardly entered Narragansett Bay when Howe appeared off the harbor with the English fleet. D'Estaing (dēs-täng') sailed out to fight him, but a severe storm compelled both fleets to put in for repairs. Sullivan, being left without his allies, retreated in time to escape Clinton, who was advancing from New York with a superior force.

8. The Southern Colonies Overrun.—Having failed so signally in the North, England now made the attempt, and succeeded too well, in overrunning the Southern colonies. By the close of the year Savannah was captured and Georgia subjugated.

CHAPTER XIX.

EVENTS OF 1779.

1. Conquest of Georgia.—Following out the plan of transferring the war to the South, the British forces completed the conquest of Georgia. They placed an English governor in power, and with some reason boasted that the mother-country had one loyal province among the rebellious colonies.

2. Repulse of the Combined Assault on Savannah.—D'Estaing joined Gen. Benj. Lincoln in September at Savannah. An assault on the city resulted in a repulse, with



COUNT PULASKI.

the loss of a thousand men. Among the killed were the brave Sergeant Jasper and Count Pulaski. D'Estaing gave the Americans no more help than at Newport. His course, indeed, seemed to justify the charge of timidity on his part.

3. Capture of Stony Point by General Wayne.—The colonies made little progress during 1779. On

the 15th of July, General Anthony Wayne, often known as "Mad Anthony" because of his dash and daring, marched with four regiments against Stony Point. The night was so sultry that the men threw off their outer clothing, but they eagerly charged, and, although met by a fierce resistance, quickly captured the post and secured nearly six hundred prisoners.

4. Massacre of Wyoming.—The Indians had taken sides with the British and committed many atro-



GENERAL ANTHONY WAYNE.

cities. The massacre of Wyoming, in the summer of 1778, was one of the most shocking in our history. The Indians murdered many families in the Mohawk Valley, and did so much evil that General Sullivan was sent with an expedition into the Indian country.

5. General Sullivan's Campaign against the Indians.—Sullivan made thorough work in his campaign against the Iroquois. He burned forty of their villages, and so utterly destroyed their harvest-fields that many Indians died during the following winter from starvation. It was fearful punishment, but it was necessary.

6. The War on the Ocean.—Great Britain had long claimed to be mistress of the seas. Few dreamed, at the opening of the Revolution, that any contest could be made with her on the ocean. We had no navy, and no means of building one, while she possessed the finest in the world. The pluck of the patriots, however, led them to fit out a number of swift-sailing privateers with which vast harm was done to the British shipping.



PAUL JONES.

7. Exploits of Paul Jones. — Paul Jones proved himself one of the most daring and skillful fighters that ever sailed on the ocean. Some of his exploits have never been sur-

passed in heroism. One night, in 1778, with thirty-one volunteers, he landed on the coast of Cumberland, set fire to three vessels in the harbor of Whitehaven, and spiked a number of cannon in the guard-room of the fort.

8. In 1779 he put to sea in the *Bon-Homme Richard*, an old Indiaman presented to him by the king of France. He was accompanied by two consorts, the *Alliance* and *Pallas*. On the evening of September 23d, when the full moon was shining, he opened battle with the British ship *Scrapis*, carrying fifty guns, while the *Bon-Homme Richard* had but forty-four.

9. Jones wished to fight at close quarters. After closing with the *Scrapis*, he found he could not bring his guns to bear, and fell off. The British commander shouted, "Have you struck?"—"Struck!" called out Jones; "I haven't begun fighting yet." As the *Scrapis* swung round her jib-boom caught in the rigging of the *Richard*, and Jones himself lashed the boom to the mast. The two ships were so close that when the *Scrapis* attempted to fire, she could not open her ports; so she cleared the way by blowing out the port-lids with her own shots.

10. This awful sea-fight lasted for two hours. In the height of the battle the French commander of Jones's consort, the *Alliance*, fired broadside after broadside into the *Richard*, which fought on, without paying attention to this fearful fire in the rear. The French captain was afterward pronounced insane.

11. The fight became hand to hand, and was continued with unsurpassable bravery on both sides. Each vessel was on fire several times, and when the English commander himself hauled down his flag, the din and

confusion were so overpowering that many believed it was the *Richard* that had surrendered.



MEDAL STRUCK IN HONOR OF PAUL JONES.

12. Subsequent Career of Paul Jones.—Jones had

barely time to remove his wounded and his crew to the *Scrapis* when his own vessel sank. Four-fifths of his men were killed or wounded. Jones received an appropriate medal and vote of thanks from Congress. This was the last battle he fought for the Americans. In 1788 he was made a rear-admiral in the Russian navy, and fought against the Turks. He died in Paris in 1792, in poverty and neglect.

CHAPTER XX.

EVENTS OF 1780.

1. **The Treason of Benedict Arnold.**—The most shocking incident of this year was the treason of General Benedict Arnold. He was one of the most daring



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

and skillful of soldiers, but a rogue lacking in moral sense. His extravagance and overbearing disposition made him very unpopular with his comrades. His oppressive acts in Philadelphia caused charges to be brought against him, and he was sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington performed the unpleasant duty as

gently as he could, for he remembered Arnold's gallant services before Quebec and at Bemis Heights.

2. The treason of Arnold was deliberate and without palliation. He secured from Washington the command of West Point, then the most important military post in America. He then arranged with General Clinton to surrender it to him. Major André acted as the bearer of letters between the two, but was captured by three Americans while on his return to New York.

3. Capture and Execution of Andre.—

André offered a large reward to his captors if they would release him, but they refused, and delivered him and his papers to the nearest American post. These papers were in the handwriting of Arnold,



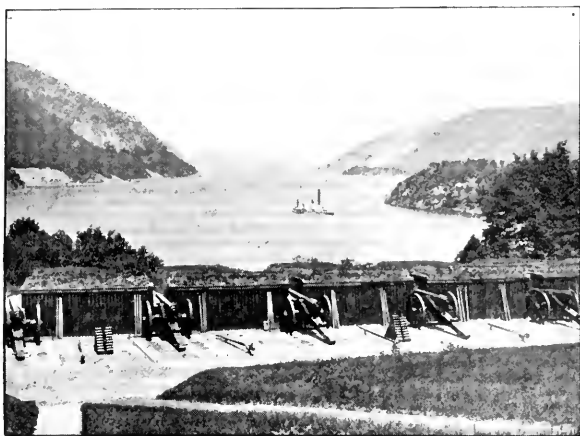
MAJOR ANDRÉ.

and left no doubt of his treason. He was warned, however, in time, and safely reached the British lines. He was paid some thirty thousand dollars for his treachery, and was made a colonel in the British army. He was despised, however, by the people whom he had served, and died, in 1801, in London, detested by everybody. André, having incurred the penalty of a spy, was convicted, and hanged on October 2d. A great deal of sympathy (some of it altogether misplaced) has been expressed for the unfortunate young man.

4. The War in the South.—**The Career of General Gates.**—The British pressed the war in the South. Charleston was captured in May, 1780. General Gates, the capturer of Burgoyne, assumed command of all the patriot troops in the South. He and his friends at one

time thought him the superior of Washington, and an effort was put forth to make him commander-in-chief.

5. The career of Gates in the South proved that

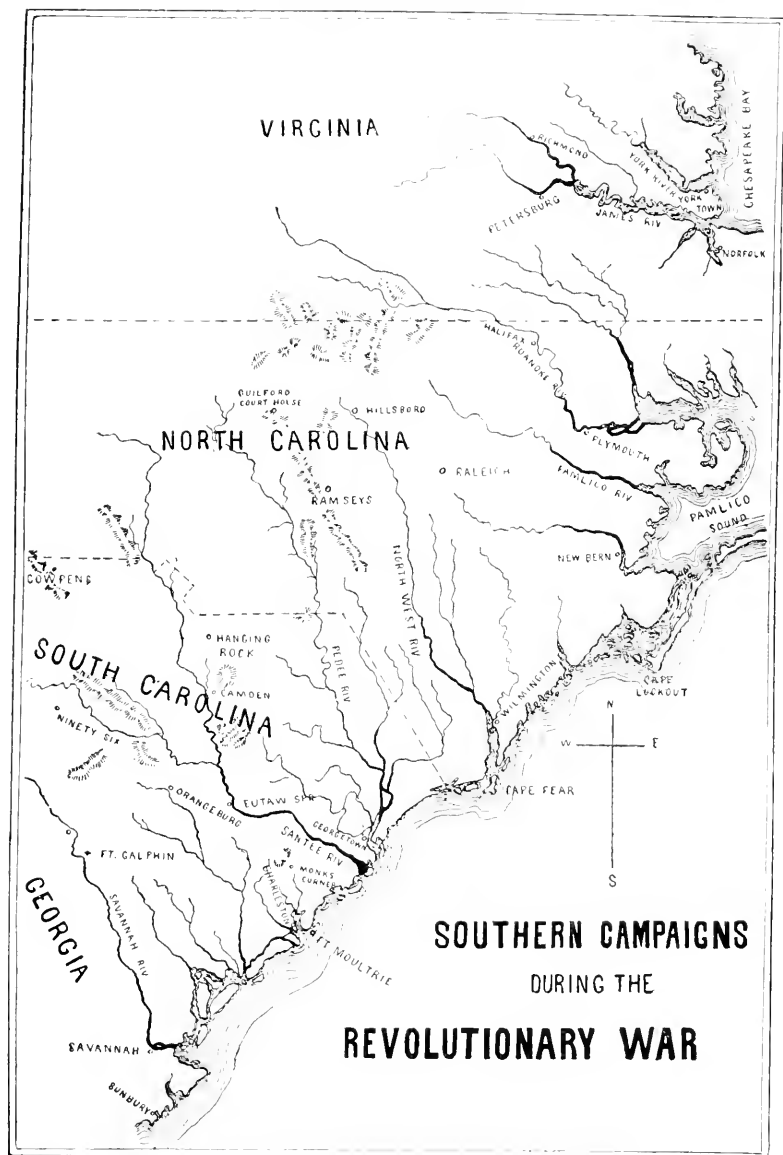


LOOKING UP THE HUDSON FROM THE WATER BATTERY, WEST POINT.

no greater calamity could have befallen the cause of American independence than that of placing him, or indeed any one other than Washington, at the head of the army. Lord Cornwallis, the ablest British general of the Revolution, routed Gates at the battle of Camden in South Carolina. The patriot forces throughout the South were so shattered and broken that organized resistance ended for the time.

6. **Partisan Fighting in the South.**—There was a great deal of fighting, however, in that section. Marion, the “Swamp Fox,” Pickens, Sumter, and Gen. Henry Lee at the head of their daring horsemen, struck many effective blows against the invaders. Sometimes they were strong enough to capture small garrisons and cut off considerable detachments of troops.

7. **The Severe Winter of 1779-80.**—Washington



at Morristown.—The winter of 1779–80 was one of the severest ever known in this country. Washington's army at Morristown suffered as intensely as at Valley Forge. Men were frozen to death on the highways;



MARION INVITING THE BRITISH OFFICERS TO DINNER.

animals died by the hundred; wolves, rendered desperate, attacked people at their own doors; the ordinary channels of trade were closed; and for weeks it was a struggle for people, even in the cities, to save themselves from perishing.

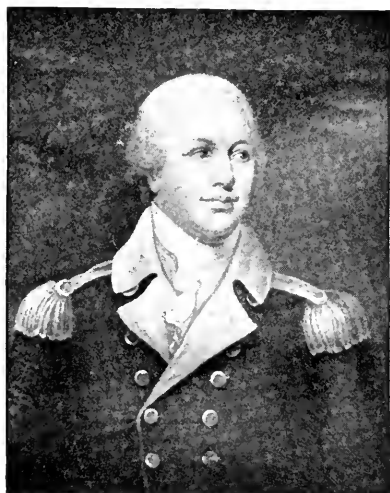
S. Return of La Fayette.—Further Aid from France.—La Fayette returned from France in the spring with good news. His country had fitted out an armament of land and naval forces which would soon be sent to this country. The fleet arrived off Rhode Island in July. The British, however, had the stronger fleet, and blockaded the French at Newport.

Clinton did not dare leave New York to go to the assistance of his countrymen, for Washington was waiting to attack the city. He remained below Tappan until winter, the two armies closely watching each other.

CHAPTER XXI.

EVENTS OF 1781.—CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. General Greene.—His Character, and Services in the South.—General Greene resembled Washington in many respects. He



GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE.

was able, courageous, and a devoted patriot. Gates having met with signal failure in the South, Greene took charge of the remnant of the army. The men numbered barely two thousand, were in rags, half starved, and poorly armed. Greene secured a good many recruits and effected great improvement in discipline.

2. Battle of the Cowpens.—At the battle of the Cowpens, in January, Morgan, the patriot leader, defeated a strong force under Tarleton. Cornwallis with his powerful army hurried forward to recapture the prisoners and to punish the Americans. Greene with admirable skill retreated across

North Carolina to Virginia, with Cornwallis close after him. The race was a hot one, but the Americans won.

3. Defeat of the Americans at Guilford Court-house.—Greene thought himself strong enough to risk a battle, which took place, March 15th, at Guilford Court-house. The American militia showed little bravery, but the Continental regulars proved themselves heroes. In the end the Americans were compelled to retire from the field, but the army of Cornwallis was so broken that he withdrew toward the seacoast with Greene at his heels.

4. Brilliant Achievements of the Patriots in the South.—Cornwallis with his accustomed skill effected a junction with the British troops in Virginia, and thereby saved himself. Greene then turned about, and gave his efforts to reconquering South Carolina. In this work he received much help from Marion, Pickens, Sumter, and the partisan leaders. When the weak forces at the disposal of Greene, and the many disadvantages under which he labored, are taken into account, his success was remarkable. He recovered Georgia and the Carolinas, with the exception of their three leading seaports, from English rule.

5. Benedict Arnold's Marauding Expedition.—Benedict Arnold, the traitor, had led a marauding expedition into Virginia in January. La Fayette essayed to check him, but his force was too weak. Upon the arrival of Cornwallis from the South he took charge and continued the work of destruction. By command of Clinton, who feared an attack from Washington upon New York, Cornwallis kept near the seacoast, so as to be ready to go to his help.

6. Cornwallis at Yorktown.—The end was approaching. Cornwallis fortified himself at Yorktown,

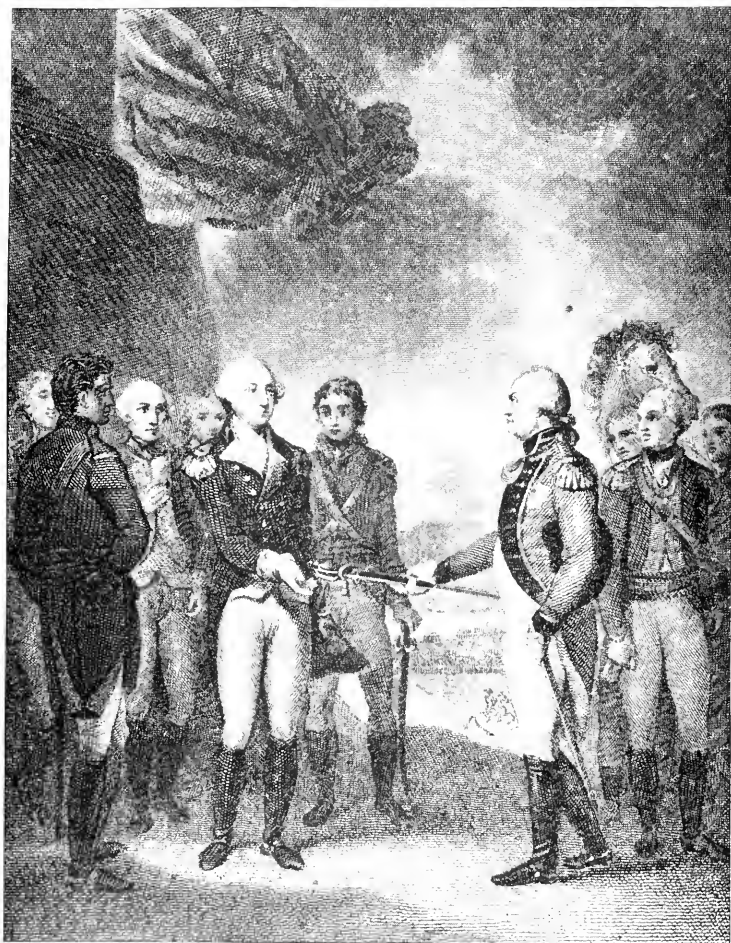
while Washington marched southward, accompanied by the French army under Rochambeau (rō-shām-bo'). The French fleet blockaded the British forces, and fired red-hot shells among them, the allies, sixteen thousand strong, opening the attack on the 28th of September.

7. Surrender of Cornwallis.—The best of feeling prevailed between the French and Americans. The siege was vigorously pressed until Cornwallis, seeing no way of escape, surrendered October 19th. The allied



THE SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN.

armies were drawn up in two columns, with Washington and Rochambeau on horseback at their head. The captured army of seven thousand, with shouldered arms and slow step, passed between them. The humiliated Cornwallis remained away under the plea of sickness, and sent his sword by General O'Hara. Washington directed that it should be received by General Lincoln,



CORNWALLIS SURRENDERING HIS SWORD TO WASHINGTON.



GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN.

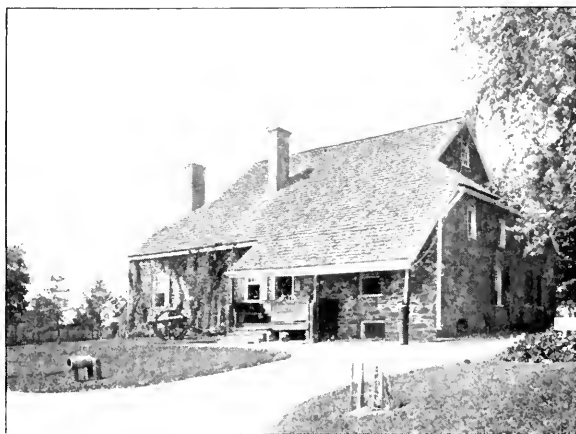
who, the year before, had been compelled to surrender Charleston.

8. Independence of America.—Spread of the Tidings.—Peace.—Hardly had the surrender taken place when a courier leaped into the saddle and started at headlong speed for Philadelphia. Changing horses frequently, he dashed into the city late on the evening of the 23d with the glorious tidings. The watchmen, making their rounds, startled the sleepy citizens with a change in their usual cry: "*Past two o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken!*"

9. In a short time the city was in a uproar. Bells were set ringing, men hurrahed and shouted, and it seemed as if every one was on the street. Early the next morning Congress marched in solemn procession to church, and gave thanks to God for the deliverance of the nation. The aged doorkeeper was so overcome with joy that he dropped dead.

10. Upon receiving news of the surrender at Yorktown, England gave up all hope of conquering her colonies. The conditions of peace were agreed upon, and a treaty was signed at Paris, September 3, 1783. By this treaty Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States.

11. **Washington's Retirement to Private Life.**—Washington, who had won an enduring place in the hearts of his countrymen, resigned his command of the army and bade his officers an affecting farewell. The ceremony took place at his head-quarters, Newburgh,



WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT NEWBURGH.

N. Y. Then the illustrious Father of his Country as a private citizen gladly returned to Mount Vernon, his dearest wish being that he might be allowed to end his days there in quiet and peace.

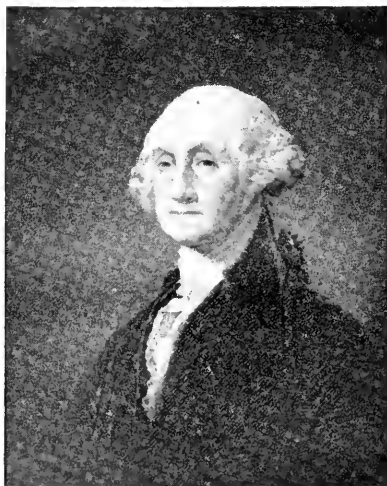
PART IV.

GROWTH OF THE STATES.

CHAPTER XXII.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-97.

1. The United States a Nation.—The long struggle of the American colonies for independence had ended in triumph. The United States was now a nation, with boundless opportunities. The field for development was a vast expanse, stretching from ocean to ocean, and from the frozen regions on the north to the torrid zone on the south. Climate, soil, and natural facilities combined to render it the chosen land of liberty, of enterprise, and of progress.



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

2. Condition of the Country.—But the end of the Revolution left the United States in a deplorable

condition. All commerce had been destroyed and the currency was worthless. The torch of the enemy had burned many thriving towns and villages; crops had been laid waste; there were few manufactures, and the country was as poor as it could be.

3. The most trying crisis in the history of a nation often comes at the end of a great war. Although the victory at Yorktown really ended the struggle, for a time no one could feel certain that it had done so. King George III. was stubborn, and had Parliament consented would have been glad to renew the war. Charleston was held for more than a year, and New York and Savannah for about two years, after the surrender at Yorktown.

4. **Domestic Perils.**—Besides all this, the United States was in peril from its own army. The soldiers, who had suffered and undergone so much, feared they would be sent home without any pay. They petitioned Congress, but that body could do nothing, for the treasury was empty. In their desperation they urged Washington to become king. That pure patriot spurned the offer. He calmed the violent, and by his lofty bearing soothed the malcontents, and in a short time the trouble ended.

5. **A New Danger.**—A new danger now manifested itself. The States were virtually independent of each other. The most that Congress could do was to recommend certain legislation, but the States paid little heed to its requests. They were jealous of each other, and would not levy the taxes necessary, while Congress had no power to do so.

6. **Adoption of the Constitution.**—The thoughtful men of the country saw that there was but one remedy for this sad plight. That was the formation of a strong national government. Accordingly a convention was

called in Philadelphia to revise the Articles of Confederation. Washington presided. After much debate the present Constitution was adopted, September 17, 1787. In order to become effective it was necessary that it should be accepted by the respective States. Ten promptly accepted it, and it therefore went into effect in 1788. New York adopted it in time to take part in the first Presidential election; North Carolina fell into line the following year; and Rhode Island, last of all, in 1790.

7. Thus the Confederation ended, and the new "Union" took its place. The States had become a nation that we must believe will endure for ever. There remained a President to be chosen, and all eyes naturally turned toward one man, the Father of his Country.

8. Washington Chosen First President.—Washington, since resigning his commission, had been living the quiet life of a country gentleman on his estate at Mount Vernon. It was his wish to end his days there. He had well earned the repose, but he was too pure and lofty a patriot to disregard the call of his country. He was unanimously chosen first President, with John Adams of Massachusetts Vice-President.¹

¹ George Washington, as stated elsewhere, was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, February 22, 1732. His father died when he was eleven years old, and his education was directed by his mother, a woman of great tact and force of character. The bashful, hesitating boy became manly, truthful, and obedient. He excelled in strength, activity, and athletic sports. There were few of his age who could equal him in throwing, swimming, leaping, or running, and he was one of the finest horsemen in Virginia.

At the age of sixteen Washington was employed to examine the valleys of the Alleghany Mountains, and performed his task with admirable skill. When nineteen he was appointed adjutant-general over one of the districts of Virginia, his rank being that of major. He studied military tactics under his brother and other officers, and developed such ability

9. Washington's Journey to New York.—Washington's journey from his home to New York was a continuous ovation. In Philadelphia he was welcomed by a procession of five thousand people, representing many trades and pursuits. At Trenton he rode under an arch, which is still preserved, bearing the inscription, "The Defender of the Mothers will be the Preserver of the Daughters." Young ladies threw flowers in front of his horse and sang a song of welcome. These happy greetings attended him all the way to New York City, which was the nation's temporary capital.

10. Inauguration of Washington.—Washington was inaugurated President of the United States on the 30th of April, 1789. The ceremony took place on the balcony of the old Federal Hall, and was very impressive. The great man fully appreciated the grave and difficult task before him.

11. One hundred years ago the nation was but an infant compared with the United States of to-day. The population was about one-fifteenth, and was distributed that when the districts of Virginia were reduced to four, he was left in command of one of them. As stated elsewhere, he was but twenty-one years old when he was sent by Governor Dinwiddie on the mission to the French posts on the Ohio. His bravery, patriotism, and skill in the French and Indian War won the confidence of his countrymen, and led to his appointment as commander-in-chief of the American forces during the Revolution. His management of affairs could not have been surpassed. While not a military genius, his judgment was almost perfect; his patriotism was pure, his devotion to his country unsurpassable, and his faith in our independence and future was never shaken.

Washington was impulsive at times, and, as General Charles Lee learned at Monmouth, he was terrible in his wrath. He was a devout Christian, a strict disciplinarian of himself as well as the army, an ideal gentleman, reserved and somewhat aristocratic in his tastes, a magnificent man physically, and one who commanded the respect of his foes and the reverence of his friends. He will ever remain the grandest and most heroic figure in American history.

mainly along the seacoast. To the westward the bulk of the American continent was a vast wilderness, as unknown then as Central Australia is to-day.

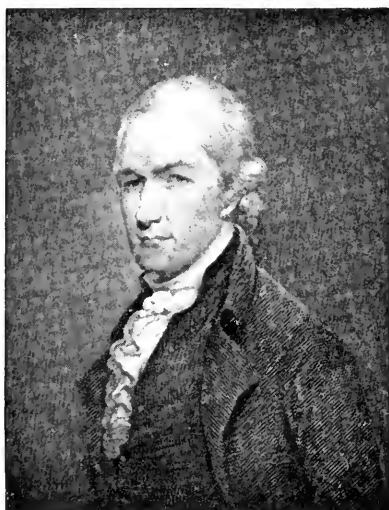
12. Serious Work for the New Administration.—

The new administration had serious work on its hands from the first. The nation had no money and no credit. The Indians on the frontier were hostile; Spain controlled the navigation of the Mississippi; and the few American ships cruising in the Mediterranean were preyed upon by pirates from the Barbary States. But we had able men at the head of the government, and Washington was a profound and far-seeing statesman.

13. The Political Parties.—The two political parties were the Federalists, who believed in a strong national government, and the Republicans, afterward called Democrats, who favored the increase of State powers at the expense of the national government.

14. Public Credit

Secured.—Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury, was an able financier. By his advice Congress assumed the debts contracted by the States



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

during the Revolution, and pledged itself to pay the national debt. To secure funds, taxes were levied on distilled spirits and imported goods. A national bank

and a mint were established in Philadelphia. Public credit was thus secured.

15. The Whiskey Insurrection.—Taxes are never popular. The people in Western Pennsylvania declared they would pay none on whiskey. "The Whiskey Insurrection" in 1794 was so formidable that it required a force of fifteen thousand militia to subdue the rioters.

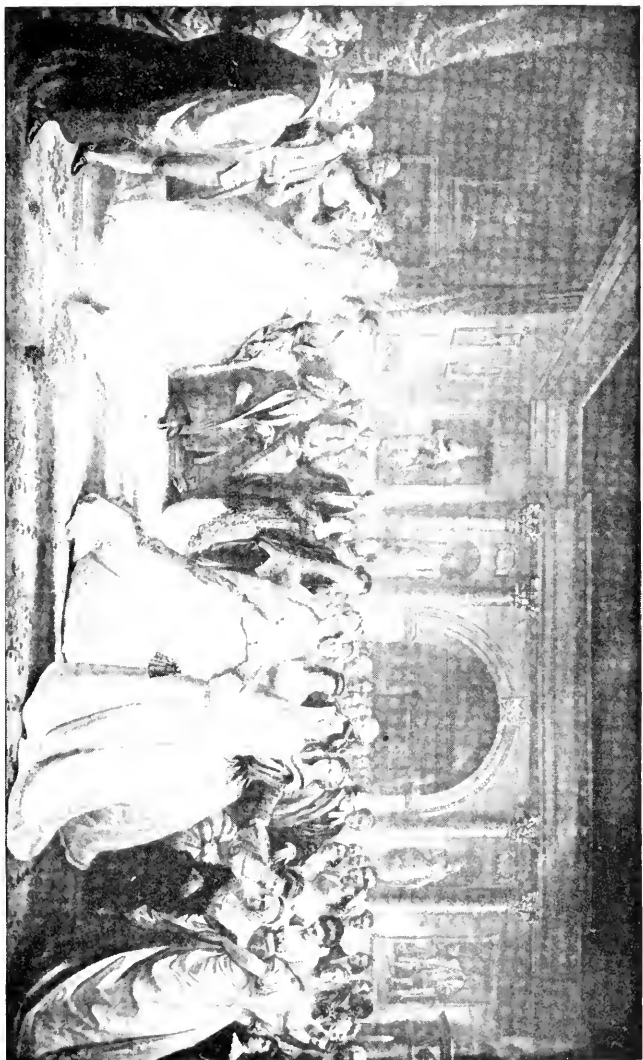
16. Removal of Congress to Philadelphia.—**Washington made the National Capital.**—Congress removed from New York to Philadelphia in 1790. This city remained the capital until 1800, when Washington



THE WHITE HOUSE, WASHINGTON.

was made the capital, and that city was laid out by the great man after whom it was named in 1793. George Washington and Adams were re-elected in 1792.

17. Conquest of the Indians.—The Indians on the frontier gave great trouble. They not only murdered hundreds of settlers, but defeated several military expeditions sent against them. Finally, General Anthony Wayne took the field. August 20, 1794, he fought a great battle with them on the Maumee. The Indians were utterly routed, their towns laid waste, and they



LADY WASHINGTON'S RECEPTION.

were forced to make a treaty, by which they gave up twenty-five thousand square miles north of the Ohio.

18. Treaties with Algiers and Spain.—In 1795 a treaty was signed with Algiers, which opened commerce to American vessels and released those of our citizens who were held captives. A treaty was made shortly after with Spain, which fixed the boundary of Florida and secured the free navigation of the Mississippi.

19. Trouble with the French Minister.—Naturally, the Americans felt a strong friendship for France, for we can never forget the valuable aid she gave us during the Revolution. When, therefore, war broke out between that country and England, our people were eager to help France. It was hard for Washington to preserve our neutrality. The French minister was so defiant that he began fitting out privateers in our ports to prey upon British commerce, and insulted our government. Washington asked for his recall, but the trouble was not yet ended.

20. New States Admitted.—Vermont became a State in 1791; Kentucky, in 1792; and Tennessee, in 1796. Thus at the end of Washington's administration the thirteen original States had become sixteen. The region between the Ohio and Mississippi constituted the North-western Territory. The first census of the nation was taken in 1790, and showed that the population was about four millions.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797-1801.

1. The Second Presidential Election.—John Adams¹ was elected second President by the Federalists over

¹ John Adams, second President of the United States, was born at

Thomas Jefferson, candidate of the Republicans, or Democrats as they soon came to be called. Jefferson, receiving the next highest number of votes, became Vice-President.

2. Trouble with France.—The administration of



JOHN ADAMS.

Adams was chiefly concerned with France. Notwithstanding the strong friendship that had existed between that country and ourselves during the Revolution, war seemed certain more than once. Napoleon Bonaparte, the greatest military genius of modern times, was at the beginning of his wonderful career. His government refused to recognize our minister,

and finally ordered him to leave the country.

3. President Adams was anxious to avoid a war, and, having been assured that our envoys would be received with proper respect, sent three of them to France. On

Braintree, Mass., in October, 1735. He graduated at Harvard College at the age of twenty, and was admitted to the bar three years later. He was an active and powerful member of both the First and Second Continental Congresses, and did much to strengthen the American sentiment of independence. He persuaded Congress to adopt the Declaration of Independence, and it was at his suggestion that Washington was appointed to the chief command of the army. Adams was able, honest, and courageous, but irritable and conceited. The latter qualities had much to do with his defeat when he ran a second time for the Presidency.

their arrival they were told that in order to secure peace with the French government they must make it a loan and pay bribes to certain members.

4. Our envoys indignantly spurned the offer, and the country prepared for war. Ships were built, an army equipped, and Washington made commander-in-chief. What were termed the Alien and Sedition Laws were passed. The former allowed the President to expel any foreigner whose presence was deemed dangerous to the country. The latter authorized the fining or imprisonment of any one libeling the President or government.

5. **War Averted.—Death of Washington.**—Shots were exchanged on the ocean, and it may be said that war did actually begin. At this crisis Napoleon became supreme in governmental affairs in France. He wished no trouble with this country, and on September 30, 1800, made a new agreement, by which it was averted. Washington, the Father of his Country, died at Mount Vernon, December 14, 1799.

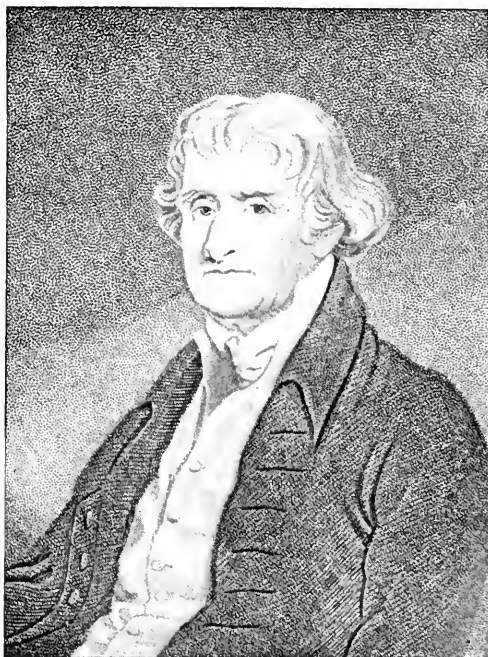
6. **The Alien and Sedition Laws.—Presidential Election of 1800.**—The trouble with France caused strong party feeling in the United States. The Alien and Sedition Laws were very unpopular. The feeling showed itself when Adams ran a second time as the Federal candidate. He was defeated, and no President was ever afterward elected on that ticket. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr received the same number of votes. This threw the election into the House of Representatives, which on the thirty-sixth ballot chose Jefferson President,¹ and in 1804 he was elected to a second term, with George Clinton as Vice-President.

¹ Thomas Jefferson, third President of the United States, was born at Shadwell, Va., April 2, 1743. He was the best educated man of his times, a fine horseman, an excellent violinist, and understood Latin,

CHAPTER XXIV.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-09.

1. **Duel between Burr and Hamilton.**—Vice-President Burr was a brilliant but evil man. He hated



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

Greek, French, Spanish, and Italian. With the exception of a few trifling words he wrote the Declaration of Independence. He was the founder of a party whose fundamental idea was to curtail the power of the general government and increase that of State governments. He favored simplicity, economy, and reform, and on the day of his inauguration, instead of proceeding to the Capitol in state, as Washington and Adams had done, he rode thither alone on horseback. His administration was brilliant and successful. It was while he was in office that Lewis and

Hamilton, and challenged him to a duel. Hamilton was shot July 11, and died July 12, 1804. The whole country was shocked. Burr was afterward tried for plotting against the government. He was acquitted, but became an outcast.

2. Purchase of Louisiana.—War declared by Tripoli.—April 30, 1803, Louisiana was bought of Napoleon for the sum of \$15,000,000. The bashaw (or ruler) of Tripoli had become accustomed for years to capture the vessels of Christian nations and hold their crews for ransom. These nations paid an annual tribute to the bashaw to secure immunity from these attacks.



STEPHEN DECATUR.

Finally, in 1801, this petty ruler actually declared war against the United States.

3. Tripoli Defeated.

—He soon learned his mistake. Our infant navy was sent to the Mediterranean, and Decatur, Bainbridge, Stewart, and others taught the bashaw a lesson which he never forgot. Tripoli was blockaded and bombarded, and on June 3, 1805, the thoroughly

frightened ruler was glad to make peace.

Clark made their exploration of the North-west; that the immense territory west of the Mississippi was purchased from France; and that our decimal system of currency displaced the cumbersome pounds, shillings, and pence system of Great Britain.

4. **The Lewis and Clark Expedition.**—In May, 1804, Captains Lewis and Clark led an exploring expedition westward. It penetrated to the Columbia River, which was traced to the Pacific. It was the first party of white men to cross the continent north of Mexico. The explorers were absent two years, and the report of their journey was very interesting.

5. **The First Steamboat.**—The year 1807 was made memorable by the first voyage of a steamboat in American waters. This was the *Katherine of Clermont*, which was launched at New York, and began her voyage up

the Hudson on the first of August. She was the invention of Robert Fulton, and took thirty-two hours to travel one hundred and five miles to Albany, but the event marked an era in the history of civilization.



ROBERT FULTON.

6. **Sufferings because of European Wars.**—England and France were engaged at this time in a tremendous war. Napoleon Bonaparte was fairly launched on his amazing military career,

and had conquered most of Western Europe. England forbade trade with France, and Napoleon, in turn, forbade commerce with England. The United States, as a neutral nation, was oppressed by both the belligerents, and suffered much.

7. The Alleged Right of Search.—The most exasperating indignity, however, to which we were subjected was from Great Britain. She was in need of seamen, and enforced the so-called right of search. She stopped American vessels on the high seas, and forcibly took off such men as her officers said were English subjects. In many instances those who were born in this country were impressed into the service of a foreign nation. Protests did no good, and the British navy was powerful enough to laugh at us.

8. The Affair of the Leopard and Chesapeake.—In June, 1807, the British frigate *Leopard* poured several broadsides into the American frigate *Chesapeake* while cruising off the coast of Virginia. The excuse was that the American had a number of British deserters on board. Three men were killed and eighteen wounded. The *Chesapeake* was unprepared for action, and struck her flag. The *Leopard* took off four deserters, three of whom were negroes. The Englishman was hanged.

9. This occurrence threw the country into excitement. Captain Barron, the commander of the *Chesapeake*, was denounced as a coward in many quarters. Among those most impatient with him was the impetuous Decatur, who would accept no explanation of the surrender. Years after he and Barron fought a duel, in which Decatur was killed.

10. President Jefferson immediately issued a proclamation ordering all British vessels of war to quit American waters. A special minister was sent to England to demand satisfaction. England disavowed the act of her officer, but would not yield the right of search. She promised reparation, but never made it.

11. The Embargo Act.—Congress, in December, 1807, passed an Embargo Act, which forbade American vessels

to leave any port in the United States. It was believed that by suspending commercial intercourse with Great Britain and France those nations would be forced to recognize our rights. Our commerce, however, was the chief sufferer, and the act was very unpopular, especially in New England and New York. It was repealed in 1809.

12. The Presidential Election of 1808.—The country was in this unsettled state when Jefferson's second term ended. James Madison,¹ the Republican or Democratic candidate, was elected as his successor, with George Clinton of New York, who was re-elected as Vice-President.

CHAPTER XXV.

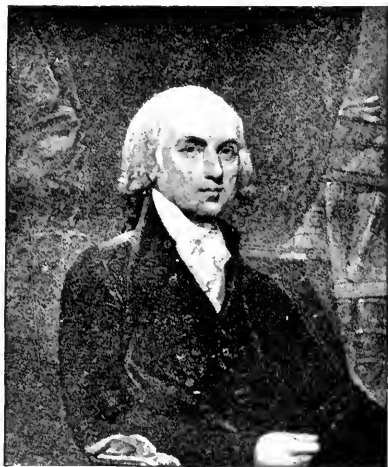
MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-17.—THE WAR OF 1812.—FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR.

1. Indian Troubles.—The resentment of the Americans against England was increased, in 1811, by the breaking out of an Indian war in the North-west. The red men were encouraged to hostilities by British agents, who furnished them arms and ammunition. Tecumseh, war-chief of the Shawnees, and one of the ablest Indians that ever lived, did much to unite the different tribes in the North-west. General Harrison, Governor of Indiana

¹ James Madison, fourth President of the United States, was born in King George county, Virginia, in 1751. He was a member of the Virginia Legislature during the Revolution, and afterward a member of Congress. In the Convention of 1787 he was one of the ablest advocates of the Constitution. He was Jefferson's Secretary of State, and followed his policy when he became President. He possessed a fine education, was courteous and sunny-tempered, of spotless character, and when he died it was said that the whole nation were his friends.

Territory, routed them in a battle fought at Tippecanoe in November, 1811. Tecumseh was absent at the time, and soon afterward entered the British service.

2. Engagement between the *Little Belt* and the *President*.—England continued her impressment of seamen. She even sent war-vessels into our waters to prosecute her offensive search. The British sloop *Little Belt*, while thus engaged, hailed off the coast of Virginia the American frigate *President*. Not liking the reply, the sloop sent a cannon-shot into the *President*. The latter let fly with several broadsides, killing eleven and wounding twenty-one of the British crew. The *Little Belt* then concluded to be more civil.



JAMES MADISON.

3. War Declared by the United States.—June 19, 1812, the United States declared war against England. It must be remembered, however, that the war was not favored in all parts of the country. New England was strongly opposed to it, and on the shipping in Boston harbor the flags were placed at half-mast on receipt of the news. The other sections were strongly in favor of a vigorous prosecution of the war.

4. Disasters to the American Arms.—One of the first steps decided upon was to invade Canada, but the Americans were only half prepared, and for a time

everything went wrong. Fort Mackinaw, between Lake Huron and Lake Michigan, was captured by the enemy before the American commander knew that war had been declared. Then General William Hull, commanding a large force at Detroit, shamefully surrendered to the British and Indians. He had been a brave officer during the Revolution, but was now old and timid. Indeed, it was his previous record only which saved him from being shot for cowardice. This disgraceful surrender took place August 16, 1812.

5. Second Attempt to Invade Canada.—A second attempt was made to invade Canada. General Van Rensselaer sent a detachment across the Niagara River to attack the British at Queenstown Heights. The enemy was defeated, and General Brock, their commander, killed. General Van Rensselaer made ready to follow up his success, but his militia refused to leave the State. The brave but small force on the Canadian shore, being thus deserted, was obliged to surrender. The Americans lost fully a thousand in killed and wounded. General Van Rensselaer was so disgusted that he resigned his commission.

6. Results of the First Year of the War to the Army.—The first year of the war was one of disaster and defeat to the army. The only success worthy of the name was achieved by the infant navy.

7. Strength of the British Navy.—It must be remembered that Great Britain had been engaged so continuously in war that she was fully ready for that of 1812. Her navy numbered a thousand and thirty-six vessels, of which about one-fourth were ships-of-the-line, and none carried less than seventy guns of large calibre. She had eighty-five war-vessels ready for action at the different stations on the American coast. Her

navy was manned by one hundred and forty-four thousand sailors.

8. **The American Navy.—Its Exploits.**—To combat this prodigious force the Americans had twenty large vessels and a few gunboats. The government had almost decided to make no contest on the ocean, when Captains Bainbridge and Stewart persuaded the authorities to let the little navy do the best it could.

9. Within two hours after the commander of the *President* learned that war had been declared he put to sea. Coming up with the frigate *Belvidere*, he killed seven of her crew, but she managed to escape. Sixteen of the *President's* crew were killed by the explosion of a gun.

10. August 19th the American frigate *Constitution* and



NAVAL BATTLE.

the *Guerrière* (gāre-e-āre') fought a terrific battle off the coast of Newfoundland. In less than half an hour every mast and almost every spar of the British sloop-of-war was shot away. She had seventy-nine killed and

wounded when she surrendered, while the Americans had only seven killed and seven wounded. The commander of the *Constitution* was Captain Isaac Hull, a nephew of the cowardly General Hull.

11. In October the American sloop-of-war *Wasp* fell in with the brig *Frolic* off the coast of North Carolina. They fought at such close quarters that the spars of the *Wasp* were shot away. The two ships grappled, and the Americans swarmed over the deck of the *Frolic*. They found only the man at the wheel and a couple of officers. Every one else was below. The *Wasp* had lost but ten men, while there were not twenty unhurt on the *Frolic*. The British man-of-war *Poictiers*, however, soon bore down and captured both vessels.

12. A few days later Commodore Stephen Decatur, commanding the frigate *United States*, captured a packet with a large sum of specie. He fought the frigate *Macedonian* for two hours, at the end of which time he had but twelve men killed, while the enemy lost more than a hundred.

13. Later in the year Bainbridge, commanding the old *Constitution*, fought the frigate *Jara* off the coast of Brazil. Every mast was driven from the British ship, and her hull burst with round-shot. When her flag was struck her captain was mortally wounded, and she had lost one hundred and twenty men. The loss of the *Constitution* was but thirty-four.

14. **Presidential Election of 1812.**—The war was no more than fairly under way when the Presidential election took place. Madison was re-elected, with Elbridge Gerry as Vice-President in place of George Clinton. This was an endorsement of the war, and the naval victories aroused great enthusiasm throughout the country.

CHAPTER XXVI.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-17 (continued).—
THE WAR OF 1812.—SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR.

1. Organization of the American Army.—The United States now prepared to prosecute the war with vigor. The forces were organized in three divisions: the Army of the North, under General Wade Hampton, was to operate in the country around Lake Champlain; the Army of the Centre, under direction of the commander-in-chief, General Henry Dearborn, was to resume offensive movements on the Niagara frontier and Lake Ontario; and the Army of the West, under General Harrison, was to act in that section.

2. Operations of the Armies of the Centre and North.—Little was done by the Armies of the Centre and North. In April, General Pike led an attack against York, now Toronto. It was captured after a brief but sharp struggle. Two hundred of the assailants were killed and wounded, among them General Pike, who met his death from the explosion of a powder-magazine. General Dearborn landed shortly after and took possession of the town.

3. General Wilkinson succeeded Dearborn, and started down the St. Lawrence to join General Hampton in an attack on Montreal. Learning that Hampton had returned to Plattsburg, the expedition was abandoned. This includes about all that was done by the two armies in 1813.

4. Operations by the Army of the West.—A part of the Army of the West was captured at Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, by General Proctor, who next laid siege to Fort Meigs, where Harrison was posted. He

was repulsed, and then attacked Fort Stephenson. Major Croghan, a young man barely of age, with only one hundred and sixty men, made such a valiant defense that the British were beaten off.

5. Exploits of the Navy.—As during the preceding year, the principal American successes were on the water. In February the sloop-of-war *Hornet* fell in with the English brig-of-war *Peacock*, off British Guiana, and in fifteen minutes compelled her to strike her colors. She sank so suddenly that several of the Americans, who had gone to her aid, went down with her. Captain Lawrence, who commanded the *Hornet*, was promoted to the command of the *Chesapeake*, then refitting at Boston.

6. The Chesapeake and Shannon.—Captain Broke of the *Shannon* challenged Lawrence to come out and fight him. Lawrence foolishly accepted the challenge and went out, with his frigate ill prepared and a part of his crew under the influence of liquor. The battle was a furious one. Lawrence was twice wounded, the last time mortally. As he was carried below he uttered the memorable words, "Don't give up the ship!" which afterward served many times as the watchword of our navy when going into action. Within fifteen minutes after the fight opened the *Chesapeake* was captured, with the loss of nearly a hundred and fifty killed and wounded.

7. Decatur Shut in at New London.—On the day the *Chesapeake* was taken, Decatur, in command of the *United States*, *Macdonian*, and *Hornet*, was chased into New London by a strong British squadron, and kept there during the rest of the war. He tried many times to get to sea, but was baffled in every instance. He declared that traitors on shore warned the British by

burning blue lights. In the partisan excitement of the times the Federal party was given the name of "Blue Lights."

8. **Perry's Victory on Lake Erie.**—One of the grandest triumphs in the history of the American navy was gained September 10, 1813. Captain Oliver Hazard Perry, less than thirty years of age, who had never seen a naval battle, commanded a squadron of ten vessels and fifty-five guns. With this he set out on Lake Erie to look for Commodore Barclay and his six vessels with sixty-three guns.



COMMODORE OLIVER H. PERRY.

9. The battle was fought at the western end of Lake Erie. It was hardly opened when Perry's flag ship was detached from the others, and assailed so furiously that in two

hours she was in a sinking condition. Perry embarked in a small boat, and was hastily rowed toward the *Niagara*. He passed within a few rods of the British, who fired repeatedly at him, but he was not harmed.

10. Reaching the *Niagara*, his flag was hoisted. The British were trying to form a new line of battle, and some confusion resulted. Perry drove the *Niagara* directly through the fleet, delivering broadsides right and left. The rest of his squadron hastened to his assistance. In fifteen minutes the enemy was helpless,

and by four o'clock in the afternoon the whole British fleet had surrendered.

11. This victory has rendered the name of Perry immortal. When he was forming his line of battle he ran up a flag bearing the words of poor Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship!" The dispatch which he sent to General Harrison, announcing the victory, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours," became as famous as the words of the dying Lawrence.

12. **Victory at the Thames.**—A great deal depended on the issue of this battle. If the British won, Proctor was ready to invade Ohio. If the Americans proved the victors, Harrison was to enter Canada. The way being open, General Harrison lost no time in carrying out his purpose. He overtook the fleeing enemy on the river Thames. They were overwhelmed by the fierce charge of the Americans, and surrendered. Tecumseh was killed, and Proctor escaped on a fleet horse.

13. **Troubles with the Indians.**—This victory, following so close upon Perry's, was decisive as regarded the war. There was trouble with the Creek Indians in the South. The visit of Tecumseh had stirred them into forming a league. Many of the frightened inhabitants took refuge in Fort Mimms, on Lake Tensas. There they were assailed on the 30th of August, and every woman and child killed. Of the garrison of nearly two hundred, only twelve escaped.

CHAPTER XXVII.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-17 (continued).—
THE WAR OF 1812.—CLOSE OF THE WAR.

1. Defeat of the Creek Indians.—The Creeks were made to pay dearly for the massacre at Fort Mimms. General Andrew Jackson led a strong volunteer force against them. The Indians were driven from one point to another, and finally made their last stand at Horse-shoe Bend. There, March 27, 1814, they were overwhelmed. They fought desperately, but six hundred were killed, and half that number fled. Their spirits were crushed, and they were ready to make peace on any terms.

2. Invasion of Canada.—The last invasion of Canada was made by the American army under the able General Brown. Crossing Niagara River, the British were attacked at Chippewa, July 5, and a brilliant victory secured. The battle of Lundy's Lane was fought twenty days later. General Winfield Scott was the hero of this engagement. He had but one thousand men, but he bravely kept up the fight, and the furious battle lasted until midnight. The number of Americans taking part was about four thousand, and the British about five thousand. One-fifth of those on each side were killed and wounded.

3. The Americans retained possession of the field, but withdrew the next day. General Scott was so severely wounded that he was unable to take any further part in the war. General Brown was also hurt, but not badly. He received the thanks of Congress and a gold medal for his services. He held the highest position in the army until 1828.

4. General Brown's need of reinforcements had drained Plattsburg of all but fifteen hundred troops. The commander of the British army marched against the place with twelve thousand veterans. At the same time the British fleet on Lake Champlain attacked the American squadron under Commodore Macdonough.



THOMAS MACDONOUGH.

The latter had eighty-six guns and eight hundred and twenty men, while Commodore Downie had ninety-five guns and more than a thousand men.

5. **Macdonough's Naval Victory.**—The naval battle lasted a little more than two hours. The fight was so desperate that at its close not a mast was left uninjured in either squadron. Commodore Downie was killed, his

ship surrendered, and nearly all the others were sunk or captured. The British general, Prevost, was also defeated in the land attack, and withdrew in the night, leaving the sick and wounded in the hands of the Americans.

6. **Capture of Washington.**—**The Star-Spangled Banner.**—The British were more successful in their invasion by way of Chesapeake Bay. They landed a powerful army, in August, 1814, and gained a decisive victory at Bladensburg in Maryland. They then marched upon Washington, and burned the Capitol, the President's house, and the principal public buildings. Balti-

more was next attacked by land and water, but the British were repulsed. This victory inspired Francis S. Key to write our national hymn, "The Star-spangled Banner."

7. Disaffection in New England.—These events threw the country into alarm. The militia was organized and the seaports fortified. The administration was condemned for its method of conducting the war, and delegates from the New England States met at Hartford, in December, 1814, to discuss the matter. They sat for three weeks with closed doors. They issued an address charging the government with carrying out measures injurious to New England, proposed amendments to the Constitution, and adjourned to meet in the following June. The meeting, however, never took place.

8. Victory at New Orleans.—A strong fleet and an army of twelve thousand men under General Pakenham made the attempt to capture New Orleans. General Jackson, who commanded the Americans, had thrown up intrenchments, behind which knelt the Kentucky and Tennessee riflemen, the finest marksmen in the world. The British advanced again and again, but there was no withstanding the merrring fire of the backwoodsmen. General Pakenham and more than two thousand of his men were killed, while only seven of the Americans were slain. This great victory was won January 8, 1815, and added greatly to the fame of General Jackson. The notable fact about this victory was that it was gained after a treaty of peace had been signed at Ghent, December 24, 1814. In those days submarine telegraphs and swift-sailing steamers were unknown, and it took news a long time to travel across the ocean.

9. The Treaty of Ghent.—The treaty of Ghent was a farce. The real cause of the war was the right of

search, in which England persisted. Not a word was said about this, and the dispute remained just as it was before the first gun was fired. The quarrel, however, has never been revived. The people were delighted that peace had come, and did not stop to consider the precise terms.

10. Cost of the War.—The war had proved a dear one. It had cost us a thousand six hundred and eighty-three vessels, more than eighteen thousand sailors, and a debt of a hundred million dollars. Business was depressed, factories idle, and commerce was destroyed. But all this quickly changed. Within twenty-four hours after the arrival of the news the dockyards rang with the sound of saw and hammer.

11. The Finances.—Our finances were in a bad way. In 1816, Congress passed a bill chartering a new bank, entitled "the Bank of the United States." It was vetoed by the President, but amended and passed the next session. The bank went into operation March 4, 1817, and the country's credit greatly improved.

12. War with Algiers.—Meanwhile the Dey of Algiers began sending out his pirates with orders to collect tribute from American vessels. Commodores Decatur and Bainbridge were sent thither to bring him to terms, and they did so with such vigor that no similar trouble occurred again.

13. Presidential Election of 1816.—The war left little of the Federal party. Its Presidential candidate received the electoral vote only of New Hampshire in the fall of 1816. The Democrats elected James Monroe of Virginia. Thus out of the first five Presidents of the United States, four were from Virginia.¹

¹ James Monroe, fifth President of the United States, was born in Virginia in 1758, and educated at William and Mary College. He fought as

CHAPTER XXVIII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817-25.

1. **The Era of Prosperity.**—An era of prosperity succeeded the War of 1812. Following the Revolution, attempts were made to establish manufactories of various textile fabrics, but capital was scarce, labor dear, and machinery beyond our reach. During Monroe's administration Congress passed many laws in favor of protection. That is to say, a tax was imposed on imported goods. This raised their price, and gave the Americans a chance to make the same kind of goods and



JAMES MONROE.

a lieutenant at Trenton during the Revolution, and distinguished himself at Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. He studied law under Jefferson, and when only twenty-five years old was elected a delegate to the Continental Congress. His course when minister to France in 1794 offended the administration, and he was recalled. From 1799 to 1802 he was Governor of Virginia, and was re-elected in 1811. During the same year President Madison appointed him Secretary of State. There was no money in the treasury, and he pledged his own means to secure the defense of New Orleans. He followed the policy of Jefferson when President, and died poor. He was plain and unassuming in his manner, not great, but sagacious and pure, and during his administration our country's development was greater than under any preceding chief magistrate.

earn fair wages. The question of free trade and protection has always been an important one.

2. The Seminole War.—Purchase of Florida.—The Seminole War broke out during the early years of Monroe's administration. These Indians caused much trouble in Florida. General Jackson seized a part of the territory in 1814, and again four years later. He was obliged to give it up, however, each time to Spain. After much fighting with the Seminoles and negotiation with Spain, it was formally conveyed by that country in 1821. General Jackson was appointed the first governor, and he performed his duty with characteristic sternness and vigor.

3. The Missouri Compromise.—A bitter dispute arose in Congress when Missouri applied for admission



HENRY CLAY.

as a State, as to whether it should be slave or free. Henry Clay secured its admission as a slave State in 1821, but under what is known as the "Missouri Compromise." This prohibited slavery in all other Territories west of the Mississippi and north of parallel $36^{\circ} 30'$, which was the southern boundary of Missouri.

4. The Monroe Doctrine.—South America is the land of revolution. The various provinces had long been held by European monarchies, and these

provinces now made strong efforts to gain their independence. The United States naturally felt a sympathy for patriots. Henry Clay urged our government to recognize them. This was done by Congress in 1822. President Monroe issued a vigorous message the following year, in which he declared that for the future the American continent was not to be considered as territory for colonization by any European power. This constituted the famous MONROE DOCTRINE.

5. Visit of La Fayette.—One of the most pleasant



BUNKER HILL MONUMENT.

incidents of Monroe's administration was the visit of La Fayette. He had been the intimate friend of Washington, and his services to the Colonies during the Revolution had endeared him to the Americans. He landed at New York in August, 1824, and afterward traveled through every State in the Union, the tour covering a distance of more than five thousand miles. He was

received everywhere with the greatest honor and respect. While in Boston, June 17, 1825—that being the fiftieth anniversary of the battle—he laid the corner-stone of Bunker Hill Monument. In the following September he sailed for home in the frigate *Brandywine*, so named in honor of the first battle in which La Fayette was engaged, and where he was wounded. Congress also presented him with a township of land and two hundred thousand dollars in money as a token of national gratitude.

6. Recasting of Political Parties.—Presidential Election of 1824.—A recasting of political parties took place. Monroe having been elected a second time without opposition, four candidates appeared in 1824. The Republican party was gradually becoming known as the Democratic, while the opposition assumed the name of Whigs. The Whigs favored a protective policy and a general system of internal improvements. The Democrats opposed these measures. No one of the four candidates having received a majority of votes, the choice fell to the House of Representatives. That body chose John Quincy Adams, son of the second President, as President, and John C. Calhoun of South Carolina as Vice-President.¹

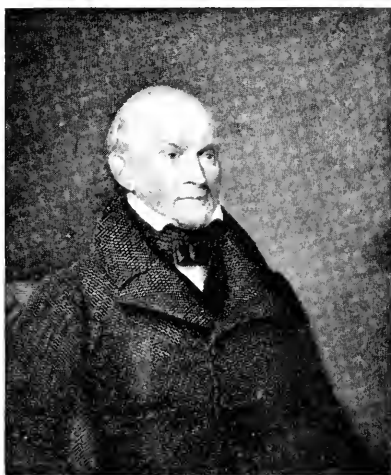
¹ John Quincy Adams, sixth President of the United States, was the son of the second President, and was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, in 1767. He was finely educated, and at different times was American minister at the courts of Holland, Portugal, England, Prussia, and Russia, and was one of the commissioners to negotiate the treaty with England at the close of the War of 1812. He was Monroe's Secretary of State through both his administrations, and filled the office with much ability. His administration as President was not popular, owing mainly to the powerful array of political enemies against him. He was a member of the House of Representatives from 1831 to 1848. He proved himself a brilliant debater, a powerful speaker on any subject, and at the age of fourscore was still known as "the Old Man Eloquent."

CHAPTER XXIX.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1825-29.

1. Admission of New States.—Our prosperity continued. Ohio, the seventeenth State, had been admitted to the Union in 1803; Louisiana, in 1812; Indiana, in 1816; Mississippi, in 1817; Illinois, in 1818; Alabama, in 1819; Maine, in 1820; and Missouri in 1821. A quarter of a century then passed before the formation of another new State.

2. The Progress of our Country.—A brief study will show the great progress made by our country during the quarter of



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

a century succeeding the War of 1812. Immigrants came in great numbers to this country, and the Mississippi Valley was rapidly settled. The defeat of the Creeks opened the way to the South-west. Before the close of Monroe's administration, therefore, all the territory east of the Mississippi, except the northern portion, had become States, and one beyond the Father of Waters was admitted, as we have learned, in 1821.

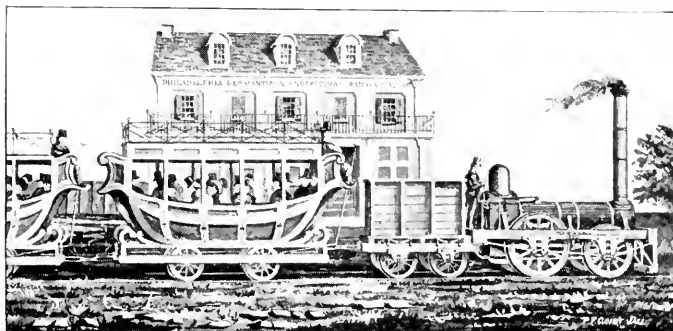
3. Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson.—The Fourth of July, 1826, was made for ever memorable by two striking events. On that day, just half

a century after the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson peacefully passed from earth.

4. The Tariff Question.—The tariff was a stirring question during Adams's administration. The Southern States were opposed to the tariff, because they were not engaged in manufactures, and were therefore compelled to pay a higher price for goods. The Eastern States, being manufacturers, naturally favored the measure.

5. Opening of the Erie Canal.—In October, 1825, the Erie Canal, which was in process of construction for eight years, was opened for traffic. This is the greatest canal in the world, and connects Lake Erie and all the Great Lakes with the tide-water of the Atlantic. It gave a great impulse to settlement and prosperity, its earnings being so enormous that they often amounted in a single year to half the original cost of the work.

6. The First Railway.—The first railway in the



FIRST RAILROAD TRAIN IN PENNSYLVANIA.

United States was completed in 1826. For several years the cars were drawn by horses. The first steam locomotive was put in operation in 1829. During the following year twenty-three miles were in use. To-day

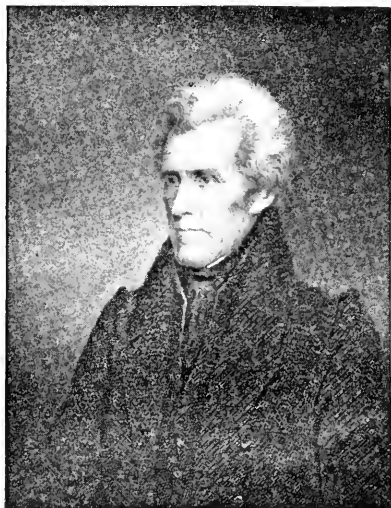
our combined railway tracks would extend a half dozen times around the globe.

7. Presidential Election of 1828.—John Quincy Adams's administration was an excellent one, but it was not popular. In 1828, he was defeated by Andrew Jackson of Tennessee, Calhoun being again chosen Vice-President.¹

CHAPTER XXX.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-37.

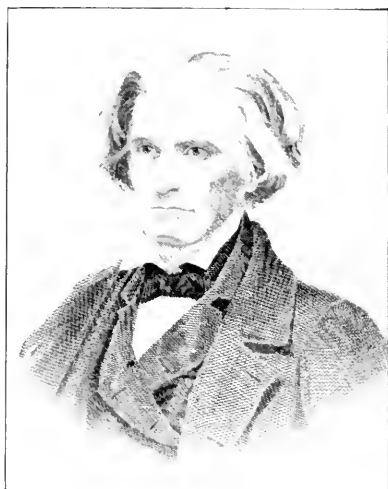
1. Characteristics of Jackson.—Andrew Jackson was a man of intense convictions, iron will, dauntless courage, fiery temper, unassailable integrity, and inflexible patriotism. He loved his friends and hated his enemies. He cared for no person's opinion, and conducted the office of President to suit one person only; that was himself. He believed in the doctrine that to the victors belong the spoils. He therefore turned his political enemies out of office and replaced them with his friends.



ANDREW JACKSON.

¹ Andrew Jackson, seventh President of the United States, was born in Union county, North Carolina, in 1767. He was of Scotch-Irish descent, and joined the patriots of the Revolution when only fourteen years old. At the close of the war he was the only survivor of his family. He

2. Jackson and the United States Bank.—**Presidential Election of 1832.**—Jackson was opposed to the United States Bank. Its charter expired in 1836, and he vetoed the bill to renew it which passed Congress in 1832. Believing the bank itself was unconstitutional, he removed the United States deposits and distributed them among the State banks. In the midst of the excitement the Presidential election of 1832 took place. Jackson was re-elected, receiving nearly four-fifths of the electoral votes.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

3. Nullification in South Carolina.—

During Jackson's Presidency the political parties crystallized into Whigs and Democrats, whose principles have been already explained. In 1832, Congress passed an act increasing the duties on imported goods. South Carolina was so angered that she called a convention, which pronounced the acts

null and void. She declared further that she would resist the enforcement of the act to the point of withdrawing from the Union.

studied law, and at the age of twenty-one went to Nashville. His impetuous bravery in the wars with the Indians caused them to name him "Sharp Knife" and "Pointed Arrow," while his peculiarities led his admiring countrymen to call him "Old Hickory." His administration was very popular, and he will always hold a leading place in American history.

4. President Jackson acted with his accustomed vigor. He issued a proclamation asserting his intention of executing the laws, and ordered General Scott to Charleston with troops. He vowed that he would hang every traitor, including Vice-President Calhoun, who dared to defy the national authority. Calhoun resigned his office and became a United States Senator.

5. **Compromise Measures.**—Meanwhile, Henry Clay secured the passage of another compromise measure which gradually reduced the tariff, and was accepted by both sides. The threatened disruption of the Union was postponed for nearly thirty years.

6. **Indian Troubles.**—There was more than one serious trouble with the Indians. The Saes and Foxes of the North-west, after selling their lands to the United States, refused to leave. Considerable fighting followed. Black Hawk, their leader, was captured and the tribes were forced to move. The Seminoles resisted the attempt to remove them from Florida, in 1835, to the lands set apart for them west of the Mississippi. Osceola, their chief, was so defiant that the government agent put him in irons. Thereupon the sachem signed the treaty. It was only a trick, however, for as soon as released he gathered his warriors about him and on December 28 attacked the government agent and his friends while at dinner. The agent and four others were killed.

7. On the same day that this occurred, Major Dade and a hundred and forty men were ambushed and massacred on the Big Withlacoochee by the Seminoles. In October, 1837, Osceola and a number of his chiefs and warriors, while in the American camp under the protection of a flag of truce, were made prisoners. Osceola was confined in Fort Moultrie, where he died the follow-

ing year. The Seminole War lasted until 1842, when it was ended by General Worth.

8. Death of Ex-Presidents Monroe and Madison.—Ex-President Monroe died on the 4th of July, 1831, being the third chief magistrate to die on Independence Day. Ex-President Madison died June 28, 1836. He was the last survivor of the signers of the Constitution of the United States.

9. Presidential Election of 1836.—Admission of New States.—Martin Van Buren, Democrat, was elected President in the fall of 1836, and the Senate chose Colonel Richard M. Johnson of Kentucky, Vice-President. Arkansas was admitted into the Union in 1836, and Michigan in 1837.¹

CHAPTER XXXI.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-41.

1. The Panic of 1837.—The result of the violent financial steps of President Jackson did not show until

¹ Martin Van Buren, eighth President of the United States, was born at Kinderhook, N. Y., in 1782, five days after the signing of the preliminary articles of peace between Great Britain and her former colonies. He was, therefore, the first President not born a British subject. His education was limited, but he studied law and became an influential politician before reaching his majority. He was a member of the State Senate, and afterward attorney-general of New York. From 1821 to 1828 he was a United States Senator. In 1829, President Jackson made him Secretary of State, and two years later nominated him minister to England. The Senate rejected the nomination because his course toward that country had been weak when he was Secretary of State. His party elected him the following year to the Vice-Presidency. The peculiar difficulties which he was called to face when President created a great deal of political enmity, and his administration was among the least popular in our history.

the administration of his successor. Business was disarranged, wild speculation prevailed, and vast operations were conducted on borrowed capital. The surplus in the U. S. Treasury, after the national debt was paid, was divided among the various States and increased the craze for speculation.

2. The crash soon came. Mercantile houses went



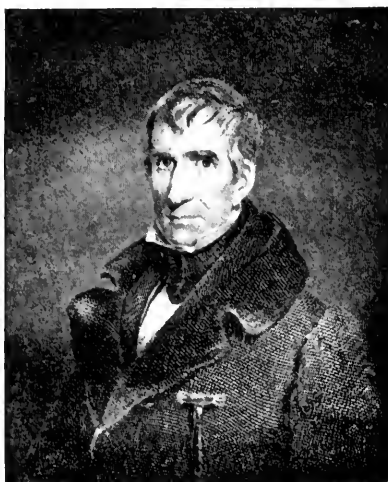
MARTIN VAN BUREN.

down, banks that had started up everywhere suspended specie payment, and disaster was universal. The failures in New York and New Orleans during the months of March and April, 1837, amounted to \$150,000,000. Property of every kind declined in value, several States failed, and the time came when the United States could not pay its debts. An improvement, however, showed

itself the following year, but a considerable time elapsed before confidence was fully restored.

3. The Patriot War.—The “Patriot War” broke out in Canada in 1837. This was a rebellion against Great Britain. Our country, and especially New York, sympathized with the insurgents. Seven hundred men from that State seized and fortified Navy Island in Niagara River. The loyalists attempted to capture it, but failed. On the night of December 29, 1837, they attacked the supply-steamer *Caroline*, killed twelve of the defenders, fired the boat, and sent it over Niagara Falls.

4. The President issued a proclamation refusing the protection of our government to any who should aid the



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

Canadians. General Wool was sent to the frontier, and compelled the New York insurgents, on Navy Island, to surrender. The rebellion was soon subdued.

5. Presidential Election of 1840.—

The administration of Van Buren was among the least brilliant in our history. It was blamed for the hard times, general bankruptcy, and everything

that displeased the people. As a consequence, when Van Buren was renominated, in 1840, he was defeated by General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the Whig

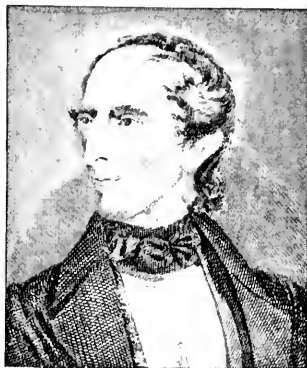
candidate. John Tyler, of Virginia, became Vice-President. After holding the reigns of government for nearly forty years, the Democratic party went out of power.¹

CHAPTER XXXII.

HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION, 1841-45.

1. Death of President Harrison.—President Harrison died, on the 4th of April, just one month after his inauguration. As provided by the Constitution, Vice-President Tyler was sworn in as his successor. He did not act fully with the Whigs, however, and thereby caused much dissension in that party.

2. Tyler's Unpopular Acts.—An act was passed by Congress to recharter the Bank of the United States, but, to every one's astonishment, the President vetoed the bill. It was modified to meet his views and passed again, but he vetoed it a second time. Then



JOHN TYLER.

¹ General William Henry Harrison, ninth President of the United States, was born in Charles City county, Virginia, in 1773. He was the adopted son of Robert Morris, the financier of the Revolution, and the son of Benjamin Harrison, a signer of the Declaration of Independence and afterward governor of Virginia. He was educated at Hampden-Sidney College, and, entering the army, won rapid promotion. He was appointed secretary of the North-west Territory in 1797, and elected its first delegate to Congress, in 1799. He became governor of Indiana

most of his Cabinet resigned, and the resentment was intensified in all parts of the country.

3. Settlement of the Maine Boundary.—For a good many years there was a dispute between Great Britain and the United States over the Maine boundary. This was settled, in 1842, when the boundary as it is to-day was agreed upon.

4. Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island.—Rhode Island was governed, down to the year 1842, by the charter granted by Charles II. to the colony, in 1663. This made it necessary for every man to own a certain amount of property before he could vote. The dissatisfaction so increased that two parties were formed. A new constitution was adopted, in 1841. The Suffrage or radical party chose Thomas W. Dorr governor, and the other party elected Samuel W. King. Something like civil war followed, but it was finally ended by the adoption of the present liberal constitution, in 1843.

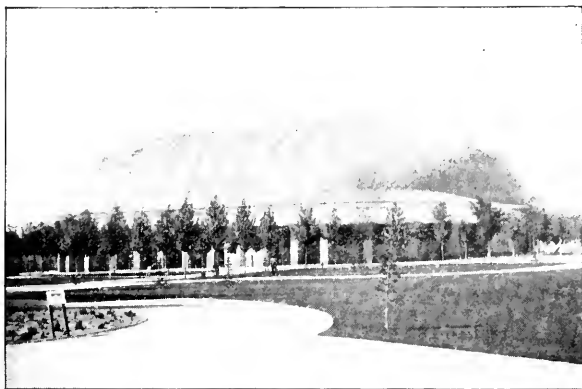
5. Anti-rent Troubles in New York.—Stephen Van Rensselaer died in 1840. He had been one of the wealthiest "patroons"—that is, proprietors of immense tracts of land—in the State of New York. These were inherited from their ancestors, to whom they were granted by the original Dutch proprietors. By the terms of these grants the settlers upon them were required to pay a small rental annually to the patroons. In addition, the latter received many rights in conflict with republican ideas.

Territory, and his brilliant services in the War of 1812 secured him the Presidency.

John Tyler, tenth President of the United States, was born in Virginia, in 1790. As stated above, he became unpopular with his party, the leading members of which bitterly denounced and opposed him. Tyler's ability was proven by the fact that he was successfully practising law at the age of nineteen, was a member of the Virginia Legislature at twenty-one, and governor of the State at thirty-five.

6. Van Rensselaer was so liberal, however, that he staved off trouble. When he died, \$200,000 was due his estate for uncollected rents, and his heirs determined that it should be paid. The demands were resisted; furious fighting followed; the military was called out; and finally the incensed tenants declared they would pay no rent at all. Matters grew worse until 1846, when Governor Wright proclaimed the county of Delaware in a state of insurrection, and sent the military thither. The leaders were arrested, and through conciliatory measures the trouble was finally ended.

7. **The Mormons.**—A peculiar sect called the Mormons settled at Nauvoo, Ill., in 1840. They began the erection of a fine temple, and the place grew rapidly in



MORMON TABERNACLE, SALT LAKE CITY.

population. The people about them, however, became so incensed that they attacked Nauvoo, in 1844, killed Joseph Smith, the leader, and drove out the Mormons. They fled to Iowa, and finally founded Salt Lake City, Utah, where they are most numerous at the present day.

8. **Texan War of Independence.**—The vast State

of Texas, as it is to-day, was originally a part of Mexico. A large number of Americans settled in it, and, in 1835, they were strong enough to declare themselves independent. Savage fighting followed, but Mexico was obliged at last to acknowledge that she could not conquer the province, and its independence was recognized. In 1844, Texas applied for admission into the Union.

9. Debate over the Admission of Texas.—This question caused bitter debate in Congress. The North opposed the admission because it would add an enormous area to slavery. For the same reason the South favored it. It was quite evident, too, that its admission as a State would bring about a war with Mexico. The sentiment, however, in favor of its admission was so strong that a joint resolution providing for its annexation was passed at the very close of Tyler's term, and signed by him. Bills for the admission of Florida and Iowa were signed two days later, but Iowa, the twenty-ninth member of the American Union, was not formally admitted until the following year.

10. Presidential Election of 1844.—The First Public Telegram.—In the Presidential election of 1844, James K. Polk of Tennessee and George M. Dallas of Pennsylvania were elected respectively President and Vice-President by the Democrats.¹ The nominating convention was held in Baltimore, and the news of the nomination was sent to Washington by magnetic tele-

¹ James K. Polk, eleventh President of the United States, was born in Mecklenburg county, North Carolina, in 1795. His parents removed to Tennessee while he was a boy. He was elected to Congress in 1825, and served for fourteen years. He was chosen governor, in 1839, and was nominated for President over Van Buren, because the latter was opposed to the annexation of Texas. The various measures of his administration weakened his popularity, and he wisely declined to be a candidate for re-election.

graph. It was the first public telegram that ever passed over a wire. To Professor Henry of the Smithsonian Institute belongs the credit of the invention, though it is popularly attributed to Professor Samuel F. B. Morse of Massachusetts. On the last day of the session of Congress he secured an appropriation of \$30,000, which enabled him to erect a wire between Washington and Baltimore, over which the message was sent.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, 1845-49.—THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

1. Admission of Texas.—Preparations for War.—On the 4th of July, 1845, the Texan legislature ratified the act of annexation to the United States. Well aware that Mexico would never willingly agree to part with such a vast portion of her territory, the Texan authorities urged the President of the United States to send an army for their protection. Accordingly, in January, 1846, General Zachary Taylor was ordered to advance from his camp in Western Louisiana and occupy Texas.

2. The First Conflict.—General Taylor established a dépôt of provisions at Point Isabel on the Gulf, and then, marching to the Rio Grande, halted opposite the Mexican town of Matamoras, and hurriedly built Fort Brown. General Arista assumed command of the Mexican forces on the frontier in the latter part of April, and notified General Taylor that hostilities had begun. On the 26th of that month Captain Thornton with a company of American dragoons was attacked by a large force of the enemy, and, after the loss of sixteen men killed and wounded, was compelled to surrender. Thus, in

the Mexican War the first bloodshed occurred east of the Rio Grande.

3. **Victory at Palo Alto.**—Leaving only three hundred men in charge of Fort Brown, General Taylor hastened to save Point Isabel. On his return he met a



JAMES K. POLK.

Mexican force three times as great as his own at Palo Alto (päb'lō ähl'tō). There a desperate battle was fought on the 8th of May, and the Mexicans were routed.

4. **Defeat of the Mexicans at Resaca de la Palma.**—On the next day, when within three miles of Fort Brown, another large force was encountered at Resaca de la Palma (rā-säh'cah dā läh pähl'mäh). The issue was doubtful for a time, until Captain May, with his

regiment of dragoons, charged through the grape-shot, cut down the Mexican gunners, and captured La Vega (läh vā'gäh), the commanding officer. The panic-stricken Mexicans never stopped in their flight until they reached the other side of the Rio Grande.

5. Scott's Plan of Campaign.—War having begun in earnest, General Scott planned the invasion of Mexico. He organized our forces into three divisions. General Kearney, with the Army of the West, was to cross the Rocky Mountains and conquer the northern Mexican provinces; the Army of Occupation, under General Taylor, was to seize and hold the districts on the Rio Grande; while the Army of the Centre, under General Scott, the commander-in-chief, was to advance from the Gulf into the heart of the country. General Wool was directed to attend to the work of mustering the troops.

6. Capture of Matamoras.—General Taylor, popularly known as "Rough and Ready," crossed over from Fort Brown and captured Matamoras ten days after the victory of Resaca de la Palma. Receiving reinforcements, which increased the number of his troops to 6600, he marched against Monterey, which was defended by a garrison of 10,000 men.

7. Fall of Monterey.—The city was invested September 19th. Two days later General Worth captured the fortified works in the rear of the town. On the 23d the city was assaulted and taken in front. A grand assault followed, the Mexicans fighting with great fierceness, but nothing could check the Americans. They drove the enemy from the barricades and to the house-tops, pressing forward with such vigor that the city surrendered. Ampudia, the commander, was granted the honors of war, and, evacuating the city, fell back toward the city of Mexico.

8. Victory at Buena Vista.—General Scott, having taken command in Mexico, ordered the major part of the Army of Occupation to join him on the Gulf for the purpose of marching against the capital. Santa Anna advanced with 20,000 men to crush Taylor, who took position at Buena Vista (bwā'nāh vees'tāh). Here he was attacked, February 23, 1847, by Santa Anna, whose force was more than four times as great as that of the Americans. The battle lasted all day, and ended in the defeat of the Mexicans, who withdrew in the night.

9. Conquest of New Mexico and California.—General Kearney left Fort Leavenworth for the West in



GENERAL SCOTT.

June, 1846. The march was a long and tiresome one. Santa Fé was captured and garrisoned August 18th. All of New Mexico submitted. While on his way to the Pacific coast he learned that California had been conquered by Fremont and a small force. With the assistance of Commodores Stockton and Sloat and General Kearney the whole

country was subdued before the close of the year.

10. Fall of Vera Cruz.—General Scott began the last campaign of the war March 9, 1847. Landing with a force of 12,000 to the south of Vera Cruz (vā'rāh crōōz), he completed the investment within three days.



BATTLE OF IRENA VISTA.

Assisted by Commodore Conner, a bombardment was kept up for four days. The city capitulated on the 26th of March.

11. Defeat of the Mexicans at Cerro Gordo.—

The road now being open, Scott set out for the city of Mexico. At the mountain-pass of Cerro Gordo the Mexicans were routed. Santa Anna fled in such haste that he left his wooden leg behind him. This battle occurred on the 18th of April, and the army entered Jalapa on the following day. The castle of Perote surrendered without fighting and large supplies were secured.

12. March on the Capital.—The city of Puebla (pwēb'la) offered no resistance, and on the 10th of August the army came within sight of the city of Mexico. At Ayotla it was within fifteen miles of the capital. The fortifications in front were so strong that the army swung to the south around Lake Chalcos, and thence west to San Augustin, where it was within ten miles of the capital.

13. On the morning of the 20th of August, Contreras (con-trā'ras) was stormed, and within twenty minutes 6000 Mexicans were driven pell-mell out of the fortifications. Shortly after the garrison of San Antonio was routed. Then the height of Churubusco (choo-roo-boos'co), where an immense force of the enemy was gathered, was stormed and a number of batteries captured. Santa Anna, on his way to reinforce the garrison, was driven back.

14. Santa Anna sent out a proposal to negotiate, but his terms were those of a conqueror, and it was soon evident that his only purpose was to gain time. Hostilities were resumed September 7th. The western defenses were captured the next day. Chapultepec (chā-pool-

te-pee') was carried by storm on the 13th, and the setting sun saw the American army within the suburbs of the Mexican capital.

15. Capture of Mexico.—That night Santa Anna turned loose two thousand convicts to fight our soldiers, and with the city officers stole out in the darkness. By seven o'clock the next morning the capital had fallen and Mexico was conquered. All that remained was to arrange the terms of peace.

16. The Treaty of Peace.—A treaty was concluded at Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2, 1848, by which we gained Texas, New Mexico, California, and Arizona. The United States bound itself to pay Mexico \$15,000,000 and assume all debts due from that government to American citizens to the extent of \$3,500,000.

17. Settlement of the Oregon Boundary.—Great Britain and the United States had jointly occupied Oregon for more than twenty years. The dispute became so warm that both countries prepared to go to war. The present boundary, however, was agreed upon and the vexed question settled.

18. Discovery of Gold in California.—In the month of February, 1848, James W. Marshall, while digging out a mill-race in the Sacramento Valley, California, discovered a piece of gold. Investigation proved that the soil for miles around contained the precious metal. The news stirred the civilized world, and thousands flocked thither from the four quarters of the globe. The amount received by our mint up to June 30, 1861, was more than half a billion dollars, and the yield since then has been almost beyond estimate.

19. Deaths of Ex-President Jackson and John Quincy Adams.—**Admission of Wisconsin.**—Two ex-Presidents died during Polk's administration. An-

drew Jackson expired at his home, known as the Hermitage, Tennessee, June 8, 1845. John Quincy Adams, who was a member of Congress, was stricken while on the floor, and died on the 23d of February, 1848. During the last year of the administration Wisconsin was admitted as the thirtieth member of the Union.

20. Presidential Election of 1848.—In the fall of 1848, General Zachary Taylor of Louisiana and Millard Fillmore of New York were elected President and Vice-President by the Whigs, defeating General Lewis Cass, nominated by the Democrats, and Ex-President Van Buren, the candidate of the Free-Soilers, who were opposed to the extension of slavery.¹

CHAPTER XXXIV.

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1849-53.

1. Death of President Taylor.—The Slavery Question.—President Taylor died on the 9th of July, 1850, and Millard Fillmore, Vice-President, succeeded him.²

¹ General Zachary Taylor, twelfth President of the United States, was born in Virginia in 1784, but his parents removed to Kentucky when he was an infant. He received only a scant education, but was a fine soldier. He gained fame in the War of 1812, especially in the defense of Fort Harrison against the Indians. He was conspicuous in the Seminole War, but won his greatest distinction in Mexico. His bluff manner and skillful bravery caused him to be called "Old Rough and Ready." He was no politician, and his nomination was strongly opposed by many influential members of his own party. His candidacy caused a secession among the Whigs and the formation of the Free-Soil party. His popularity, however, remained during his brief incumbency of the Presidency, and he was held in universal esteem.

² Millard Fillmore, thirteenth President of the United States, was born in Cayuga county, N. Y., in 1800. He acquired distinction as a

The question of slavery grew in interest. When California applied for admission into the Union the debate in Congress became so bitter that civil war was threatened. A large part of its territory lay south of $36^{\circ} 30'$



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

north latitude, which the Missouri Compromise declared should be the dividing-line of slavery and freedom. The people of California had already decided by their constitution that slavery should be prohibited.

2. Henry Clay's Omnibus Bill.—Once more, and for the last time, the wonderful eloquence of Henry Clay saved the Union. His "Omnibus Bill"

was agreed to, and settled the quarrel on the following terms: California was to be admitted as a free State; the Great Basin of the Rocky Mountains was organized, without mention of slavery, into the Territory of Utah; New Mexico, with a recognition of her rights to the parts claimed by Texas, could do as she pleased about slavery; Texas was to receive \$10,000,000 from the Federal Treasury to give up her claim to the Territory of New Mexico; the slave-trade was to be abolished for ever

lawyer, was a member of the Assembly for three terms and of Congress for four terms. He possessed integrity, good judgment, and ability, but destroyed much of his popularity in the North when he signed the Fugitive-Slave Law.

in the District of Columbia; all fugitive slaves in the free States should be liable to arrest and return to slavery.

3. The Fugitive-Slave Law.—The Fugitive-Slave Law aroused indignation in the North, many of whose citizens had aided for years in the escape of runaway slaves. Daniel Webster's powerful support of the measure destroyed all chances of his ever becoming President. His course alienated multitudes of those who had been his supporters.



MILLARD FILLMORE.

4. The Lopez Expedition.—Cuba had long struggled to throw off its allegiance to Spain. Many adventurers went thither from the United States to assist in the war for independence. To secure its annexation, General Lopez, with a band of nearly five hundred men, organized an expedition which was routed by the Spanish forces. Lopez and the ringleaders were captured, and taken to Havana, where they were executed in 1851.

5. Presidential Election of 1852.—In the Presidential election of 1852, Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire and William R. King of Alabama were elected by the Democrats President and Vice-President over General Scott and William A. Graham, candidates of the Whig party.¹

¹ Franklin Pierce, fourteenth President of the United States, was born

CHAPTER XXXV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853-57.

1. **Repeal of the Missouri Compromise.**—The most notable event of Pierce's administration was the



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

repeal of the Missouri Compromise. Stephen A. Douglas introduced into Congress a bill for organizing the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska, which left the inhabitants of each to decide for themselves the question of slavery. The measure was fought with extreme bitterness, but it became a law in 1854.

2. **Civil War in Kansas.**—Ne-

braska lies so far north that she naturally became free without any disturbance, but Kansas was soon the theatre

in New Hampshire in 1804. He graduated at Bowdoin College and became a lawyer and politician. He was a member of the State Legislature, and afterward of both branches of Congress. In the national Senate he was overshadowed by Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Seward, Benton, and other intellectual giants. When nominated for the Presidency there were thousands who heard his name mentioned for the first time. He served in the Mexican War as a brigadier-general under Scott, whom he afterward defeated for the Presidency.

of civil war. The pro-slavery and anti-slavery men sent armed parties into the Territory, and scenes of violence continued for years—in fact, ushered in the great Civil War.

3. Readjustment of the Boundary with Mexico.—The boundaries between Mexico and the United States were readjusted in 1854. The new treaty released the United States from all obligations to defend the frontier against Indians. For this release our government paid \$10,000,000.

4. Walker's Filibustering Expedition.—In 1853, General William Walker, an adventurer, left San Francisco and made a descent on La Paz in Lower California. In the following spring he marched to Sonora and raised the standard of revolt. His forces were scattered, and he was made prisoner. He was tried by the authorities of San Francisco and acquitted. He was more successful in Nicaragua, but was finally overthrown. Invading Central America a third time in June, 1860, he marched against Honduras, but his whole band was captured and he was shot.

5. Organization of the Republican Party.—Presidential Election of 1856.—The Republican party of to-day was organized during Pierce's administration. Its foundation principle was opposition to the extension of slavery. The Whig party ceased to exist. The Democratic party retained its organization, and, in 1856, elected its candidate, James Buchanan of Pennsylvania, President, and John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky, Vice-President. The Republican candidates were John C. Fremont and William L. Dayton.¹

¹ James Buchanan, fifteenth President of the United States, was born of Irish parentage, in Pennsylvania, in 1791. He held many situations of public trust and honor, having been a member of the State Legislature,

CHAPTER XXXVI.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857-61.

1. **Bitterness between the North and South.**—The bitter feeling between the North and South grew in



JAMES BUCHANAN.

intensity. The question of slavery was the burning one of the hour. The repeated compromises in Congress had only postponed the fateful day when the embers of civil war should break forth into a conflagration that would rage from one end of the country to the other.

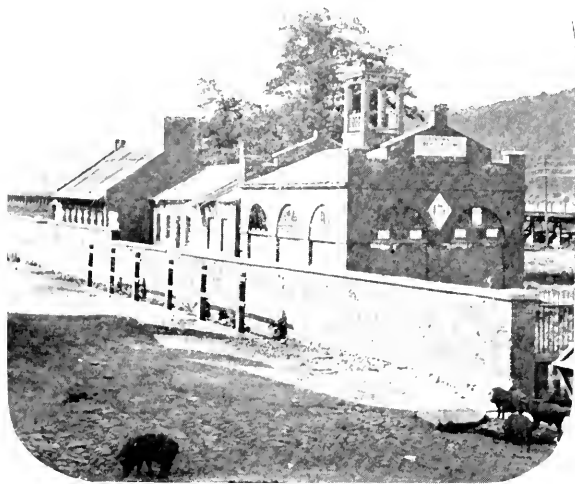
2. **The Conflict in Kansas.**—**The Dred Scott Decision.**—**Personal Liberty Bills.**—The conflict in Kansas stirred the nation.

Civil war was at its height, and many outrages were committed within the Territory. In March, 1857, the Supreme Court of the United States, through Chief-Justice Taney, rendered the famous Dred Scott decision.

of Congress, minister to Russia, President Polk's Secretary of State, and minister to England during the administration of Pierce. Much hope was felt that his administration would be able to soothe the increasing bitterness between the North and South, but all efforts were in vain, and when he went out of office the country was on the verge of the most tremendous conflict of modern times.

This declared that the owners of slaves might take them into any State in the Union without forfeiting their rights. The decision pleased the South, but kindled anew the wrath of the North. Trouble took place whenever an attempt was made to reclaim fugitive slaves, and, although the law had been declared constitutional by the highest tribunal in the land, it was repeatedly violated. Several States passed "Personal-Liberty" Bills, granting to fugitive slaves, when arrested, the right of trial by jury.

3. **John Brown's Raid.**—John Brown was a fanatic



JOHN BROWN'S FORT AT HARPER'S FERRY.

who had fought the pro-slavery party in Kansas. With a band of twenty men he seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, October 16, 1859, and attempted to create an insurrection among the slaves. Sharp fighting followed, several of the conspirators were killed, and Brown took

refuge in an engine-house. Colonel Robert E. Lee was sent with a company of marines from Washington, overpowered Brown, and delivered him and his surviving followers to the Virginian authorities. Brown and six of his companions were tried and hanged on the 2d of December. Although Brown was solely responsible for this raid, his act intensified the resentment of the South.

4. The First Atlantic Cable.—During these exciting times the telegraphic cable was completed across the Atlantic Ocean. The first message flashed under the sea, August 5, 1858. Others passed back and forth, but the insulation of the cable was faulty, and in a short time it ceased to work. At the end of a month it was useless, and success was not attained until 1866. Now the Atlantic is underlain by several cables which work perfectly.

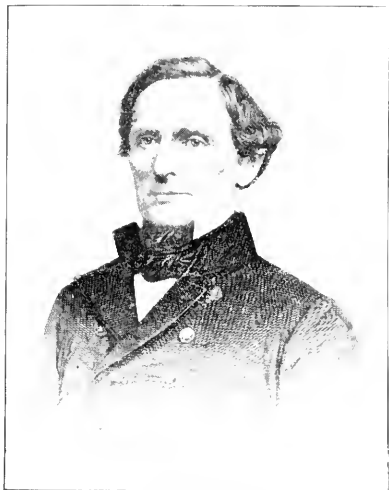
5. Widening of the Breach between the North and South.—**Election of Abraham Lincoln to the Presidency.**—The civil war continued in Kansas, but the Free-Soil party gained ground so rapidly as to leave no doubt of its final success. The breach between the North and South grew wider each day. The Democratic party split into two divisions. One nominated Stephen A. Douglas, the champion of popular sovereignty, and the other, John C. Breckinridge, who claimed that slavery could be carried into any Territory. The Republicans put forward Abraham Lincoln of Illinois. He held that slavery should be protected where it already existed, but should not be carried into any free Territory. Hannibal Hamlin of Maine was nominated for Vice-President. This ticket was elected.

6. Secession of South Carolina and other States.—**Formation of the Government of the Confederate**



U. S. CAPITOL, WASHINGTON, D. C.

States of America.—The South did not await the inauguration of President Lincoln before carrying out its threats of secession in the event of Republican success. South Carolina withdrew from the Union December 20, 1860. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas soon followed. Delegates from these States met at Montgomery, Ala., in February, and formed the government of the "Confederate States of America." Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was chosen



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

President and Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia, Vice-President. It was decided that the flag should consist of two broad red stripes, separated by a white space of the same width, the union blue, with seven white stars in the centre. This flag was unfurled on the 4th of March over the State-house in Montgomery, Alabama.¹

¹ Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky, June 3, 1808. He graduated at West Point, in 1828, and did service on the frontier, remaining in the army until 1835, when he resigned. In 1845 he became a member of Congress, but on the breaking out of the Mexican War entered the army as colonel of a Mississippi regiment. He did brilliant work at Buena Vista and in other engagements. He was afterward sent to the United States Senate from Mississippi, and was Secretary of War under President Pierce. He again became Senator, in 1857, but resigned when his State seceded, in 1861, and became President of the Southern Confederacy, outliving most of the leaders who took part in the Civil War.

7. Seizure of Government Property by the Confederates.—The Confederate authorities seized the United States forts, custom-houses, and arsenals in the seceded States. President Buchanan saw no way of checking the alarming movements, which went on rapidly. More than one member of his Cabinet sympathized with secession. Howell Cobb, the Secretary of the Treasury, resigned in December and went South, and John B. Floyd, Secretary of War, soon afterward did the same.

8. Occupation of Fort Sumter by Major Anderson.—The Steamer “Star of the West” Fired upon.—The eyes of the nation were turned toward



MAJOR ROBERT ANDERSON.

Fort Sumter in Charleston harbor, from which the United States flag was still flying. Major Anderson, with his garrison, had been stationed in Fort Moultrie, but, knowing that an attack would be made, he secretly moved on the night of December 26th to the stronger position. The South Carolinians were angered at this proceeding, and, taking possession of the remaining forts, began to erect batteries with which to reduce Fort Sumter. The *Star of the West*, carrying supplies to the fort, was fired upon January 9th, and compelled to turn back. Thus matters stood at the end of Buchanan's administration.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

GROWTH OF THE STATES.

1. We have mentioned in the proper places the admission of the various States into the Union from the close of the Revolution until the beginning of the Civil

War. It is well that we should learn something more about the new members which joined us after the independence of our country was gained.

2. Vermont, the first State admitted after the Revolution, was jointly claimed by New Hampshire and New York. The inhabitants, however, kept up an independent government throughout the War for Independence, and came into the Union March 4, 1791. Its name signifies "Green Mountain."

3. Kentucky formed the fifteenth State, and was admitted June 1, 1792. Its name, "dark and bloody ground," was given to it because of the many fierce conflicts between the Indians and white settlers. Daniel Boone, the famous hunter and pioneer, built a fort at Boonesborough, and removed thither in 1775. Kentucky was originally a part of Virginia, from which it did not separate until 1790. Its inhabitants resembled the Virginians in their habits and military spirit.



DANIEL BOONE.

4. Tennessee, the sixteenth State, was settled by North Carolinians, who gave up their claim to the territory in 1789. The first settlement was at Fort Loudon, in 1756. In 1790, Tennessee was joined with Kentucky, the two forming an independent Territory. Tennessee was admitted into the Union June 1, 1796.

5. Ohio, the seventeenth State, was the first to be made from the North-western Territory. This immense area included the present States of Michigan, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, and part of Minnesota. The first permanent settlement was at Marietta, in 1788. There has been some question as to the precise date of its admission into the Union, but February 19, 1803, is now conceded to be the correct one.

6. Louisiana, the eighteenth State, formed the southern part of the vast territory bought from France. It was admitted into the Union April 30, 1812. The American Union, therefore, comprised eighteen States during the War of 1812. The first settlement was made by the French at Biloxi, near the mouth of the Mississippi, in 1699. New Orleans was founded in 1718.

7. Indiana, the nineteenth State, was admitted December 11, 1816, being the second formed from the North-western Territory. It did not grow rapidly until after the settlement of the Indian troubles within its borders, when its progress in population and development was great.

8. Mississippi, the twentieth State, received its name from the Mississippi River, the "Father of Waters." The few settlements that had been made were destroyed by the Indians in 1728. Bloody wars continued with these people for many years. It was admitted into the Union December 10, 1817.

9. Illinois, the twenty-first State, was first settled by La Salle, the explorer. The Indians greatly hindered the settling of the country. The present city of Chicago was formerly known as Fort Dearborn, where a massacre occurred in 1812. The prosperity of the State since 1850 has been almost unprecedented.

10. Alabama, the twenty-second State, was first settled

on Mobile Bay, in 1702. In 1711, Mobile was founded, and was for many years the capital. Alabama was admitted into the Union December 14, 1819.

11. Maine, the twenty-third State, was long attached to Massachusetts. It was admitted March 15, 1820.

12. Missouri, the twenty-fourth State, was settled at St. Genéviève, in 1755. St. Louis was settled in 1764, and incorporated in 1809. The application of Missouri for admission into the Union caused a long and bitter debate in Congress, as has been told elsewhere. The question was whether it should be a free or slave State. This question was settled by the adoption of the "Missouri Compromise," and Missouri was admitted August 10, 1821.

13. Arkansas, the twenty-fifth State, was settled by the French in 1685. It was organized into a Territory when Missouri became a State, and was admitted into the Union June 15, 1836.

14. Michigan, the twenty-sixth State, was early visited by the Jesuit missionaries, who founded the mission of St. Mary in 1668. Detroit was settled in 1701. Michigan was organized into a Territory in 1805, and its present boundaries were made on its admission into the Union, which took place January 26, 1837.

15. Florida, the twenty-seventh State, contains the oldest Spanish settlement in the Union. Its early history has been given elsewhere. The Territories of East and West Florida were organized in 1822, and the State was admitted into the Union March 3, 1845.

16. Texas, the twenty-eighth State, was visited by the early French explorers, and afterward by the Spaniards, who established various missions. It passed through stormy times, and the settlers were few until 1830, when a considerable tide of American emigra-

tion set in that direction. The Texans declared their independence of Mexico in 1835, and in the following year Texas became an independent republic. It was admitted into the Union December 29, 1845, and, as explained elsewhere, this admission brought about the war with Mexico.

17. Iowa, the twenty-ninth State, was first permanently settled at Burlington. It was organized as a Territory in 1838, and with its present limits was admitted into the Union December 28, 1846.

18. Wisconsin, the thirtieth State, was visited by French explorers and traders early in the seventeenth century. Green Bay was settled in 1745. Wisconsin became a separate Territory in 1836, and was admitted into the Union May 29, 1848.

19. California, the thirty-first State, was settled by the Spaniards, who established the mission of San Diego in 1769. Another was established in 1776 at San Francisco. At the beginning of the present century the country was in the hands of the Franciscan monks. Their power was overthrown by the Mexican revolution of 1822. Emigrants from the United States went thither, and in 1846 the country was conquered by Fremont, Stockton, Kearney, and others. When Upper California was ceded to the United States at the close of the Mexican War, it included what is now known as California, Nevada, Arizona, Utah, with portions of Kansas, Wyoming, Colorado, and New Mexico. It was admitted into the Union September 9, 1850.

20. Minnesota, the thirty-second State, was organized into a Territory in 1849. Fort Snelling was established in 1819, and St. Paul in 1838. It was admitted into the Union May 11, 1858.

21. Oregon, the thirty-third State, was visited in 1804 by the Lewis and Clark exploring expedition, which descended the Columbia to the Pacific. A fur-trade was soon opened with the country, and grew into enormous proportions. When organized into a Territory, in 1848, it embraced all the United States possessions west of the Rocky Mountains. Its present limits were made on its admission into the Union, February 14, 1859.

22. Kansas, the thirty-fourth State, was the name given to a portion of the immense tract left after the formation of Louisiana and other States from the Louisiana purchase. The history of the civil war in Kansas, brought about by the slavery question, has been referred to (p. 158). It was admitted into the Union January 29, 1861.

PART V. THE CIVIL WAR.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65.

1. **Civil War Inevitable.**—Careful observers had seen for years that civil war was certain to come. The various compromises in Congress had only postponed the fearful hour when the North and South should face each other in battle array. Slavery must either extend over the whole domain or perish for ever in the United States.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

2. **Views of the Southern Leaders.**—The South saw in the election of a Republican President a menace to the peculiar institu-

tion and to their doctrine of State Rights. Their leaders believed that their allegiance was due to their respective

States before that of the national government. They looked upon the Union as a league of the respective States, from which any member had the right to withdraw when a majority of its citizens chose to do so.

3. The Union Sentiment North and South.—It should be borne in mind that a great many people in the North sympathized with the South, and were willing to make almost any sacrifice to preserve the Union. There were thousands also in the South who strongly favored the Union. Alexander H. Stephens, Vice-President of the Confederacy, made a powerful Union speech a short time before the secession of Georgia, his native State, and General Robert E. Lee spent hours in prayer and mental struggle before turning against the Union. As with them, so it was with multitudes of Southerners.

4. Formation of the Confederate States of America.—These men, however, were believers in the State Rights doctrine, and when their States withdrew from the Union they went with them. Compromises were again offered, and a "peace convention" assembled in Washington, February 4, 1861. Ex-President Tyler presided, but the attempt at conciliation utterly failed. It was an impressive fact that on the same day that the peace convention met the delegates which formed the "Confederate States of America" assembled in Montgomery, Alabama, and took the step which made civil war inevitable.

5. Inauguration of President Lincoln.—Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated President of the United States March 4, 1861. General Scott had charge of the military preparations, and no outbreak occurred. Mr. Buchanan and the President-elect entered the Senate chamber arm in arm, and the inaugural was delivered in the

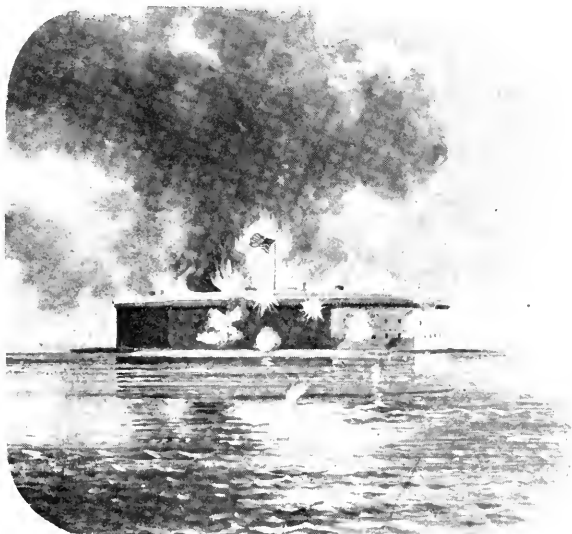
presence of the Supreme Court, the Senate and House of Representatives, the foreign ministers, and a large number of prominent citizens.¹



EARLY HOME OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN, GENTRYVILLE, INDIANA.

¹ Abraham Lincoln, sixteenth President of the United States, was born in Hardin (now Larue) county, Kentucky, February 12, 1809. When only seven years old the family moved to the backwoods of Indiana. Abraham reached manhood with little opportunity for acquiring an education. At nineteen he worked on a flatboat that went to New Orleans. When he came back his father moved to Illinois, where the son was employed for a time in splitting rails. For a number of years he was variously engaged as flatboatman, clerk, surveyor, postmaster, and river-pilot. He studied law under great difficulties, and served as a captain in the Black Hawk War. He was elected to the Illinois Legislature in 1834, and admitted to the bar three years later. He practised at Springfield, Illinois, where he met with great success. He was elected to Congress in

6. Capture of Fort Sumter by the Confederates.
—Learning that supplies were to be sent to Fort Sumter,



ATTACK ON FORT SUMTER.

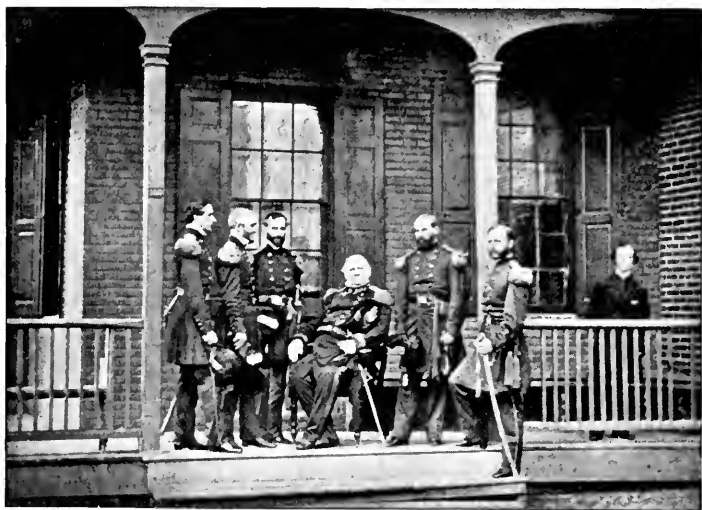
General P. G. T. Beauregard (bō-re-gard'), in command of the Confederate troops at Charleston, summoned Major Anderson to surrender. He refused, and fire

1846, but attracted no special notice until selected to answer Stephen A. Douglas in the debate on the repeal of the Missouri Compromise. His speech delighted his friends by its wit and power, and led to Mr. Lincoln's nomination to oppose Mr. Douglas for the United States Senatorship. The party of Douglas was in the majority, and he won, but the brilliancy displayed by Lincoln caused his nomination for the Presidency in 1860.

Lincoln was one of the great men of modern times. He possessed a rare vein of wit, was kind-hearted, wise, patient and forbearing, incorruptibly honest, and with an intuitive perception of the right time for doing a thing that approached the marvelous. No ruler of any people was ever called upon to pass through more crucial trials, and none ever performed his duty with more wisdom or a loftier sense of responsibility, than he.

was opened early on the morning of April 12th. It continued for thirty-six hours, when, Major Anderson's situation being hopeless, he surrendered. He was allowed to retire with the honors of war, and saluted the Stars and Stripes before hauling his colors down. No person was injured on either side.

7. Opening of the Civil War.—Further Secession of Southern States.—Call of President Lincoln for



GENERAL SCOTT AND HIS STAFF.

Volunteers.—The capture of Fort Sumter opened the great Civil War. It thrilled the whole country, and united the North as it did the South. Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas hastened to join the Confederacy. Party lines in the North vanished, and the people became ardent in their support of the Union. Their sentiments were irrestrainable. President Lincoln issued a call for 75,000 volunteers to serve three

months, and within three days a hundred thousand responded.

8. Capture of Harper's Ferry by the Confederates—Richmond made the Capital of the Confederacy.—The enthusiasm was as great in the South. Virginia troops seized the United States armory at Harper's Ferry and the Norfolk navy-yard. The young men of the South clamored for places in the ranks. The whirlwind swept resistlessly over both sections. Richmond, Virginia, was made the Confederate capital, and military preparations were active in all quarters.

9. Attack on the Massachusetts Troops in Baltimore.—The Confederate troops gathering in Richmond threatened Washington. The Sixth Massachusetts regiment, hurrying to the defense of the capital, was attacked while passing through Baltimore, April 19th. After three of the soldiers were killed the regiment fired into the mob, killing nine and wounding many more.

10. Seizure of Various Points by Federal Troops.

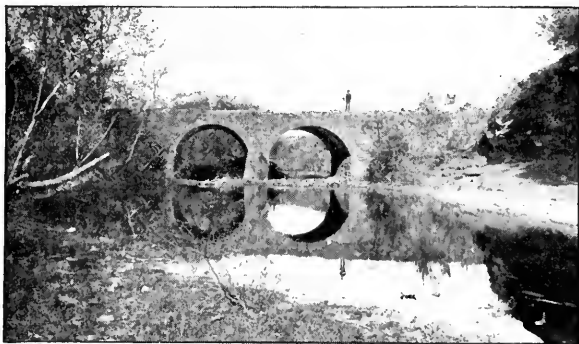


FORTRESS MONROE, VA.

—**The Repulse at Big Bethel.**—Arlington Heights and Alexandria were seized May 24th by the Union troops. Fortress Monroe was garrisoned by General B. F. Butler.

An expedition sent against Big Bethel was grossly mismanaged. The Federal troops fired into each other, and ten men were killed before the mistake was discovered. Fourteen more were lost and fifty-nine wounded in the attack on the Confederates, who repulsed the Federals.

11. Defeat of the Federals at Bull Run.—In answer to the clamor in the North, General McDowell marched upon Richmond with the Army of the Potomac. The Confederates, under Beauregard, were encountered at Bull Run, near Manassas Junction, July 21st. The



STONE BRIDGE OVER BULL RUN.

advantage at first was with the Union forces, but the arrival of reinforcements under the direction of General Joseph E. Johnston at a critical moment turned the tide. The Union army was utterly routed, and fled in the wildest panic toward Washington.

12. General McClellan appointed to the Command of the Army of the Potomac.—The disastrous defeat at Bull Run showed the North the stupendous work before it. The South was brave, determined, and in earnest. Congress voted half a billion dollars and

half a million men for the suppression of the rebellion. General George B. McClellan, who had become popular because of the brilliant manner in which he had driven the Confederates out of West Virginia, was placed in command of the Army of the Potomac.

13. Defeat of the Federals at Ball's Bluff.—General McClellan devoted his energies to drilling his new command and bringing it to a high state of efficiency. A reconnoitering expedition crossed the Potomac at Ball's Bluff, October 21st. Being



GENERAL GEORGE B. MCCLELLAN.

suddenly assailed by a force of Confederates, they fled down the bluff, a hundred feet below. In their desperate efforts to escape many were shot and many drowned, the loss amounting to nearly a thousand, among whom was Colonel E. D. Baker, Senator from Oregon, who led the reconnoitering expedition.

14. The War in the West.—No progress was made by the Unionists in the East during the first year of the war. In the West, General Lyon attacked a superior Confederate force at Wilson's Creek, Missouri, August 10th. He was killed and his men defeated. Colonel Mulligan, after a desperate defense at Lexington, was forced to surrender to General Sterling Price. General John C. Fremont drove Price to Springfield, when he

was superseded by General Hunter, who withdrew the army to St. Louis. Hunter, in turn, was superseded by General Halleck, who forced Price into Arkansas.

15. The War on the Coast and in the South-west.—A joint naval and military expedition captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., in the latter part of August, and a second secured the forts at Port Royal Entrance, S. C., in November. In the same month General U. S. Grant made a movement against Columbus, thirty miles from Cairo, but the superior force of the Confederates compelled him to retire without accomplishing anything.

16. Recognition of the Confederacy by France and England.—The Trent Affair.—The Confederacy was recognized as a belligerent by France and England. Quite hopeful of securing foreign aid, Messrs. Mason and Slidell were sent as commissioners to those countries. They ran the blockade, and at Havana took passage in the British steamer *Trent*. Captain Wilkes, commanding the United States steamer *San Jacinto*, forcibly removed them (November 8th) from the *Trent*, and brought them back to the United States. England was roused to the fighting-point by the outrage, and for a time war seemed imminent. Our government saw the mistake that had been made, however, and disavowed the act and returned the prisoners.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65 (continued).

1862.

1. The Campaign in the West.—Success of the Confederates.—The Confederates were more successful than the Federals at the beginning of the war. The

South was fully aroused and confident. Her soldiers were determined and her generals skillful. There was no appreciable Union sentiment left except in East Ten-



THE SKIRMISHER.

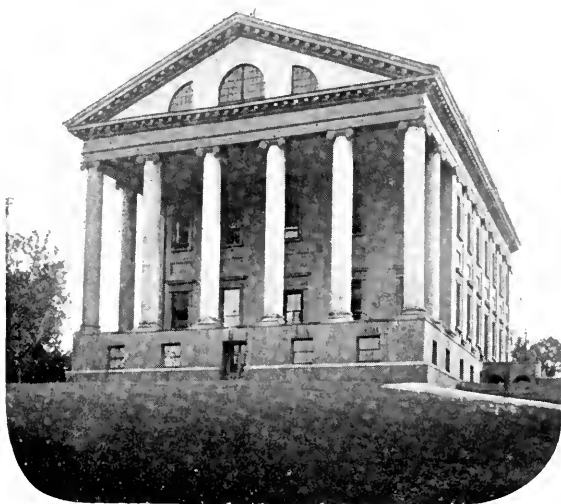
nessee. The Southerners were fighting on the defensive, and had full faith in their final success.

2. The Great Task of the North.—The fighting which occurred, in 1861, was not conducted on any clearly-defined plan, but was disjointed, fitful, and without definite purpose. Now, however, that the North understood the prodigious task before it, the war was prosecuted with a perception of the end in view.

3. Desperate fighting and brilliant leadership were necessary to conquer the Confederates, who were now in the full flush of victory. Several things must be accomplished before the Union could be restored. One

was the opening of the Mississippi. The Confederacy drew its enormous supplies from Texas and the Southwest. The clearing of this great stream, therefore, would cut the Confederacy in two.

4. Another necessary step was the capture of Rich-



CONFEDERATE CAPITOL, RICHMOND, VA.

mond. In that city were the government and directing power of the terrible enginery arrayed against the Union. The capture of the capital would be the smiting of the Confederacy in a vital part.

5. A third step was the effective blockading of the Southern ports. This would prevent the Confederates from selling their valuable cotton and from obtaining many of the supplies that could be got only in Europe. The vast area of country over which the battle for the Union was fought made necessary a great many minor movements. Let us keep in mind, however, the grand

plan of campaign, and remember that all this fighting was intended to contribute to one of the three objects named.

6. The Situation in the South-west.—The Confederates held a strongly fortified line in the South-west, extending from Columbus to Cumberland Gap. If the centre could be broken, they would be forced to evacuate Columbus, and leave the way open to Nashville. Commodore Foote, therefore, with a fleet of gunboats, and General Grant with a large land force, advanced from Cairo against Fort Henry.

7. Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson by the Federals.—February 6th a bombardment was opened, and the fort quickly surrendered. The garrison escaped to Fort Donelson before the troops could cut them off. Returning to the Ohio, the fleet ascended the Cumberland, while General Grant crossed by land to unite in the attack on Fort Donelson. Amid snow and sleet, and in weather so extremely cold that many froze to death, the Federals kept up the attack for three days.

8. The fire from the fort was so severe that the fleet was repulsed, and Commodore Foote received a severe wound. The Confederates attempted to cut their way out, but were defeated in a desperate engagement. Grant had received reinforcements, and was making ready for the final assault, when, on February 16th, the fort surrendered with fifteen thousand men.

9. This victory caused great rejoicing in the North, and the popularity of General Grant kept pace with his increasing triumphs. The Confederates now established a new line of defense for the South-western States. General Polk at New Madrid was on the left, Albert Sidney Johnston at Murfreesboro' on the right, and Beauregard at Jackson, Tennessee, formed the centre. This was an

abandonment of Kentucky, and left the upper part of Tennessee open to the Federals.

10. The Electoral Vote of the Southern Confederacy.—Three days after the fall of Fort Donelson the electoral vote of the Confederate Presidency was counted. Jefferson Davis was unanimously re-elected, and Alex-



JEFFERSON DAVIS'S RESIDENCE IN RICHMOND—THE CONFEDERATE WHITE HOUSE.

ander H. Stephens was chosen Vice-President. They were inaugurated at Richmond on Washington's birthday.

11. Movements of the Federal and Confederate Forces in the South-west.—The Union army now ascended the Tennessee to Pittsburg Landing. General Grant was put in command, and General Buell, who had occupied Nashville, was ordered to reinforce him. The Confederates decided to attack Grant before Buell could reach him with reinforcements.

12. The Battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing.—The battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing began at daylight Sunday morning, April 6th. Albert Sidney

Johnston, one of the ablest generals of the Confederacy, strove with mighty vigor to drive Grant into the Tennessee River. Grant, to whom the attack was a surprise, was pushed to the edge of the stream, where he gathered his shattered regiments for the final stand. The Confederates were held at bay until Buell's men arrived, when they fell back. The Union troops were re-formed during the night. The severe fighting was continued on the next day, but ended in the withdrawal of the Confederates. This was the second great battle of the war. The Union killed was 1735, with 7882 wounded and 4041 missing. The Confederates lost 1728 killed, 8012 wounded, and 959 missing. Among the killed was General Albert Sidney Johnston.

13. Federal Occupation of Corinth.—Although the Confederates were beaten and retreated, they had captured three thousand prisoners, thirty flags, and an enormous amount of stores. Beauregard withdrew to Corinth, slowly followed by General Halleck, who had assumed command of the Union forces. Beauregard evacuated Corinth, of which Halleck took possession May 30th.

14. Previous to this the Confederates, on retreating from Columbus, had taken position on Island No. 10. A bombardment of several weeks by Commodore Foote producing little effect, General Pope captured the batteries opposite, and prepared to assail the fortifications in the rear. They surrendered April 7th.

15. Capture of Kentucky and Tennessee by the Federals.—On the 10th of May the Union gunboats attacked and defeated the Confederate iron-clads. Destroying the flotilla before Memphis, that city fell, and the Memphis and Charleston Railway was secured. This gave Kentucky and Western Tennessee to the Federals,

who held a strong line extending from Memphis almost to Chattanooga, which was the objective point of General Buell.

16. The Battle of Perryville.—With the purpose of breaking this investment, General Bragg pushed rapidly toward Louisville. General Buell, who had fallen back to Nashville, began a race with him for the Ohio River. Buell won by a day, and, receiving heavy reinforcements, moved against Bragg, who turned at bay, October 8th, at Perryville. A fierce battle was fought, Bragg withdrawing at night and taking with him his immense wagon-train. General Buell's management of the campaign was unsatisfactory to the government, and on the 30th of October he was superseded by General Rosecrans.

17. Repulse of the Confederates at Corinth.—Previous to this most of Grant's troops had been sent to the assistance of Buell. Generals Price and Van Dorn began a movement toward Corinth. Hoping to capture Price, and then reach Corinth ahead of Van Dorn, Grant directed Rosecrans to march against Iuka. Rosecrans failed to intercept Price's line of retreat, and after a sharp engagement, September 19th, Price escaped and joined Van Dorn. These two united their forces and attacked Rosecrans in his intrenchments at Corinth. No assault could have been braver, but the Confederates were repulsed.

18. Battle of Murfreesboro'.—Later in the year Rosecrans concentrated his troops at Nashville, whence he marched to meet Bragg, who was advancing northward with a powerful column. These armies met at Murfreesboro', and a tremendous battle opened on the last day of the year. It continued three days. The first day ended in favor of the Confederates, and to General George H. Thomas belonged the credit of saving the

Union army from destruction. The two armies were too exhausted to do much effective fighting on the second day. On the third the Confederates forced back a part of the left wing of the Federal army, but were in turn driven back. Finally, Bragg retreated, and Rosecrans occupied Murfreesboro'. This battle was the bloodiest yet fought, each army losing about nine thousand in killed and wounded, in addition to those captured.

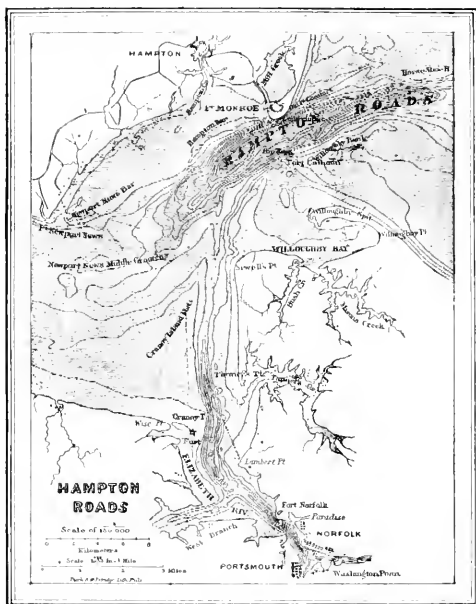
19. The Siege of Vicksburg.—While these operations were under way, Grant attempted the capture of Vicksburg. His plan was to advance along the Mississippi Central Railway, while Sherman came down the river from Memphis with Commodore Porter's gunboats. The scheme was ruined by General Van Dorn, who destroyed Grant's dépôt of supplies at Holly Springs. Unaware of this misfortune, Sherman went to the mouth of the Yazoo and attacked north of Vicksburg. He suffered a disastrous repulse and withdrew. In March, General Curtis defeated Van Dorn at Pea Ridge, Arkansas.



GENERAL PEMBERTON'S HEADQUARTERS, VICKSBURG, SHOWING CAVE ON LEFT OF PICTURE.

20. The Campaign on the Sea and the Coast.—**The Monitor and the Merrimac.**—In the burning of the Norfolk Navy-yard by Unionists in 1861, to save it from falling into the hands of the Confederates, the frigate *Merrimac* was set on fire and scuttled. She was not much injured, and the Confederates raised her and covered her with railroad iron, placed at an angle of forty-

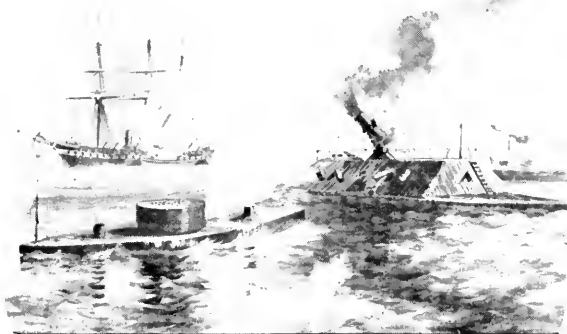
five degrees and coated with grease. She carried ten guns, eight at the sides, one at the stern, and one at the bow. With a strong crew she steamed into Hampton Roads, March 8th, and made directly for the sloop-of-war



Cumberland, whose broadsides glanced off and bounded hundreds of feet in the air without inflicting harm. The *Congress* added her broadsides to those of the *Cumberland*, and riddled the smoke-stack and steam-pipes, knocked off the muzzles of two of the guns, and killed and wounded twenty-one men on the *Merrimac*.

21. The *Merrimac* now repeatedly rammed the *Cumberland*, which ran up the red flag, meaning "no surrender," and went down, firing her guns until the water was knee-deep on her decks. Of her crew of 376 men, 121

lost their lives. The *Merrimac* then turned her attention to the *Congress*. One hundred men, including her commander, were killed, while she was powerless to



THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.

do harm to her impenetrable assailant. To check the slaughter the white flag of surrender was hoisted at the peak.

22. The *Merrimac* steamed slowly back to Norfolk, intending to return on the morrow and complete the destruction of the Union fleet. In Richmond all was rejoicing, while consternation reigned in Washington and the North. But that night the *Monitor* arrived from New York. She was the work of the late famous Swedish inventor, John Eriessen. She, too, was an iron-clad, with a single turret and two eleven-inch Dahlgren guns, but was but an infant in size compared with the *Merrimac*. She had been laboriously stealing southward from New York for more than two days, and while off

Cape Henry caught the boom of the *Merrimac's* guns as she poured red-hot shot into the doomed *Congress*.

23. As the cumbersome *Merrimac* came in sight the next morning, the *Monitor* darted out from behind the *Minnesota* and opened fire. The *Merrimac* replied, but her broadsides, for the first time, failed to inflict injury. The battle now became a duel between the two iron-clads. The diminutive size of the *Monitor* enabled her to play about her bulky foe and dodge the heavy thrusts from her iron beak. The attempt to run down the *Monitor* was tried and baffled five times. Finally, the *Merrimac* drew off and laboriously made her way back to Norfolk.

24. **The End of Wooden Vessels in Naval Warfare.**—This battle, in which no person was killed, though several were wounded, was the first of its kind in the history of the world. It ended the days of wooden vessels and ushered in that of iron-clads. Henceforth the navies of all nations must be useless unless sheathed with armor. The fight between the *Monitor* and *Merrimac* marked an epoch in naval warfare.

25. **Capture of Roanoke Island, Newbern, and Beaufort by the Federals.**—With a view of increasing the stringency of the blockade, an expedition had been sent against Roanoke Island in February. It was captured on the 8th, Newbern was taken March 14th, and Beaufort, N. C., April 25th.

26. **Capture of New Orleans by the Federals.**—Captain Farragut with a large fleet, carrying a land force under General Butler, set out to capture New Orleans. Several days' bombardment failing to reduce the forts below the city, Commodore Farragut ran his ships past the forts. He encountered fire-ships, a fierce cannonade from the forts, and an attack from the iron-clad

ram, the *Manassas*. But he overcame all obstacles, and, steaming up to New Orleans, received the surrender of the city, April 25th. He afterward ran the batteries at Vicksburg, and joined the fleet above.

27. The Campaign in the East.—The Campaign against Richmond.—The Siege of Yorktown.—

In the month of April the Army of the Potomac, one hundred thousand strong, and under the command of General McClellan, landed at Fortress Monroe. It began the campaign against Richmond by marching toward York-

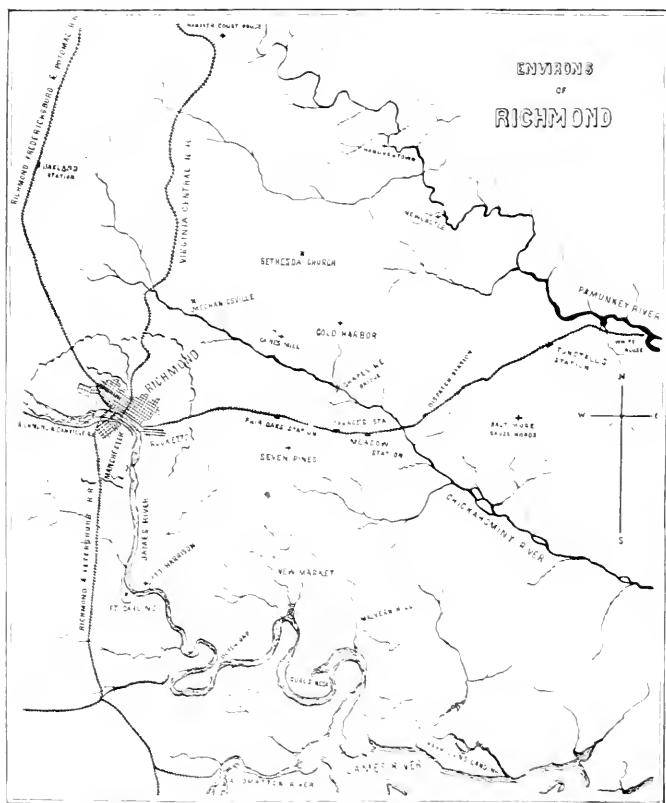


D. G. FARRAGUT.

town. Here the Confederate general Magruder, with a small command, held McClellan in check. The Federal commander sent to Washington for heavy guns and began a regular siege. Having delayed the Union advance for a month, the Confederates withdrew.

28. Battle of Williamsburg.—Alarm in Richmond.—General Joe Johnston commanded the Confederate army. The strong guard which he had left in the forts at Williamsburg to cover the withdrawal of his baggage-train was furiously attacked by General Hooker. A desperate battle ensued, in which the loss was heavy on both sides. The Confederates evacuated

Williamsburg that night, and General McClellan cautiously pursued until within seven miles of Richmond. This near approach caused consternation in the Confederate Capital, and the Congress hurriedly



adjourned. At the hour when the hopes of the North were at the highest point McClellan's communication by rail with White House Landing, his base of supplies, was threatened by a Confederate force at Hanover Court-

house. General McDowell, who was marching south from Fredericksburg with thirty thousand men to join him, was also endangered.

29. Washington Threatened.—General Fitz John Porter captured Hanover Court-house, and McClellan's hopes were now fixed upon the arrival of McDowell. But this junction was prevented by General Johnston, who sent Stonewall Jackson up the Shenandoah Valley to threaten Washington.

30. "Stonewall Jackson."—Jackson gained the name of "Stonewall" in the first battle of Bull Run, where, in answer to an inquiry, he replied that his troops would stand like a "stone wall." He was a brilliant, dashing leader, who performed many amazing exploits during the war. He did the duty assigned to him with wonderful skill and vigor. Being reinforced by Ewell's division, he sent Banks flying from Strasburg, and chased him to the Potomac, across which he fled in a panic.

31. Successes of the Confederates.—The peril of Washington caused the President to take military possession of the railroads. The governors of the Northern States were appealed to for militia to help to defend the capital. McDowell at Fredericksburg, Banks at Harper's Ferry, and Fremont at Franklin were ordered to capture Jackson. They did their best, but Fremont was easily defeated at Cross Keys, June 8th, and Shields was served in the same manner the following day at Port Republic. Jackson burned his bridges behind him and escaped from the Shenandoah Valley.

32. Battle of Fair Oaks.—Meanwhile, on May 31st and June 1st, McClellan threw his left wing across the Chickahominy. A terrific storm prevented the crossing of his entire army, and Johnston assailed the left wing

with great fury. General Sumner, however, checked the movement in time to prevent the Federal army from being separated. General Johnston was badly wounded by an exploding shell, and the Confederates were repulsed when they renewed the attack the following day. This severe battle is known as that of Fair Oaks.

33. General R. E. Lee takes Command of the Confederates, and assumes the Aggressive.—General



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

Robert E. Lee now assumed command of the Confederate army, and held it to the close of the war. Instead of retreating, he assumed the aggressive. General J. E. B. Stuart, June 12th, made a cavalry raid in which he burned supplies along the railway connecting with White House. He made the complete circuit of the Federal army without any check.¹

34. McClellan's Change of Base.—McClellan was still feeling his way toward Richmond, and Hooker's pickets advanced near

¹ General Robert Edward Lee was born at Stratford House, Westmoreland county, Virginia, June 19, 1807. His father was the famous "Light-horse Harry" of the Revolution, and a great favorite of Washington. The son graduated second in his class at West Point in 1829. He possessed such marked ability that he was employed in the most responsible positions even in times of peace. He was engineer-in-chief during the Mexican War, and was wounded at the battle of Chapultepec. He was super-

enough to see the spires and steeples of the Confederate capital. At this juncture news was received that Stonewall Jackson was at Hanover Court-house, and McClellan's communications with White House were in danger. Thereupon the Union commander decided to change his base of supply from the York River to the James.

35. Retreat of the Federals.—Lee fell upon the Union right at Mechanicsville, June 26th. His attack was repelled, and the Federals withdrew to Gaines' Mill, where Porter held the bridges over the Chickahominy until dark. Then he withdrew to the south bank and burned them. The same night, June 28th, Lee made an effort to cut off McClellan's retreat. A severe engagement took place the next day at Savage's Station, and at night the Federals resumed their retrograde movement.

36. Lee's Repulse at Malvern Hill.—An assault was made on the Union lines at Fraser's Farm, but they were not broken. That night the retreating Federals gathered at Malvern Hill. With the help of the gunboats the desperate assault of Lee was repulsed, and McClellan withdrew unmolested to Harrison's Landing.

37. Failure of the Campaign against Richmond.—**Discouragement of the North.**—The campaign against Richmond had ended in disastrous failure. The North was discouraged, for the war for the Union seemed to intendent for three years of the Military Academy at West Point. Upon the secession of Virginia he resigned his commission, April 20, 1861, and was made commander-in-chief of the Virginia State forces. Afterward he became a Confederate general, and later in the war was given control of all the forces of the Confederacy. He was one of the ablest military leaders of his times, and conducted his campaigns with consummate ability. He manfully accepted the results of the war, and did much by his example to soothe the bitterness of defeat in the South. He became president of Washington-Lee University, and died at Lexington, Va., October 12, 1870. A magnificent monument erected to his memory was unveiled in Richmond, in May, 1890.

grow more formidable every day. President Lincoln called for 300,000 more men, and preparations for pushing operations were soon vigorously under way.

38. Lee's Aggressive Campaign.—General Lee continued his aggressive movements, and was soon marching against Washington. General Pope, stationed at the Rapidan, had charge of the defense of the national capital. The dissatisfaction with McClellan led to an order that he should transfer his army to Aquia Creek and place it under the command of General Pope. Lee determined to overwhelm Pope before McClellan could join him.

39. Defeat of Pope.—Lee held Pope in his front while Stonewall Jackson passed around his right flank. Pope turned upon Jackson, confident of defeating him. His plans went amiss, and he was set upon by the whole Confederate army (August 29th and 30th). Utterly routed, his shattered forces were driven in confusion behind the fortifications of Washington.



BURNSIDE'S BRIDGE, ANTIETAM.

40. Lee's Invasion of Maryland.—Battle of Antietam.—Lee crossed the Potomac and invaded Mary-

land. McClellan had been restored to command and started in pursuit. The Confederate rear was overtaken at South Mountain, and the Union army entered the valley beyond. Lee hastily gathered his scattered forces, a column of which had captured Harper's Ferry with eleven thousand Union prisoners. One of the severest battles of the war was fought at Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg, Maryland, September 16th and 17th. The battle was a drawn one, and that night Lee recrossed the Potomac without molestation. The Union army passed into Virginia a few weeks later.

41. Burnside's Repulse before Fredericksburg.—General Burnside succeeded McClellan in the command of the Army of the Potomac. If the former general was timid, the latter was reckless. He was no match for General Lee. Crossing the Rappahannock at Fredericksburg, he assailed the Confederate works, December 13th, and was repulsed again and again. Night ended the awful slaughter, which amounted to twelve hundred dead, ten thousand wounded, and three thousand missing, the Confederate loss being less than one half. Burnside wished to renew the hopeless task on the morrow, but his officers dissuaded him from making the attempt.

42. A Year of Battles.—Desultory Fighting in the West.—The year 1862 was one of battles. As far west as New Mexico, General Sibley was at the head of a small force of Confederates. There were many skirmishes and much desultory fighting. February 21st, the forces of Colonel Canby and Sibley fought at Valverde, some distance below Fort Craig. The fighting lasted all day, and ended in the defeat of the Federals, who lost their only battery, and had sixty-two killed and a hundred and forty wounded.

43. Indian Troubles in Minnesota.—The Sioux Indians of Minnesota committed many outrages during the summer of 1862. Colonel H. H. Sibley defeated the red men and took numerous prisoners. Thirty-nine of these, having been proven guilty of horrible cruelties, were hanged at Mankato.

CHAPTER XL.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65 (Continued).

1863.

1. The Emancipation Proclamation.—The Attack on Rosecrans.—Battle of Murfreesboro'.—The Emancipation Proclamation, declaring human slavery for ever at an end in the United States, was issued by President Lincoln on the 1st of January. The new year came in while the terrific battle of Murfreesboro' was raging. Rosecrans remained comparatively idle after this until June, when he marched with a large army against Bragg. Finding his communications in danger, Bragg evacuated Chattanooga early in September. Rosecrans was pursuing at a leisurely pace when Bragg unexpectedly wheeled and assailed the Federal army. The Confederates had been strongly reinforced, and the Union commander was unprepared for the attack, his army being strung along for forty miles. He saved them from being cut off in detail, however, and the full shock of arms came at Chickamauga.

2. Battle of Chickamauga.—Longstreet, one of the ablest generals of the Confederacy, had been sent into this section to direct affairs, and his genius was felt in this furious battle. Fighting began September 19th,

and no advantage had been gained by either side at the close of the first day. At noon on the second day the Union line was broken by a movement to help the left wing. Quick to see his chance, Longstreet hurled a force into the gap, and drove the Federal right and centre from the field.

3. Irretrievable disaster threatened the Federals. If the left wing gave way, Chickamauga would become another Bull Run. But General Thomas commanded the left wing, composed of men as brave as himself. The whole Confederate army charged against him again and again, but he was immovable. He held his ground all through the terrible afternoon. His bravery and skill on that occasion gave him the name of the "Rock of Chickamauga." At night he fell back to Chattanooga, gathering several hundred prisoners on the way.



GENERAL THOMAS.

4. This battle was a Confederate victory. Matters assumed so threatening a look that Grant, now commanding the Mississippi division, hastened to Chattanooga. Thomas had succeeded Rosecrans, and was grimly holding fast, though the city was so completely invested by the Confederates that the Federals were in danger of starvation.

5. **The Battle above the Clouds.**—Grant hurried reinforcements forward. Hooker brought two corps of



GENERAL JOSEPH HOOKER.

the Army of the Potomac, and Sherman led a strong force from Iuka. The communications that had been cut were re-established. On the 23d of November, Thomas seized Orchard Knob. The next day Hooker attacked the fortifications on Lookout Mountain. His men had been ordered to stop upon reaching an elevated plateau, but their enthusiasm carried them over the summit. They swept the Confederates before them. This engagement, fought at such an elevation, has been styled the "battle above the clouds."

6. The battle was renewed the following morning under the eye of Grant, who closely watched operations. While Sherman was assailing the northern flank, Hooker attacked Missionary Ridge on the south. To repel these assaults the Confederate line in front of Orchard Knob was necessarily weakened. Grant pushed Thomas's corps against the centre. These veterans quickly carried out their orders to capture the rifle-pits at the foot of Missionary Ridge, and then, instead of halting to re-form, as they had been ordered to do, they swept up the mountain like a whirlwind.

7. The cool-headed Grant was so thrilled by the sight that he ordered a charge along the whole front. It was executed with resistless ardor. The Union hosts clambered eagerly to the crest without firing a shot, captured the guns, and turned them on the flying enemy, and the victory of Chattanooga was complete.

8. Union Successes.—This triumph meant the overthrow of Bragg's army and the Union occupation of Chattanooga. East Tennessee was liberated, and the path opened to the heart of the Confederacy, which had received an almost fatal blow.

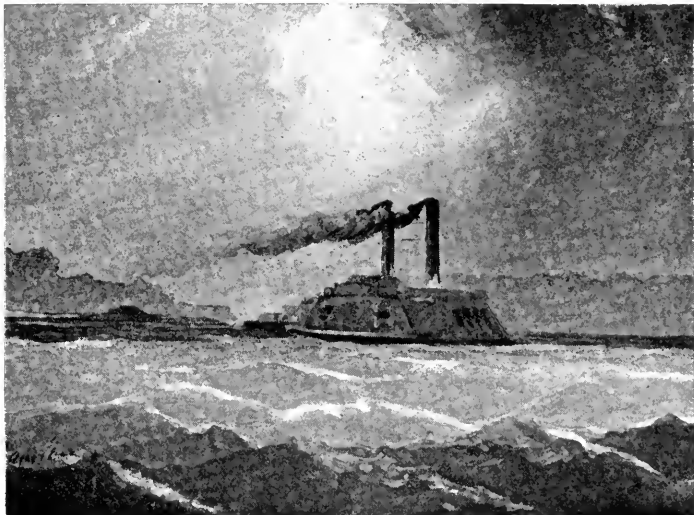
9. Raising of the Siege of Knoxville.—Burnside had been sent into East Tennessee, where he was so successful that Longstreet went thither to check him, and shut him up in Knoxville, much the same as Thomas was imprisoned for a time in Chattanooga. Grant sent Sherman to his relief. Before they could arrive Longstreet made a furious assault upon Burnside, November 29th, but was repulsed. Five days later, on the approach of Sherman, Longstreet retreated.

10. The Campaign in the West.—Capture of Vicksburg.—Failing to carry Vicksburg from the north, Grant moved down the west side of the river, while his gunboats ran the batteries. These extended for miles along the bank, and the fire was so fearful that only those men who volunteered were allowed to take the risk. Reaching a safe point below the city, the Federal army was taken across in boats.

11. Moving with his usual vigor, Grant attacked and defeated Pemberton at Fort Gibson, May 1st, as he was advancing to the relief of Vicksburg. Hearing then that General Joseph E. Johnston was marching to Pemberton's aid, Grant threw his army between the two. By this brilliant strategy he shut up Pemberton in Vicksburg beyond reach of help, and drove back Johnston by defeating him at Jackson, May 14th.

12. Two determined assaults having been made upon Vicksburg without success, Grant laid regular siege to it. The Confederates held out with great heroism, but their situation grew worse every day, until the starvation-point

was reached and all hope was gone. Then, on the 4th of July, General Pemberton surrendered his garrison of more than twenty thousand men, with an immense amount of arms and ammunition. Port Hudson surrendered of necessity on the fall of Vicksburg. The

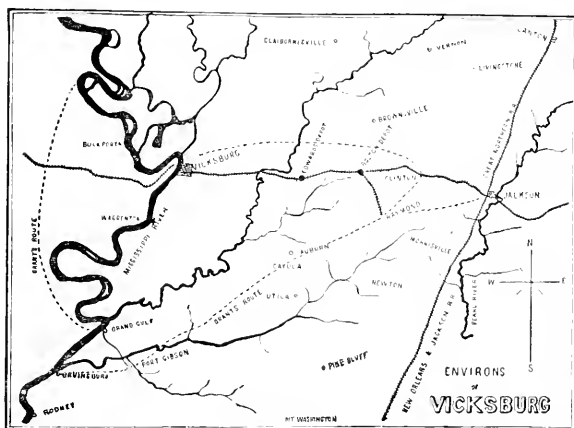


A GUNBOAT RUNNING THE BATTERIES ON THE MISSISSIPPI.

Mississippi was now open from its source to the Gulf, and one great object of the war for the Union was accomplished. The Confederacy was cut in twain.

13. The Campaign on the Water.—Failure of the Attack on Charleston.—In the month of April an attempt was made to take Charleston by a naval attack under charge of Admiral DuPont. The iron-clads failed and were driven back. General Gillmore then landed on Morris Island, and after a long siege and heavy bombardment captured Fort Wagner, while Fort Sumter was reduced to ruins.

14. Confederate Privateers.—The Alabama.—As early as 1862, the Confederates, with the aid of their friends in England, succeeded in launching a number of swift-sailing privateers which made havoc with



Northern commerce. The most famous of these was the *Alabama*, commanded by Captain Semmes. She sailed from Birkenhead, July 28, 1862, and for two years inflicted such prodigious damages that she almost destroyed American commerce.

15. Recapture of Galveston by the Confederates.—Galveston was recaptured by the Confederates on the 1st of January. The steamer *Harriet Lane* was attacked by several gunboats, her commander shot down, and most of his men killed. The Federal troops in the town, having no artillery, surrendered. The blockade in that section was raised and the port reopened to commerce. The Confederates retained possession of Texas until the close of the war.

16. The Campaign in the East.—General Hooker's

Campaign against Richmond.—Burnside, after his disastrous failure at Fredericksburg, was superseded by General Hooker. January 26th. The detachment of Longstreet, which went to the South-west, left Lee with



PLAN OF BATTLEFIELD OF FREDERICKSBURG.

an army of sixty thousand men, numbering not much more than one-half of those composing the Army of the Potomac. Hooker decided to move against the Army of Northern Virginia.

17. Failure of the Campaign.—Death of Stone-

wall Jackson.—The main body of the Federal army crossed the Rappahannock several miles above Fredericksburg, while Sedgwick remained to carry the intrenchments of the town. Lee took the perilous step of dividing his army while in the front of a superior enemy. Jackson, by one of his swift, secret marches, swept around Hooker with his division of twenty thousand men, and routed the Federal right. Hooker was forced to assume a new position that night, but the next day was driven from his line of battle.



SUMNER'S CROSSING, FREDERICKSBURG.



MARNE HOUSE, CHANCELLORSVILLE BATTLE-GROUND.

Learning that Sedgwick had captured Fredericksburg, and was marching to attack him in the rear, Lee turned and drove him across the river. Then, facing about once more, he advanced against Hooker, who had hurried back to his old quarters opposite Fredericksburg. The campaign against Richmond had ended in another

failure. Lee, however, had suffered an irreparable loss in the death of Stonewall Jackson, who through a mistake was shot by his own men.



GENERAL GEORGE G. MEADE.

18. Lee's Second Invasion of the North.—West Virginia, that had remained loyal from the first, was admitted into the Union in June. Lee had been so successful that he now determined to invade the North a second time. With his magnificent army, full of hope and confidence, he marched swiftly down the Shenandoah,

crossed the Potomac, and reached Chambersburg. General George G. Meade had assumed command of the Army of the Potomac, and followed along the east side of the Blue Ridge and the South Mountain. To prevent the cutting of his communications with Richmond, Lee threatened Baltimore.

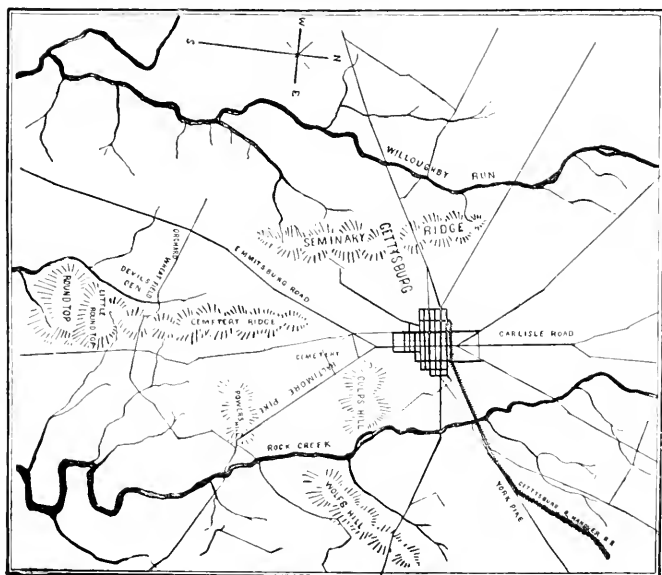


GENERAL MEADE'S HEADQUARTERS,
GETTYSBURG.

19. Battle of Gettysburg.—The vanguards of these two magnificent armies met near Gettysburg, on the 1st of July. Here

for three days raged one of the greatest battles of modern times. The fate of the North and South hung in the balance, and no braver fighting was ever witnessed. The soldiers on both sides were veterans, their leaders were officers of military genius, and every man seemed to understand the momentous issues at stake.

20. First Day's Operations.—The Federal advance



PLAN OF BATTLEFIELD OF GETTYSBURG.

was driven back on the first day, and lost a large number of prisoners. Thousands of troops continued arriving all night, and were placed in position to be ready for the tremendous conflict of the morrow.

21. Second Day's Operations.—The fighting on the second day was of the most desperate nature. The Confederates carried works at both ends of the Union

line, their successes leading Lee to the determination to continue the battle. But Longstreet's men, after fighting their way to Cemetery Ridge, were bloodily repulsed by



THE DEVIL'S DEN, GETTYSBURG.

Hancock. Ewell, however, was so successful on the Union right that grave fear was felt for the safety of the Union army on the morrow.

22. Third Day's Operations.—At noon on the third day Lee had one hundred and forty-five cannon on Seminary

Ridge, opposite Meade's centre, while Meade lined the crest of Cemetery Hill with eighty pieces of artillery. For two hours these guns thundered against each other, and the mountains and valleys shook under the most awful outburst the American continent had ever known.

23. Then, when the tremendous din ceased and the sulphurous vapor lifted, a column of fifteen thousand men was seen to issue from Seminary Ridge, a mile away, and advance toward the Union lines. Their red flags were flying, they were clad in Confederate gray, and their gun-barrels glistened in the sunlight. They marched with great precision, for they were the flower of the Confederate army, under the lead of General Pickett. From afar Lee, Longstreet, and his officers anxiously watched the charge, while a murmur of admiration ran through the Union lines at the wonderful scene.

24. With the same graceful, firm step the long gray double line advanced until half the distance was passed. The line was more than a mile in extent, and no braver men than those Confederates ever trod the earth. The Union artillery suddenly opened upon them. Scores

dropped, but the gaps were instantly closed, and the advance continued with the precision of dress parade. Then, when within easy musket-range, the crest of the ridge became one sheet of flame, and thousands of bullets were driven in the very faces of the assailants.



"THE WHEAT-FIELD," GETTYSBURG BATTLEFIELD.

25. But Pickett's men never wavered. With marvelous coolness they delivered a volley at the breastworks in front, broke into cheers, and dashed at full speed up the crest of Cemetery Ridge. They bayoneted the men at the guns, captured the works, and fought hand to hand with the Federals, who rushed thither from all directions. Attacked in front and flank, the focus of a converging fire, with his supports scattered, Pickett saw that a few minutes more would destroy every man he had, so he gave the order to fall back, and the remnant retreated.

26. Of the four thousand nine hundred who advanced upon the unsurpassed charge, three thousand five hundred were killed, wounded, or prisoners in the hands

of the Federals. Of the three brigade commanders, one was killed, the second dying, and the third badly wounded. Of the fourteen field officers in the advance, only one came back, and but two of twenty-four regimental officers escaped unhurt.

27. Retreat of Lee.—The killed, wounded, and captured in this terrific battle amounted to forty-eight thousand. The Union army was too exhausted to follow Lee, who, after a day's rest, withdrew across the Potomac and assumed position back of the Rapidan.

28. Gettysburg the Turning-point of the War.—Gettysburg marked the turning-point of the war. Never again did the Confederacy attain such hope of success as at the opening of that battle. Henceforward its fortunes steadily declined, until the inevitable end came within the following two years.

CHAPTER XLII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65 (continued).

1864.

1. The Work yet to be Done.—The greatest achievement of all still remained to be made before the Union could be restored: that was the destruction of Lee's army and the capture of Richmond. The Army of Northern Virginia was still wielded by the masterly hand that had guided it almost from the first. One Federal commander after another had been tried against him, but all had failed up to the time he received his first serious check at Gettysburg. The Confederate army in the East was still strong and defiant.

2. General Grant made Lieutenant-General.—

There was hard work remaining to be done also in the South, but the success already gained left little doubt of the final triumph of the Union forces. Early in the year General Grant was made lieutenant-general, and all the armies of the United States were put under his command. This placed the immense machinery within the control of a single man. That man had already proven that he possessed military genius of the highest order. Henceforth he was to direct the battles for the Union.

3. Sherman's Campaign in the South.—The second formidable army of the Confederacy was in the South under the command of Joseph E. Johnston, who had succeeded General Bragg. He was at Dalton, Ga., with fifty thousand men, while Sherman, under orders from Grant, marched against him with an army three times as strong. These two skillful generals manœuvred and fought for more than one hundred miles, Johnston steadily falling back and drawing Sherman farther south and away from his supplies. The battles were numerous, and at Kennesaw Mountain the Federal army received a severe repulse. On the 10th of August, Johnston withdrew



GENERAL W. T. SHERMAN.

within the intrenchments of Atlanta. Shortly after he was removed from command by the Confederate government, and Hood assumed charge.

4. Hood believed more in fighting than in strategy. He assailed the Federals repeatedly, but was repelled every time with great slaughter. He lost more men in a few days than Johnston had during the whole campaign, and without gaining any advantage. Finally, he was forced out of Atlanta, which was occupied by Sherman, September 2d.

5. The conflict now took a remarkable turn. Hood with his powerful army invaded Tennessee. He expected that Sherman would follow him, and thus save Georgia from invasion. But Sherman was only waiting for Hood to move away from his front when he prepared to march straight through the Confederacy to the coast.

6. **Disastrous Defeat of Hood by Thomas.**—Meanwhile, Hood entered Tennessee, aiming to strike Thomas before he could concentrate his forces. He drove Schofield back into Nashville, where he was shut up with Thomas behind the fortifications. Thomas carefully made his preparations, and when fully ready marched out, December 15th, with his whole army. He attacked Hood with a resolution that swept everything before it. The Confederate army, after a tremendous battle lasting two days, was broken to fragments and scattered. It no longer existed as an army, and the exhausted Confederacy could never replace it.

7. **Sherman's March to the Sea.**—After firing the city of Atlanta, Sherman, with an army sixty thousand strong, started, November 16th, for the Atlantic coast. The distance was three hundred miles, directly through the granary of the Confederacy. Railways of indispensable value were destroyed and vast damage inflicted.

There was no power at the command of the Confederates that could check this extraordinary march, which in five weeks carried Sherman and his legions to the sea. They struck the coast at Savannah, which was hastily evacuated by the Confederates, and occupied by the Federal army on the 20th of December. Thus the Confederacy, that had been severed by the opening of the Mississippi, was once more cut in twain.



Porter, Farragut, Lincoln, Sherman, Thomas, Grant, Sheridan.

THE COUNCIL OF WAR.

S. The Final Campaign against Richmond.—In May, the Army of the Potomac, under the command of Grant and Meade, started on the last campaign against Richmond. The Federal army was far more numerous than Lee's, and the Confederacy was so exhausted that it could not place more men in the field.

9. Battles of the Wilderness and Spottsylvania Court-house.—The first collision took place in the Wilderness. For more than two weeks the fighting was of the most terrific nature. The soldiers of both armies were veterans, under the command of leaders of the highest military genius. The world never saw braver men, and history records no fiercer conflicts than those in the Wilderness and about Spottsylvania Court-house. In sixteen days the Army of the Potomac lost thirty-seven thousand five hundred men, and the loss of the Army of Northern Virginia was correspondingly great. During the desperate battles General Longstreet was severely wounded by his own men, who mistook him and a group of officers for Federals. General J. E. B. Stuart, the most famous of all the cavalry leaders of the Confederacy, was mortally wounded, and died the following day in Richmond.

10. Advance of Grant.—Instead of falling back, like his predecessors, Grant pushed ahead. He repeatedly flanked Lee, who kept retreating, so as to hold his army between the Federal host and Richmond and prevent the cutting off of his supplies. On the 3d of June, at Cold Harbor, Grant assailed the whole Confederate line. He received the bloodiest repulse of the war. At the height of the struggle he lost in twenty minutes more than four hundred men for each minute.

11. Grant's Change of Plan.—The fearful slaughter at Cold Harbor caused Grant to make a change in his plan of campaign. He crossed the James and marched to Petersburg, south of Richmond. The fall of that city threatened the destruction of Lee's supplies, and would leave him the choice between the evacuation of Richmond and starvation.

12. Siege of Petersburg.—The Federal army was

near Petersburg by the 16th of June, when an attack was made, but it was repulsed at every point. The next morning the Federals saw, to their astonishment, thousands of soldiers marching to their positions in the breastworks. The Army of Northern Virginia had arrived, and once more confronted the advance upon Richmond.

13. Petersburg could be taken only by a regular siege, and Grant began its investment. An immense mine was run under an angle of the Confederate works, and exploded on the 30th of July. It opened a great gap, but the Union attack which followed was mismanaged and resulted in a frightful loss of life, without any gain. When the year closed the siege of Petersburg was still in progress.

14. **Operations in the Shenandoah Valley.**—Other important military movements took place while Grant was pressing his direct campaign against Lee. These were planned by Grant, and were intended to divide the Confederate forces. General Sigel was to advance up the Shenandoah Valley and threaten the railroad communications with Richmond. He was defeated, May 15th, at New Market. General Hunter, his successor, after defeating the Confederates at Piedmont, June 5th, reached Lynchburg, but, finding the city too strong to be captured, withdrew into West Virginia. This placed him on the west of the Allegheny Mountains and altogether out of the Shenandoah Valley.

15. **Defeat of Butler by Beauregard.**—Early in May, General Butler ascended the James River with a large force and landed at Bermuda Hundred. He was surprised by Beauregard, and driven back into his defenses. Beauregard then threw intrenchments across the strip which connects Bermuda Hundred with the main-

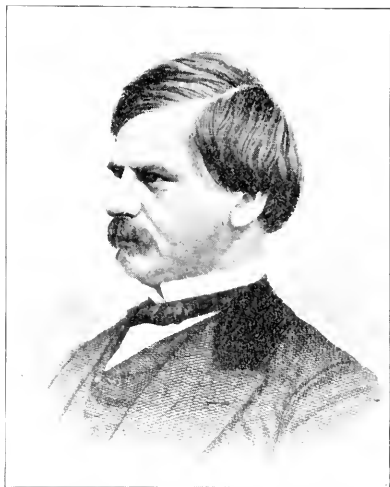
land. This shut out Butler from making any movement to help Grant.

16. Washington Threatened.—Hunter having disappeared from the Shenandoah Valley, Jubal Early advanced against Washington. He defeated Wallace, at Monocacy on the 9th of July, and appeared before the defenses of Washington four days later. Grant had time to hurry reinforcements into Washington, so that when Early attacked he was repulsed. A day's delay on his part saved the capital from capture. He withdrew across the Potomac with an immense amount of plunder. A party of his cavalry penetrated to Chambersburg, Pa., which, failing to pay a heavy ransom, was partly burned.

17. Sheridan's Operations in the Shenandoah Valley.—General Sheridan now assumed charge of all the Union forces in the Shenandoah Valley. When Early had weakened his army by sending reinforcements to Lee, Sheridan attacked and defeated him at Winchester, September 19th. Three days later, Early was routed out of his trenches at Fisher's Hill and driven farther up the valley.

18. Sheridan devastated the Shenandoah Valley, and carried off all the stock to prevent the Confederates from coming back. Early, however, followed him, and during Sheridan's absence attacked and defeated the Federals at Cedar Creek, October 19th. Sheridan was riding leisurely from Winchester, twenty miles away, when he heard the sound of firing. Knowing what it meant, he spurred his steed to a dead run and thundered up the valley. He rallied his demoralized troops, turned furiously upon the Confederates, who were plundering the Union camps, and routed them with great loss. No other events of importance occurred in the Shenandoah Valley, the real theatre of action being at Petersburg.

19. Operations in the South-west.—The Red River Expedition.—In the spring of 1864, General Banks, who was in command at New Orleans, was ordered to conduct an expedition into the interior of Louisiana. He was accompanied by a fleet under Commodore Porter, which was to force its way up Red River. Fort de Russy was captured, March 14th, and Banks advanced toward Shreveport. He was assailed at Sabine Cross-roads, April 8th, by General Dick Taylor, and utterly routed. Banks rallied at Pleasant Hill, and received enough reinforcements to repel his assailants. He continued his retreat, however, finally arriving at New Orleans, where he was relieved of his command.



GENERAL NATHANIEL P. BANKS.

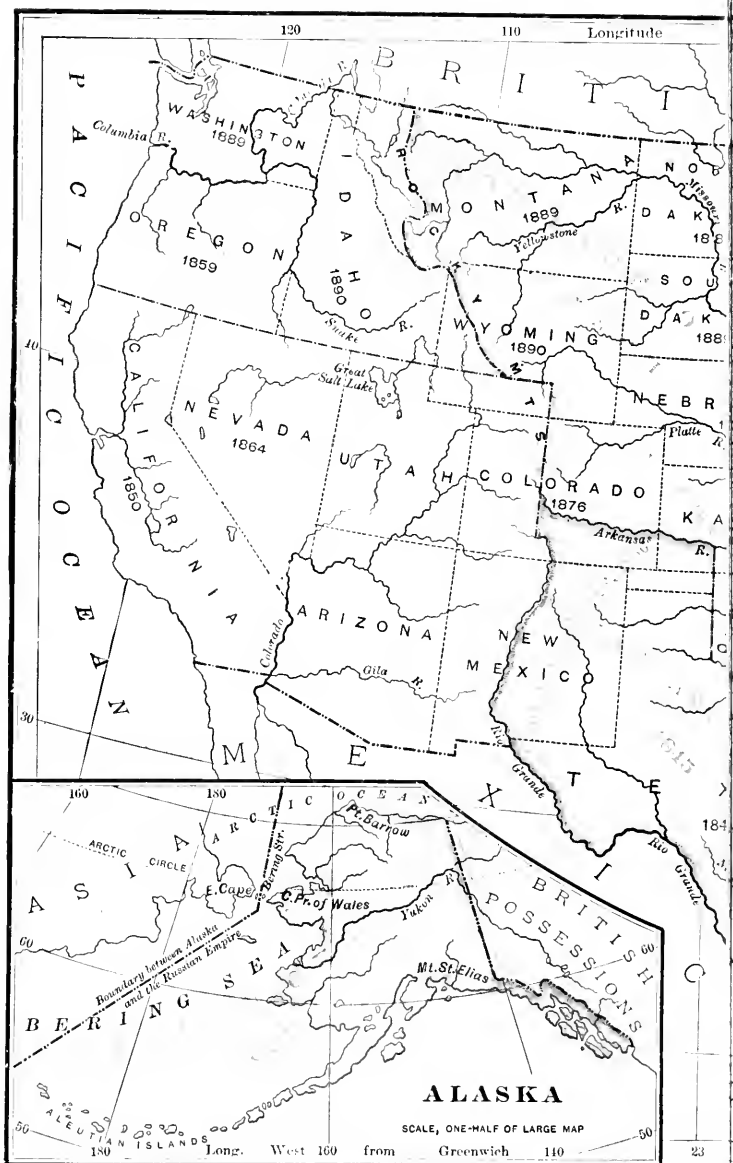
20. Narrow Escape of the Gunboats.—Commodore Porter had a narrow escape with his gunboats. Learning that Banks had retreated, he tried to do the same with his fleet. The river fell so fast that this seemed impossible. Porter was saved the necessity of blowing up his boats by the ingenuity of Colonel Bailey, who built a number of wing dams, by which the water was raised sufficiently to float the gunboats. The Red River expedition was a disastrous failure on the part of the Federals.

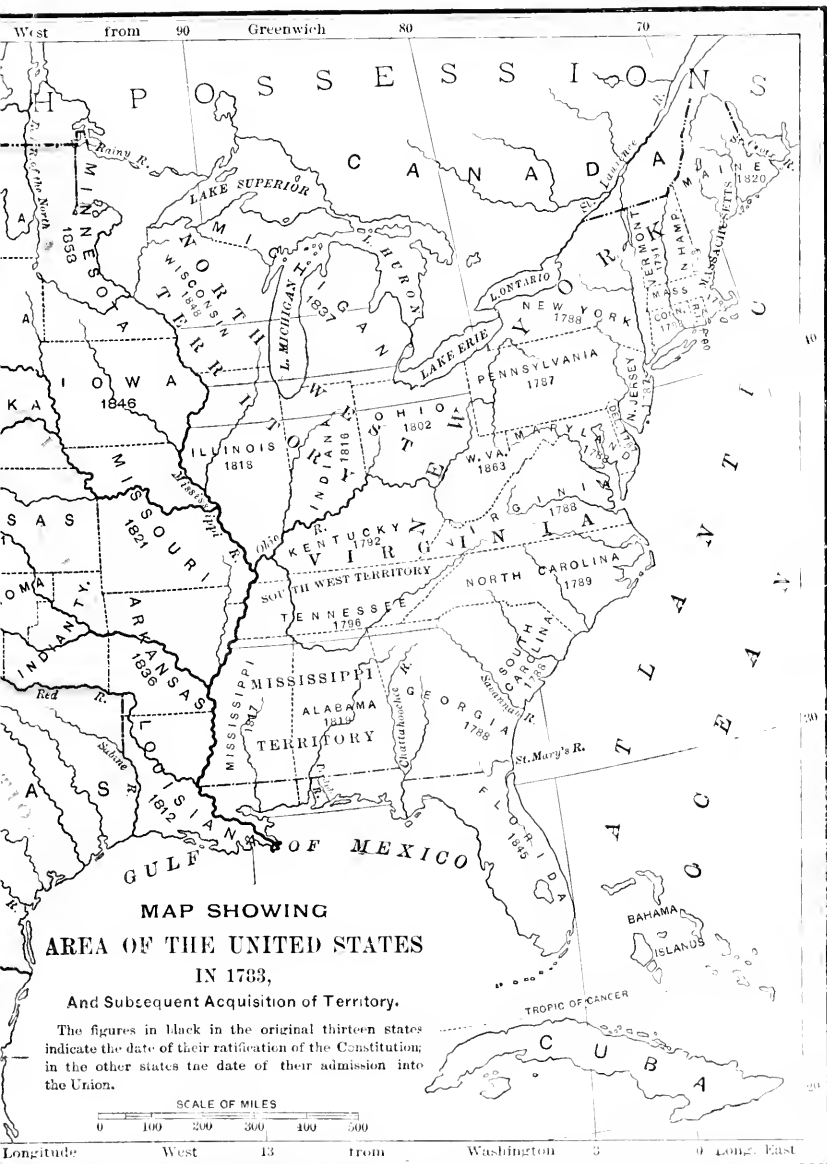
21. Operations on the Water.—Capture of Mobile.

—Despite the stringency of the blockade, a good many Confederate cruisers succeeded in running in and out of Mobile, Wilmington, and other ports. In Mobile several iron-clads and armed vessels were built, and the Confederates even threatened that they would raise the blockade. Admiral Farragut therefore attacked the defenses with his fleet, August 5th. The fight was a desperate one, but the forts were soon reduced, and the harbor remained sealed against all further blockade-running.

22. Capture of Wilmington.—Commodore Porter led the fleet against Wilmington, N. C., in December, while General Butler had command of the land forces. A severe bombardment took place December 24th and 25th, when Butler returned to Fortress Monroe, convinced that the fort was impregnable against assault. Commodore Porter was dissatisfied, and at his request a second trial was made in January by General Terry. The defense was heroic, but the garrison was obliged to surrender.

23. Destruction of the Alabama.—Mention has been made of the Confederate privateer *Alabama*. She and other cruisers inflicted such damage upon Northern commerce that it was almost driven from the ocean. While at Cherbourg, France, Captain Semmes, commanding the *Alabama*, challenged Captain Winslow of the *Kearsarge* to come out and fight him. The challenge was accepted, and the battle took place on Sunday, June 19th, and was witnessed by more than ten thousand spectators on shore. It lasted a little more than an hour. The two vessels steamed around a common centre from a quarter to half a mile apart. The fire of the *Kearsarge* was the most accurate, and inflicted severe damage.





24. The *Kearsarge* was beginning her eighth circuit when Captain Semmes, aware that the *Alabama* must soon sink, headed for the French waters. The *Kearsarge* followed, and with several more well-directed shots, ended the career of the famous cruiser. She struck her flag and raised the signal of distress, for she was sinking. Just before she went down Captain Semmes threw his sword into the sea and leaped overboard with his officers and men. The English yacht *Deerhound*, which was cruising near, rescued Captain Semmes, thirteen officers, and twenty-six men, while the rest were picked up by the boats of the *Kearsarge*.

25. **Fate of the other Confederate Privateers.**—Of the other Confederate privateers, the *Georgia* was seized off the coast of Portugal; the *Florida* at Bahia, Brazil; and the dreaded iron-clad *Albemarle* was sunk at the mouth of the Roanoke in October by the daring exploit of Lieutenant Cushing.

26. **Nevada Admitted into the Union.**—**Presidential Election.**—On the 31st of October, Nevada was admitted into the Union, forming the thirty-sixth member. In the following month the Presidential election took place. Mr. Lincoln and Andrew Johnson of Tennessee, the candidates of the Republican party, defeated General George B. McClellan and George H. Pendleton of Ohio, the nominees of the Democratic party.

CHAPTER XLII

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861-65 (continued).

1865.

1. **The Work Remaining to be Done.**—Only a single campaign remained to be passed to the end: that

was the movement against Richmond. The resistance in other parts of the Confederacy was fitful and unimportant. Only two armies were left—Lee's at Petersburg and J. E. Johnston's to the south of Richmond.

2. General Lee assumes Supreme Command of the Confederate Forces.—The Confederate Congress, February 5th, made General Lee commander-in-chief of all the Confederate forces. Almost his first act was to restore Johnston to the command of the army still confronting Sherman. This included the troops in Georgia, South Carolina, and Florida.

3. Sherman's March Northward.—Sherman moved northward from Savannah, February 1st. He had sixty thousand infantry, ten thousand cavalry, and a corresponding amount of artillery. He left a force at Savannah, and set out for Goldsboro', North Carolina. On the 16th he received the surrender of Columbia. The city was burned the following night, but whether by the Federals or Confederates has never been clearly established. Charleston was fired and evacuated the next day.

4. Conference between Grant and Sherman.—Johnston did his utmost to check Sherman. He handled his scant forces with admirable skill. He fought hard at Averysboro' and Bentonville, but was steadily forced backward by superior forces. At Goldsboro', Sherman joined Schofield, who had reached that point from Wilmington, and Terry, who had gone thither from Newbern. The Union army now numbered one hundred thousand men. Feeling himself master of the situation, Sherman turned over his command to Schofield, and went North to consult with Grant about the final campaign. The two great soldiers met at City Point on the 27th of March, and arrived at a full understanding.

5. **Grant's Campaign against Lee.**—Meanwhile, Grant daily fastened his grip more firmly upon Lee's army. On the 5th of February he attempted to turn the Confederate right, but was repelled. He gained, however, several miles of additional territory. Lee's army at this time numbered less than thirty-five thousand men. The line was forty miles in length, and necessarily weak.

6. Lee's plan was to fall back, and, uniting with Johnston, take a strong position in the interior. If this junction could be effected, he would have about one-fourth as many men as Grant after the union of his army with Sherman's. But Grant was determined to prevent the junction of the two Confederate armies.

7. In his desperation Lee attacked Grant's right at Fort Steadman, hoping to hide his plan of retreat. The attack was not well managed, and the Confederates lost three thousand men. Grant, having been reinforced by Sherman, decided to push Lee to the wall.

8. The 29th of March was fixed upon for a simultaneous attack at all points. The movement began on that date, but the next day it rained so hard that nothing could be done. On the 31st, Lee assailed the Federals with great fury and gained a temporary advantage.



GENERAL PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

9. Lee next attacked Sheridan, who had taken position at Five Forks, and forced him back, but the Federals rallied, flanked the Confederates, and regained all they had lost. Reinforced by Warren's corps, Sheridan assumed the offensive, and drove the Confederates in confusion toward Petersburg.

10. Grant opened a cannonade, April 1st, along his whole front, and an advance was made the following day. The weak Confederate line was broken at many points, and Petersburg almost surrounded. The time came when the fate of Lee's entire army rested upon his retaining Fort Gregg, commanding the ground over which the Federals must advance to reach the river. The garrison numbered only two hundred and fifty, but they held it several hours, and repulsed three charges before it was overwhelmed. Only thirty men were unhurt, but the garrison had saved Lee for the time.

11. **Evacuation of Richmond.**—The end, however, was at hand. On Sunday, April 2d, while Jefferson Davis was sitting in his pew at church, a messenger entered and handed him a telegram. It was from Lee, and announced that his outer lines had been forced, and he could hold Petersburg but a few hours longer. Richmond would soon be in the hands of the Union army. That night and the following day, amid the burning of warehouses and scenes of indescribable confusion, the capital of the Confederacy was evacuated by the panic-stricken inhabitants.

12. **Lee's Hopeless Resistance.**—Before daylight, April 2d, the Federal army assaulted the whole Confederate front. A few hours later the lines were broken, and Lee, with the remnant of his forces, was fleeing southward. The pursuit was pressed with remorseless

energy. The gaunt, starving fugitives ate the buds of trees, and fell asleep in the highway with the smoking muskets in their hands. Still defiant and undaunted, the fugitives reached Amelia Court-house, thirty-eight miles west of Petersburg, on the 4th of April.

13. The trains loaded with provisions intended for Lee's famishing men thundered through Amelia Court-house without stopping. The indignant leader sent out detachments to hunt for food and forage, but they came back empty-handed. They had been seeking that which did not exist.

14. **Surrender of Lee.**—Lee maintained his retreat, and crossed the Appomattox on the 6th of April, at High Bridge. There a council of war was held, at which the majority agreed that the only course left was to surrender. Lee, however, was not yet ready to give up. Grant continued to press him, until, when near Appomattox Court-house, his situation became hopeless, and on the afternoon of April 9th he surrendered to General Grant. The Army of Northern Virginia, which had defied the Union hosts for four terrible years, passed out of existence. The gaunt, ragged veterans started to tramp to their desolate homes.

15. **Assassination of President Lincoln.**—Amid the general rejoicings over the end of the war the country was shocked on the evening of April 14th by the news that President Lincoln had been assassinated. He was seated with his wife and friends in a box at Ford's Theatre in Washington, when John Wilkes Booth, an actor, entered the box from the rear, and fired a pistol-ball into his brain. The unconscious President was carried to a house across the street, where he died the following morning. Booth was run down in Virginia, and shot, April 26th, while resisting arrest.

16. Surrender of Johnston.—Collapse of the Southern Confederacy.—General Johnston surrendered his army to General Sherman, April 26th, on the liberal terms that had been granted to Lee's army. The remainder of the Confederate forces east of the Mississippi, under Dick Taylor, capitulated on the 4th of May. On the same date all the naval forces of the Confederacy, then blockaded on the Tombigbee River, were surrendered. Some of the military leaders beyond the Mississippi left the United States, but what remained of their forces yielded on the 26th of May.

17. Capture and Release of Jefferson Davis.—Jefferson Davis, who fled from Richmond with other fugitives, reached Irwinsville, Georgia, where, on the 10th of May, he was captured by a squad of Union cavalry. He was imprisoned in Fortress Monroe to await his trial on the charge of treason. The trial was postponed from time to time, and, on May 13, 1867, he was released on bail. The prosecution was dropped in February, 1869.

PART VI.

PEACE AND PROGRESS.

CHAPTER XLIII.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865-69.

1. The Grandest Victory of the Union.—The grandest victory followed the triumph of the armies of the Union. In almost any other country the disbandment of such immense bodies of men would have been attended by disorder and violence. But the armies of hundreds of thousands that had become veterans in war quietly dissolved like snow in the sun. They became peaceful, law-abiding citizens, proud of the deeds they had done, and grateful that the country was once more restored in every part.



ANDREW JOHNSON.

2. True Reunion.—Those who had been arrayed for

years against each other became friends and brothers. Brave soldiers clasp hands with more fervent affection because their manhood has been tested on the field of battle. Nearly all the Confederate leaders honestly accepted the results of the long, fearful struggle. General Lee assumed the presidency of the Washington and Lee University; Generals Johnston and Sherman became intimate friends; and the more fortunate Union officers gladly extended a helping hand to their late antagonists who had lost their all. Northern capital was generously used in developing the South, which entered upon an era of prosperity such as she had never before known.

3. Union Deaths from the Civil War.—As nearly as can be ascertained, the total number of troops furnished the Union armies during the Civil War was 2,859,132. There were killed in battle 61,362; died of wounds, 31,727; died of disease, 183,287; total died, 279,376; total deserted, 199,105.

4. Cost of the Civil War.—The Confederates who died of wounds and disease (partial statement) were 133,821; deserted (partial statement), 104,428. In addition, it is estimated that the number of both armies crippled or disabled by disease was 400,000. The Civil War therefore cost a full million of able-bodied men.

5. Vice-President Johnson Sworn into Office.—Vice-President Johnson was sworn into office within a few hours after the death of the President. Despite the fearful excitement throughout the country, there was no disorder anywhere.¹

¹ Andrew Johnson, seventeenth President of the United States, was born December 29, 1808, at Raleigh, North Carolina. His family was so poor that he was not sent to school, and at the age of ten was apprenticed to a tailor. A kind-hearted neighbor used to read to the young men in

6. Executions on Account of the Civil War.—

Only five persons were executed for acts growing out of the Civil War. Captain Wirz, keeper of the military prison at Andersonville, South Carolina, was hanged on the 10th of November, 1865. He deserved this fate because of his cruel treatment of the prisoners under his charge. Lewis Powell (alias Payne), David E. Herold, George Atzerodt, and Mrs. Mary E. Surratt were hanged for complicity in the assassination of President Lincoln.

7. Settlement of Two Important Questions.—

The war settled two questions for ever: State rights and human slavery. The thirteenth amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery, was ratified by the States, and December 8, 1865, became the law of the whole land.

8. Provisional Governments in the South.—

President Johnson recognized the State governments of Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Louisiana that had been organized under the protection of the Union forces. He appointed provisional governments in other States and provided for the calling of conventions to form loyal governments. The States took advantage of the opportunity thus offered. They repealed the ordinances of secession, repudiated the Confederate war-debt,

the shop, and this incited Andrew to spend his leisure time in learning to read. In 1826 he removed to Greenville, Tennessee, and there married a noble wife, who greatly aided him in his education. He became interested in local politics, and was twice elected alderman, twice mayor of the city, was sent three times to the State Legislature, and in 1843 to Congress. Ten years later he became Governor of Tennessee, and entered the Senate in 1857. He was an ardent Democrat and a fearless Union-man. In 1862, Lincoln appointed him military governor of Tennessee. His vigorous administration of the duties of this office led to his nomination for the Vice-Presidency.

and ratified the constitutional amendment abolishing slavery. The President issued a proclamation of pardon to those who had taken part in secession, excepting only a few leaders, on the simple condition of their taking an oath of allegiance to the United States. On Christmas Day, 1868, a universal amnesty was declared.

9. Dissatisfaction with President Johnson.—President Johnson, however, found he had arrayed Congress against his plan of reconstruction. That body claimed that to it belonged the power to prescribe the conditions on which the seceded States should resume their places in the Union. Among other things, Congress required that each of those States should allow negroes to vote before their Representatives should be again admitted to Congress.

10. Impeachment of President Johnson.—**Admission of all the Seceded States.**—The difference between the President and Congress caused an effort on the part of that body to limit his power to remove officers. He refused to obey the law, and was impeached. The object of this was to bring him to trial in order to remove him from office. The trial took place in 1868, but the necessary two-thirds vote was not secured, and he was acquitted. Gradually the seceded States complied with the conditions imposed, and, in 1868, all were admitted to representation in Congress.

11. Grant made General; Sherman Lieutenant-General; Farragut Admiral, and Porter Vice-Admiral.—In July, 1866, Congress passed an act reviving the grade of general in the army, and creating the grades of admiral and vice-admiral in the navy. Grant was made general, Sherman lieutenant-general, Farragut admiral, and Porter vice-admiral.

12. Fenian Troubles.—In the summer of 1866

nearly fifteen hundred Fenians, a secret society whose aim is to free Ireland from British rule, entered Canada. Some skirmishing followed, and the President issued a proclamation warning those taking part that it was a violation of the laws of neutrality. General Meade was sent thither, and the flurry was soon over.

13. Purchase of Alaska.—In 1867 the United States purchased Alaska from Russia for the sum of \$7,200,000. Including the islands, Alaska has an area more than twenty times as great as that of Massachusetts.

14. Execution of Maximilian.—Napoleon III., emperor of France, took advantage of our civil war to attempt to establish an empire in Mexico. Our war was hardly over when he was warned that his design must be abandoned. Maximilian, an archduke of Austria, had been deceived by Napoleon into the belief that the Mexican people wanted him for their emperor. He strove hard to maintain himself, but was compelled to surrender in May, 1867. He and two of his generals were shot.

15. Laying of the Atlantic Telegraph Cable.—In July, 1866, another and successful attempt was made to lay the Atlantic telegraph cable. On the 28th of the month the vessels arrived at Newfoundland, having laid out 1866 miles of cable. Since then other cables have been successfully laid, and telegraphic connection exists with almost every part of the civilized world.

16. Death of Ex-President Buchanan.—On the 1st of June, 1866, James Buchanan, the fifteenth President of the United States, died, after a month's illness, at his home, near Lancaster, Pennsylvania.

17. Presidential Election of 1868.—In the autumn of 1868 the Republicans elected General U. S. Grant President, and Schuyler Colfax of Indiana Vice-Pres-

ident. The candidates of the Democratic party were Horatio Seymour of New York for President, and General Francis P. Blair of Missouri for Vice-President.¹ Nebraska, the thirty-seventh State, was admitted into the Union, March 1, 1867.

CHAPTER XLIV.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION, 1869-77.

1. Noteworthy Events of Grant's Administration.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

—Completion of the Pacific Railway.—President Grant was inaugurated March 4, 1869. Among the noteworthy events of his administration was the completion of the Pacific Railway, begun as long ago as 1863. On the 10th of May, 1869, the last spike, made of gold, was driven; the locomotives, one from the East and the other from the West, saluted each

other, and the Atlantic and Pacific were united.

¹ General Ulysses S. Grant, eighteenth President of the United States, was born at Point Pleasant, O., April 27, 1822. His boyhood was spent on his father's farm and in the tannery. He graduated from the Military

2. Great Fire in Chicago.—On the 8th of October, 1871, a cow kicked over a lamp in Chicago. This set



AUDITORIUM BLOCK, CHICAGO, 1892.

fire to a stable and started the greatest conflagration in

Academy at West Point in 1813, standing twenty-first in a class of thirty-nine. He served with bravery in the Mexican War, taking part in the battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, and the attack on Monterey, the siege of Vera Cruz, and a number of important engagements. He resigned from the army in 1854, and remained in private life until the breaking out of the Civil War. At that time he was serving on small wages as clerk in his father's leather store. He was appointed mustering-officer for the State of Illinois. He was next commissioned colonel of the Twenty-first regiment of volunteer infantry, and thus began the extraordinary military career which made him the central figure on the Union side in the great Civil War. His unshakable resolution, his iron will, his power in handling and manœuvring immense armies, his fertility of resources, his admirable poise in success and defeat, his prompt decision and action, and his unfaltering faith in his final success, showed him to be, like Lincoln, pre-eminently the "man for the times," and the one intended by Providence to do the work that no one else could do.

the history of our country. Twenty thousand buildings were burned, and the area of the fire was estimated at from three to five square miles. One hundred thousand persons were made homeless and several hundreds lost their lives. Sympathy for the stricken city was universal, and several million dollars were contributed to alleviate the wants of the sufferers.

3. Disastrous Fire in Boston.—A disastrous fire visited Boston in the following November. It lasted twenty-four hours, and destroyed the heart of the wholesale trade of the city. The burned area was sixty acres, and the estimated loss \$75,000,000.

4. The Fifteenth Constitutional Amendment.—The Geneva Arbitration.—The fifteenth amendment to the Constitution, giving the negroes the right to vote, became operative March 30, 1870. The claims arising out of damages suffered by the North from the *Alabama* and other Confederate privateers caused much controversy between England and this country. They were finally settled by arbitration at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872. The arbitrators awarded the United States \$15,500,000 because of the injury sustained.

5. The San Juan Boundary.—The last boundary-dispute between Great Britain and the United States was settled in October, 1872. Our claim gave us the island of San Juan on the Pacific coast, while Great Britain insisted that it belonged to her. It was left to the Emperor of Germany, who decided in favor of the United States.

6. Presidential Election of 1872.—In the fall of 1872, President Grant was re-elected President, with Henry Wilson Vice-President. Horace Greeley and B. Gratz Brown were nominated by the Liberal Repub-

lians, as they were called, and endorsed by the Democrats. Greeley was overwhelmingly defeated, and lived but a short time afterward.

7. The Modoc War.

—The Modoc Indians, numbering only a few hundreds, were removed from their lands south of Oregon to another section. They found this so poor that they went back in anger to their former hunting-grounds and defied our government. On the 11th of April, 1873, during a conference under a flag of



HORACE GREELEY.

truce, the Indians killed General Edward S. Canby and Rev. Dr. Thomas, and wounded General Meachem, who escaped with his life. The three active participants were afterward hanged, and the remaining Modocs were removed to a Dakota reservation.

8. War with the Sioux Indians.—**Death of General Custer.**—The powerful Sioux Indians refused to go on their reservation, and, in 1876, troops were sent to compel their obedience. On the 25th of June, General Custer, leading the Seventh Cavalry, was assailed by several thousand warriors led by Sitting Bull, and himself and every one of his command massacred. General Reno, some distance away, held his position until reinforcements arrived and the Indians were driven off. The Seventh Cavalry lost two hundred and sixty-one

killed and fifty-two wounded. The Indians were finally defeated, and obliged to abide by their treaty.

9. The Centennial.—The year 1876 was the centennial of American independence. It was commemorated by a grand exhibition, lasting from May 10th to November 10th. The buildings erected in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia, were five in number, their ground floors affording an area of more than forty-six acres. The main building, with a little more than twenty acres of ground floor, was the largest structure in existence. At this great fair the leading nations of the world placed on exhibition their treasures of art. The daily attendance rose from 5000 to 275,000. The whole number of visitors was a little short of 10,000,000, and the total receipts were \$3,761,598. President Grant formally opened and also closed the exhibition.

10. Admission of Colorado.—Presidential Election of 1876.—Colorado, the thirty-eighth State, was admitted into the Union in 1875, but its Constitution was not ratified by the people until July 1, 1876. The Presidential election of 1876 was a bitter one, and for a time threatened grave trouble. The Republicans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes of Ohio for President, and William A. Wheeler of New York for Vice-President. The nominees of the Democrats were Samuel J. Tilden of New York and Thomas A. Hendricks of Indiana. Each party claimed the victory. It was finally agreed to refer the dispute to a joint electoral commission, consisting of five U. S. Senators, five Representatives, and five Judges of the Supreme Court. This body, by a vote of eight to seven, decided that of the 369 electoral votes cast, 185 belonged to Hayes and Wheeler, and 184 to Tilden and Hendricks.¹

¹ Rutherford B. Hayes, nineteenth President of the United States, was

CHAPTER XLV.

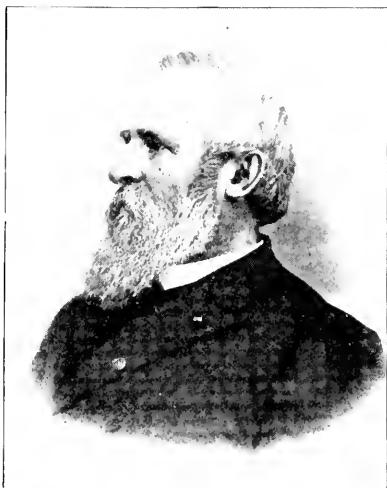
HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION, 1877-81.

1. An Uneventful Administration.—The administration of President Hayes was uneventful. He pursued a conciliatory policy toward the South. His Postmaster-General had served in the Confederacy, and his Cabinet was notably non-partisan in its composition.

2. Labor Troubles.

—The most alarming labor trouble occurred in the summer of 1877. It is known as the great railway strike. A reduction of wages on the Baltimore and Ohio Railway was followed

by a strike which involved many other lines. There was rioting in Pittsburg, where a hundred lives were lost and ten million dollars' worth of property destroyed. Disturbances also took place at Baltimore, Buffalo, Columbus, Ohio, Reading, and Chicago.



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

born in Delaware, O., October 4, 1822. He graduated from Kenyon College in 1842, and completed his legal studies at Harvard University. He performed good service during the Civil War, and attained the rank of major-general of volunteers. While in the army, in 1864, he was elected a member of Congress. He was chosen governor of Ohio in 1867, 1869, and 1875.

3. Resumption of Specie Payments.—The resumption of specie payments by the United States government was effected January 1, 1879, in accordance with the law passed in 1875. Silver was made a legal tender, and in the latter part of 1879 gold sank to par for the first time in eighteen years.

4. Fisheries Dispute with Great Britain.—The dispute between the United States and Great Britain over the fisheries of the north-eastern coast was settled, in 1878, by a commission of adjudication. That body decided that the United States must pay Great Britain \$5,500,000.

5. General Grant's Tour around the World.—One of the most interesting events of this period was General Grant's tour around the world. He was received everywhere with enthusiasm, the nations vying with each other in doing honor to the illustrious soldier and foremost citizen of the republic.

6. Presidential Election of 1880.—The Republicans elected their nominees in 1880. They were James A. Garfield of Ohio for President, and Chester A. Arthur of New York for Vice-President. The Democratic nominees were General Winfield S. Hancock of Pennsylvania and William H. English of Indiana.¹

¹ James Abram Garfield, twentieth President of the United States, was born at Orange, Cuyahoga county, O., November 19, 1831. His father died while he was an infant, and he was left under the sole care of his mother, who was a noble woman. He was sturdy and athletic, and served as a driver and pilot of a canal-boat. At the age of seventeen he attended the high school in Chester, where he was a hard student and learned fast. He graduated from Williams College in 1856, and afterward became president of Hiram College. He was elected to the Ohio Senate, and volunteered in the service of his country on the breaking out of the Civil War. He displayed marked ability in the field and won the promotion of major-general. He was elected to Congress while in the military service in 1862, and served for seventeen years. In 1880 he was

CHAPTER XLVI.

GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION, 1881-85.

1. **Assassination of President Garfield.**—On the 2d of July, 1881, in company with Secretary Blaine and some friends, President Garfield rode to the Baltimore Railway station to take the cars. He had entered the station when a miscreant named Guiteau shot him in the back. He was the second President to fall by the hand of an assassin, and the news caused a profound shock throughout the civilized world.



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

2. Everything that skill and affection could do for the suffering President was done. The hope was strong that he might recover. He was removed to the seaside, and for a time seemed to improve. The wound, however, was mortal, and he quietly passed away on the night of September 19th. His assassin was hanged June 30, 1882.

3. **Events of Arthur's Administration.**—Chester A. Arthur, as provided by the Constitution, became Pres-

sent to the United States Senate, but did not take his seat, as his nomination for the Presidency soon followed.

ident on the death of Garfield.¹ In 1882 a bill became law which forbade Chinese immigration, and required



CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

those already here to take out certificates, if they left the United States, to prove their identity before they are allowed to come back.

4. Measures against Mormonism.—The Brooklyn Bridge and the Washington Monument.—Senator Edmunds, in 1882, introduced a bill which became a law, and is the most effective blow Mormonism has yet re-

¹ Chester A. Arthur, twenty-first President of the United States, was born in Franklin county, Vt., October 5, 1830. He graduated from Union College in 1849, taught school for a while, and, being admitted to the bar, was very successful. He was quartermaster-general of the State of New York during the Civil War. In 1872 he was appointed collector of the port of New York City, and held the post for six years.

ceived. It disfranchised all polygamists and made them ineligible to office. On May 24, 1883, the Brooklyn Bridge, one of the most famous structures in the country, was opened to travel. The cornerstone of the Washington Monument was laid July 4, 1818, but many years passed before it was completed. It was dedicated February 21, 1885.

5. Other Laws.—Among the other laws enacted during Arthur's administration was one designed to regulate, by means of examinations, the system of civil-service appointments and promotions. In 1885 letter-postage was reduced to two cents an ounce.

6. Presidential Election of 1884.—In 1884 the Democrats elected their nominees for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency. They were Grover Cleveland of New York and Thomas A. Hendricks of Indiana. The Republican nominees were James G. Blaine of Maine and John A. Logan of Illinois.¹

CHAPTER XLVII.

CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION, 1885-89.

1. The Presidential Succession Law.—Cleveland was the first Democratic President since the war. A Presidential-succession law was passed in 1886, which

¹ Grover Cleveland, twenty-second President of the United States, was born in Caldwell, New Jersey, March 18, 1837. He attended the public schools, and became a teacher in an institution for the blind at Clinton, N. Y. He removed to Buffalo in 1855, and four years later was admitted to the bar. He was successful, and in 1863 was assistant district attorney. He was elected sheriff of the county in 1870, and mayor of Buffalo in 1881. His enormous majority in the gubernatorial campaign in 1882 secured for him the Presidential election, for which he was a candidate, two years later.

provided that if, at any time, there shall be no President or Vice-President, the office of President shall devolve



GROVER CLEVELAND.

upon a member of the Cabinet in the following order of succession: the Secretaries of State, Treasury, and War, the Attorney-General, the Postmaster-General, and the Secretaries of the Navy, Interior, and Agriculture.

2. Death of General Grant.—In the summer of 1885 the country was called upon to mourn the death of General Grant. He had

been suffering for a considerable time with a cancer at the root of the tongue. He bore his sufferings heroically, and finished writing his autobiography in spite of his severe illness. He died at Mount McGregor, in New York State, July 23d. His funeral ceremonies were of an impressive character.

3. Other Notable Deaths.—Vice-President Thomas A. Hendricks died suddenly at his home in Indianapolis, November 25, 1885. General George B. McClellan died on the 29th of the preceding month at his home in New Jersey. General W. S. Hancock died February 9, 1886, at his quarters on Governor's Island. Ex-Vice-President Arthur died at his home in New York, November 18, 1886.

4. Strikes and Labor Disturbances.—Anarchist Troubles in Chicago.—Strikes and labor disturbances

occurred in different parts of the country. In Chicago, May 4, 1886, while the police were dispersing a crowd of pestilent anarchists, one of them threw a dynamite bomb among the officers. Its explosion killed seven, crippled eleven for life, and injured a number of others. The most guilty of the anarchists were tried and hanged.

5. The Statue of Liberty.—The statue of Liberty, so conspicuous an object in the harbor of New York, was dedicated October 28, 1886. The ceremonies were



STATUE OF LIBERTY, NEW YORK HARBOR.

striking and impressive, and were attended by the President, Lieutenant-General Sheridan, and several members of the Cabinet, besides many distinguished visitors.

6. Earthquakes in Charleston.—Few occurrences in the history of our country were more startling than the earthquakes in Charleston, S. C., in the summer and early autumn of 1886. The shocks were felt in other parts of the South, but were severer in Charleston than

anywhere else. The deaths were about one hundred, the loss from \$5,000,000 to \$10,000,000, and fully two-thirds of the city required rebuilding.

7. Conquest of the Apaches.—An important achievement of the United States army was the close of hostilities with the Apache Indians of the Southwest. These red men are the most formidable that ever defied the white man. Their endurance, cunning, and malignancy made them for a long time the dreaded scourge of the border. Geronimo (he-ron'i-mo) was their leader during late years, and was the cause of numerous outrages. After incredible hardships the Apaches were conquered, their leaders run down, and with their families, including Geronimo, were transferred to a fertile reservation in Alabama.

8. Presidential Election of 1888.—In the election of 1888 the Republicans elected Benjamin Harrison of Indiana President and Levi P. Morton of New York Vice-President. They defeated Grover Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman of Ohio, who had been nominated by the Democrats.¹

¹ Benjamin Harrison, twenty-third President of the United States, was born at North Bend, O., August 20, 1833. His grandfather was the ninth President, William H. Harrison. Benjamin graduated at Miami University in 1852. He chose law as his profession, and upon being admitted to the bar established himself in Indianapolis. He enlisted in the service of his country at the outbreak of the Civil War, and served with marked success to the close. In 1881 he was elected to the United States Senate, and displayed much ability. His administration has been clean and creditable. The speeches made by President Harrison during his tour across the continent in 1891 were models of taste and eloquence.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1889-93.

1. **The Johnstown Flood.**—The most lamentable disaster in our country of late years was the flood of Johnstown, Pennsylvania, May 31, 1889. The giving way of a reservoir embankment released a torrent of water half a mile wide and nearly forty feet high. It rushed down the Cone-maugh Valley at the rate of more than two miles a minute, drowning 2295 persons and destroying \$10,000,000 worth of property.



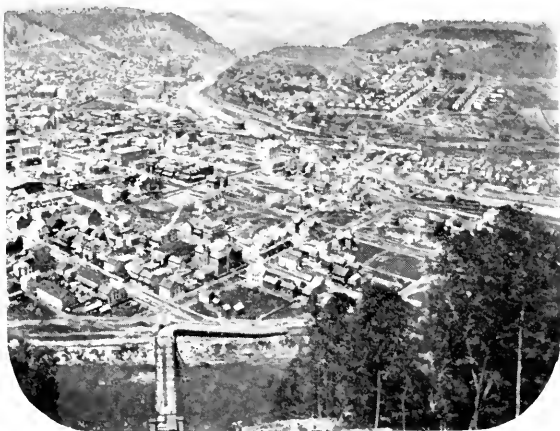
BENJAMIN HARRISON.

2. **The Indian Uprising of 1890-**

91.—Trouble broke out with the Sioux Indians in the latter part of 1890. Sitting Bull, the marplot among the red men, was arrested by the Indian police at Grand River, South Dakota, on the 15th of December. In an attempt by his followers to rescue him he and eleven others were killed. Conflicts took place at Wounded Knee Creek, S. D., December 29th, in which thirty sol-

diers of the Seventh Cavalry and two hundred Indians were killed. Lieutenant Edward W. Casey, while scouting near the hostile camp, was shot by an Indian, who was afterward arrested, tried, and acquitted.

3. A large number of Indians fled to the Bad Lands



JOHNSTOWN TO-DAY, SHOWING LOCATION OF BROKEN DAM.

and defied the military authorities. They had been aroused to a pitch of fanatical excitement by ghost-dances, and the belief that their Messiah was about to appear among them and drive the whites from their hunting-grounds. General Miles took command of the government troops on the 2d of January. At one time there was fear of a general rising among the tribes of the North-west, but the military authorities managed matters with great discretion. The hostiles who had taken refuge in the Bad Lands returned to Pine Ridge Agency on the 15th of January, and surrendered their arms

to the United States officers. There was no further trouble.

4. Death of Jefferson Davis.—Jefferson Davis, Ex-President of the Southern Confederacy, died in New Orleans, December 6, 1889. His funeral was generally observed throughout the South. His remains were removed to Richmond in 1891, and a movement was organized to erect a monument to his memory.

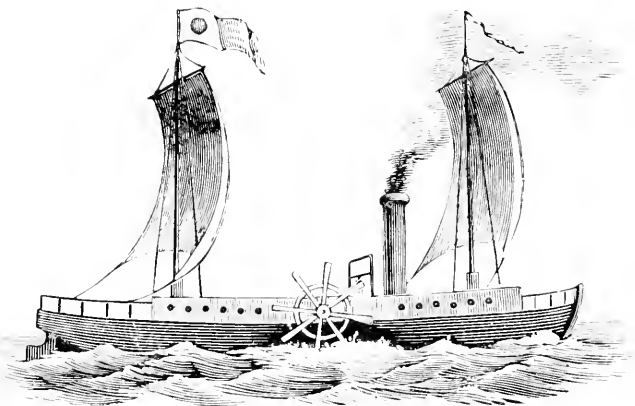
5. Deaths of Admiral Porter, General Sherman, and General Johnston.—Admiral David D. Porter died in Washington, February 13, 1891, and General Sherman expired the following day at his home in New York City. He was the last of the great military leaders on the Union side in the Civil War, and great respect and honors were shown to his memory. General Joseph E. Johnston, who, next to General Lee, was the most famous leader in the battles of the Confederacy, died in Washington, March 21, 1891.

6. Admission of New States.—Several new States were formed during Harrison's administration. North and South Dakota were admitted November 3, 1889; Montana, November 8, and Washington, November 11 of the same year; Idaho was admitted July 3, and Wyoming, July 10, 1890. In accordance with the rule, when a State is admitted into the Union its representative star does not appear on our flag until the 4th of July following. For the first time, therefore, in its history our national banner displayed forty-four stars on July 4, 1891.

7. The Tariff.—The principal question before the Congress of 1890 was the tariff. After much discussion an important bill was passed making many changes in the tariff, mostly in the direction of protection.

8. Conclusion.—Looking back over the hundred

years or more of our national existence, we are filled with wonder and gratitude. The four million inhabitants in 1790 have become sixty-two million five hundred thousand at the close of a century. The territory of eighty thousand square miles has expanded to four million. A century since the only cities having a population of ten thousand and upward were Philadelphia, New York, Boston, Charleston, and Baltimore. To-day there are nearly four hundred such cities, with several exceeding a million of inhabitants. The post-offices have increased from seventy-five to sixty thousand. The letter which, until 1816, cost twenty-five cents to send five hundred miles, can be forwarded from the Atlantic to the Pacific for two cents. The journey from New York to



THE CLERMONT, THE FIRST STEAMBOAT.

Philadelphia, originally requiring two days, is now made in two hours. More than one hundred and twenty million dollars are expended annually in the education of twelve million school-children.

9. Inventions.—Our people are a nation of inven-

tors. The quadrant was invented by Thomas Godfrey at about the same time that Benjamin Franklin originated the lightning-rod. In 1794, Eli Whitney constructed the cotton-gin, which made the production of cotton the leading industry of the South. Since then the inventions of Americans have been numberless. Among the leading ones are the steamboat, agricultural machines, the telegraph, improved gunnery, lightning printing-presses, sewing-machines, the telephone, phonograph, kinetoscope, with equally marvelous inventions doubtless to come in the near future.

10. Literature and Art.—In literature and art the Americans have made and are making a no less surprising advancement. The Revolution secured to us our national existence; the War of 1812 gave us a prestige among nations, and the Civil War of 1861-65 purged us of all danger from within. The United States is destined to lead in the civilization and progress of the world, and under the favor of Heaven shall endure to the end of time.

APPENDIX.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident:--That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the estab-

ishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures;

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation;

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent ;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury ;

For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences ;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally, the forms of our governments ;

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity ; and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing Declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.		
NEW HAMPSHIRE.	NEW JERSEY.	CHARLES CARROLL, of Carrollton.
JOSIAH BARTLETT,	RICHARD STOCKTON,	VIRGINIA.
WILLIAM WHITTLE,	JOHN WITHERSPOON,	
MATTHEW THORNTON.	FRANCIS HOPKINSON,	GEORGE WYTHE,
	JOHN HART,	RICHARD HENRY LEE,
MASSACHUSETTS BAY.	ABRAHAM CLARK.	THOMAS JEFFERSON,
SAMUEL ADAMS,	PENNSYLVANIA.	BENJAMIN HARRISON,
JOHN ADAMS,	ROBERT MORRIS,	THOMAS NELSON, JR.,
ROBERT TREAT PAINE,	BENJAMIN RUSH,	FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE,
ELBRIDGE GERRY.	BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,	CARTER BRAXTON.
	JOHN MORTON,	NORTH CAROLINA.
RHODE ISLAND.	GEORGE CLYMER,	WILLIAM HOOPER,
STEPHEN HOPKINS,	JAMES SMITH,	JOSEPH HEWES,
WILLIAM ELLERY.	GEORGE TAYLOR,	JOHN PENN.
CONNECTICUT.	JAMES WILSON,	
ROGER SHERMAN,	GEORGE ROSS.	SOUTH CAROLINA.
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON,	DELAWARE.	EDWARD RUTLEDGE,
WILLIAM WILLIAMS,	CESAR RODNEY,	THOMAS HAYWARD, JR.,
OLIVER WOLCOTT.	GEORGE READ,	THOMAS LYNCH, JR.,
	THOMAS M'KEAN.	ARTHUR MIDDLETON.
NEW YORK.	MARYLAND.	GEORGIA.
WILLIAM FLOYD,	SAMUEL CHASE,	BUTTON GWINNETT,
PHILIP LIVINGSTON,	WILLIAM PACA,	LAMAN HALL,
FRANCIS LEWIS,	THOMAS STONE,	GEORGE WALTON.
LEWIS MORRIS,		

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE 1.

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative: and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two

senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments: when sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent

members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sunday excepted) after

it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish post offices and post-roads;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the

officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings;—and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or ex-post-facto law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or

duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said house shall in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be

the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.]

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

In case of removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in such of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments who are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment

of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens of another State;—between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes

shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislature of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
President, and Deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.	PENNSYLVANIA.	VIRGINIA.
JOHN LANGDON,	BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,	JOHN BLAIR,
NICHOLAS GILMAN.	THOMAS MIFFLIN,	JAMES MADISON, JR.
	ROBERT MORRIS,	
MASSACHUSETTS.	GEORGE CLYMER,	
NATHANIEL GORHAM,	THOMAS FITZSIMONS,	NORTH CAROLINA.
RUFEUS KING.	JARED INGERSOLL,	WILLIAM BLOUNT,
	JAMES WILSON,	RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT,
CONNECTICUT.	GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.	HUGH WILLIAMSON.
WILLIAM SAMUEL JOHNSON,	DELAWARE.	
ROGER SHERMAN.	GEORGE READ,	SOUTH CAROLINA.
	GUNNING BEDFORD, JR.,	JOHN RUTLEDGE,
NEW YORK.	JOHN DICKINSON,	CHARLES C. PINCKNEY,
ALEXANDER HAMILTON.	RICHARD BASSETT,	CHARLES PINCKNEY,
	JACOB BROOM.	PIERCE BUTLER.
NEW JERSEY.	MARYLAND.	
WILLIAM LIVINGSTON,	JAMES M'HENRY,	GEORGIA.
DAVID BREARLEY,	DANIEL OF ST. THOMAS	WILLIAM FEW,
WILLIAM PATERSON,	JENIFER,	ABRAHAM BALDWIN.
JONATHAN DAYTON.	DANIEL CARROLL.	
	<i>Attest:</i>	WILLIAM JACKSON, <i>Secretary.</i>

AMENDMENTS

TO THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, RATIFIED ACCORDING TO THE PROVISIONS OF THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE FOREGOING CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against any of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant with the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes

shall then be counted; — the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—*Section 1.* Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

Section 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.—*Section 1.* All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of the citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

Section 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one

years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

Section 3. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

Section 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

Section 5. Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.—*Section 1.* The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

Section 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

LIST OF STATES AND TERRITORIES.

NO.	NAME.	ORIGIN OF NAME.	DATE OF ADMISSION INTO THE UNION.	ADMINISTRATION IN POWER.	AREA IN SQUARE MILES.	POPULATION (1890).
1	Delaware.....	After Lord De la War.....	December 7, 1787	.....	2,050	168,493
2	Pennsylvania	Penn's Sylvan Province.....	December 12, 1787	.....	45,215	5,238,014
3	New Jersey	(After the Isle of Jersey, Great Britain.....)	December 18, 1787	.....	7,815	1,444,933
4	Georgia.....	After George II.....	January 2, 1788	.....	59,475	1,837,353
5	Connecticut.....	Long River (Indian).....	January 9, 1788	.....	4,990	746,258
6	Massachusetts....	The blue hills near Boston (Indian)	February 6, 1788	.....	8,315	2,238,943
7	Maryland.....	(After Henrietta Maria, queen of Charles II.....)	April 26, 1788	.....	12,210	1,042,390
8	South Carolina....	After Charles (Carolus) II.....	May 23, 1788	.....	30,570	1,151,149
9	New Hampshire....	After Hampshire in England.....	June 21, 1788	.....	9,305	376,530
10	Virginia.....	After Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen.	June 25, 1788	.....	42,450	1,655,980
11	New York.....	After the Duke of York.....	July 26, 1788	.....	49,170	5,997,853
12	North Carolina....	After Charles (Carolus) II.....	November 21, 1789	.....	52,250	1,617,947
13	Rhode Island.....	After the Isle of Rhodes.....	May 24, 1790	.....	1,250	345,506
14	Vermont.....	After Green Mt. (Verd Mont).....	March 4, 1791	Washington's	9,565	332,422
15	Kentucky.....	(The Park and Bloody Ground (Indian).....)	June 1, 1792	"	40,400	1,858,635
16	Tennessee.....	(River with the Great Bend (Indian).....)	June 1, 1796	"	42,050	1,767,518
17	Ohio.....	Beautiful River (Indian).....	February 19, 1803	Jefferson's	41,060	3,672,316
18	Louisiana.....	After Louis XIV.....	April 8, 1812	Madison's	48,720	1,118,587
19	Indiana.....	After the Indians.....	December 11, 1816	"	36,350	2,192,404
20	Mississippi.....	Father of Waters (Indian).....	December 10, 1817	Monroe's	46,810	1,289,600
21	Illinois.....	River of Men (Indian).....	December 3, 1818	"	56,650	3,826,351
22	Alabama.....	Here we Rest (Indian).....	December 14, 1819	"	52,250	1,513,017

LIST OF STATES AND TERRITORIES.—CONTINUED.

No.	NAME.	ORIGIN OF NAME.	DATE OF ADMISSION INTO THE UNION.	ADMINISTRATION IN POWER.	AREA IN SQUARE MILES.	POPULATION, 1890.
23	Maine	After Maine in France.....	March 15, 1820	Monroe's.	33,040	661,086
24	Missouri,	Muddy Water (Indian).....	August 10, 1821	"	69,415	2,679,184
25	Arkansas	After a tribe of Indians.....	June 15, 1836	Jackson's.	53,850	1,128,179
26	Michigan	Great Lake (Indian).....	January 26, 1837	"	58,915	2,093,889
27	Florida	Land of Flowers.....	March 3, 1845	Tyler's.	58,680	391,422
28	Texas	(After an Indian confederation) (Tejas or Friends).....	December 29, 1845	"	265,780	2,235,523
29	Iowa	Drowsy Ones (Indian).....	December 28, 1846	Polk's.	56,025	1,911,896
30	Wisconsin.....	Gathering of the Waters (Indian)..	May 29, 1848	"	56,040	1,686,880
31	California	From a Spanish romance.....	September 9, 1850	Taylor's.	158,360	1,208,130
32	Minnesota	Cloudy Water (Indian).....	May 11, 1858	Buchanan's.	83,365	1,301,823
33	Oregon	Wild Marjoram (Spanish).....	February 14, 1859	"	96,030	313,767
34	Kansas.....	Smoky Water (Indian).....	January 29, 1861	"	82,080	1,427,096
35	West Virginia	After Virginia.....	June 19, 1863	Lincoln's.	24,780	762,794
36	Nevada	(After Sierra Nevada (Shony) (Mountains).....	October 31, 1864	"	110,700	45,761
37	Nebraska.....	Water Valley (Indian).....	March 1, 1867	Johnson's.	77,510	1,058,910
38	Colorado.....	Red (Indian).....	March 3, 1875	Grant's.	103,925	412,198
39	Washington	After George Washington.....	November 11, 1889	Harrison's.	69,180	349,390
40	Montana.....	A mountain (Spanish).....	November 8, 1889	"	146,080	132,159
41	North Dakota.....	After tribe of Indians.....	November 3, 1889	"	70,795	182,719
42	South Dakota.....	"	November 3, 1889	"	77,650	328,808
43	Idaho.....	(Gem of the Mountains (Indian).....	July 3, 1890	"	84,800	84,385
44	Wyoming.....	Extensive Plain (Indian)	July 10, 1890	"	97,890	60,705

TABLE OF THE PRESIDENTS.

NO.	PRESIDENT.	STATE.	BORN.	TERM OF OFFICE.	BY WHOM ELECTED.	VICE-PRESIDENT.	SECRETARY OF STATE.
1	George Washington.	Virginia.	1732	Two terms; 1789-1797.	Whole people.	John Adams.	Thomas Jefferson. Edmund Randolph. Timothy Pickens.
2	John Adams.	Massachusetts.	1735	One term; 1797-1801.	Federalists.	Thomas Jefferson.	Timothy Pickens. John Marshall. James Madison.
3	Thomas Jefferson.	Virginia.	1743	Two terms; 1801-1809.	Republicans.	Aaron Burr. George Clinton.	Robert Smith. James Monroe.
4	James Madison.	Virginia.	1751	Two terms; 1809-1817.	Republicans.	Elbridge Gerry.	John Quincy Adams. Henry Clay.
5	James Monroe.	Virginia.	1758	Two terms; 1817-1825.	All parties.	Paul D. Tompkins.	Martin Van Buren.
6	John Quincy Adams.	Massachusetts.	1767	One term; 1825-1829.	House of Reps.	John C. Calhoun.	Edward Livingston. Louis McLane.
7	Andrew Jackson.	Tennessee.	1767	Two terms; 1829-1837.	Democrats.	John C. Calhoun. Martin Van Buren.	John Forsyth. John Forsyth.
8	Martin Van Buren.	New York.	1782	One term; 1837-1841.	Democrats.	Richard M. Johnson.	Daniel Webster.
9	William H. Harrison.	Ohio.	1773	One month; 1841.	Whigs.	John Tyler.	Hugh S. Legaré. Abel P. Upshur.
10	John Tyler.	Virginia.	1790	3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1841-1845.	Whigs.		John C. Calhoun. James Buchanan.
11	James K. Polk.	Tennessee.	1795	One term; 1845-1849.	Democrats.	George M. Dallas.	John M. Clayton.
12	Zachary Taylor.	Louisiana.	1784	1 yr. and 4 mos.; 1849-1850.	Whigs.	Millard Fillmore.	Daniel Webster.
13	Millard Fillmore.	New York.	1800	1874 2 yrs. and 8 mos.; 1850-1853.	Whigs.		Edward Everett.
14	Franklin Pierce.	N. Hampshire.	1804	One term; 1853-1857.	Democrats.	William R. King.	William L. Marcy.
15	James Buchanan.	Pennsylvania.	1791	One term; 1857-1861.	Democrats.	J. C. Breckinridge.	Lewis Cass. Jeremiah S. Black.
16	Abraham Lincoln.	Illinois.	1809	1 term and 1 mo.; 1861-1865.	Republicans.	Hannibal Hamlin. Andrew Johnson.	William H. Seward.
17	Andrew Johnson.	Tennessee.	1808	1875 3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1865-1869.	Republicans.		William H. Seward.
18	Ulysses S. Grant.	Illinois.	1822	Two terms; 1869-1877.	Republicans.	Schuyler Colfax.	Edwin B. Washburne.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes.	Ohio.	1829	One term; 1877-1881.	Republicans.	Henry Wilson.	Hamilton Fish.
20	James A. Garfield.	Ohio.	1831	6 months and 15 days; 1881.	Republicans.	Wm. A. Wheeler.	Wm. M. Evans.
21	Chester A. Arthur.	New York.	1830	3 yrs. 5 mos. 15 das.; 1881-85.	Republicans.	Chester A. Arthur.	James G. Blaine.
22	Grover Cleveland.	New York.	1837	One term; 1885-1889.	Democrats.	Thos. A. Hendricks.	F. T. Frelinghuysen. Thomas F. Bayard.
23	Benjamin Harrison.	Indiana.	1833	1889-.	Republicans.	Levi P. Morton.	James G. Blaine. John W. Foster.

QUESTIONS FOR THE USE OF CLASSES.

Chapter I.—1. Whence came the people who first discovered America? What is known of their visit to the new world? By what other route was our country visited?

2. What is known of the mound-builders? Give some of the proofs of their existence.

3. What is said of the Northmen? What of Naddod? What other settlements were made in Iceland?

4. When was a permanent settlement made in Iceland? Tell what was done by Eric the Red. Who were the first white men to look upon the mainland of America? Why did they not remain?

5. What of the Northmen? What of their settlements? For how long a period did America remain unknown to the old world?

Chapter II.—1. What were the land divisions of the earth supposed to be five hundred years ago? What was known of them? What is said of Europe's trade with India? What gave an impulse to navigation? What was told of China and Japan? What did many of the learned men believe? What belief followed the one you have named? What of America?

2. When and where was Christopher Columbus born? Tell what you know about his early years.

3. Give a summary of the geographical ideas of Columbus.

4. Why did he not set out at once to test the truth of his belief? Relate his first experience at the court of King John of Portugal.

5. Show how Columbus was treated by the king. What was the result of the king's expedition?

6. Where next did Columbus go? How long did he importune the king and queen and with what result?

7. To what country did Columbus now turn his attention? Why did he not go thither? Show the earnestness of Queen Isabella. Relate how the expedition was fitted out.

8. What new difficulties were encountered by Columbus? What three vessels were secured? When did the expedition sail?

9. How did the voyage affect the sailors? How did it affect Columbus?

10. What prevented open mutiny? Describe the signs of land.

11. Describe what Columbus saw on the night of October 11th. What was seen the next morning?

12. Picture the scene on shore.

13. Describe the landing of Columbus.

14. What name was given to the island? Did he visit any other islands? What did he suppose them to be? Why were the natives called *Indians*? Have you ever seen an Indian? If so, describe his appearance.

15. Describe the reception of Columbus on his return to Spain. How were the king and queen affected?

16. How many more voyages did Columbus make? What did he do on his second voyage? When did he first see the mainland? At what point? When did Columbus die? What was his belief?

Chapter III.—1. Relate what you know of Amerigo Vespucci. Tell how it was that America received its name.

2. What were the leading maritime nations of Europe four hundred years ago? How were they affected by the discoveries of Columbus? By what right did Spain claim all the land discovered by Columbus?

3. What caused the disappointment over the discoveries of Columbus? What of John Cabot?

4. When did Cabot sail from England? What did he accomplish? How was he received on his return?

5. What was done by the elder Cabot the following year? What of his son Sebastian? For what was he searching? How did his achievements benefit England?

6. What was now the problem for Europe to solve? Tell what you know about Ponce de Leon.

7. Give an account of the discovery of the Pacific Ocean. What did Balboa do after the discovery?

8. Give an account of the first circumnavigation of the globe. What of the new route to India?

9. In what year did Narvaez visit Florida? How many men had he with him? What of the Indians? What was done on reaching the Gulf of Mexico? Give their subsequent history.

10. What of De Soto's expedition? When did they reach the Mississippi River? What followed? What of De Soto's death and burial? What became of the survivors?

11. Give the history of the oldest city in the United States.

12. Whom did France first send to search for the short route to India? What was done by him? What name was given to the new country? What credit belongs to Verrazani?

13. What was done by Jacques Cartier? With what result?

14. What do you know of Captain John Ribault? How were his companions pleased with the new country? What followed?

15. What of Captain Laudonnière? What did he do? What followed? What was done by Menendez?

16. What is said of Champlain? What colony was founded? When? What took place eight years later?

17. When and where was the first permanent settlement established in Canada? What did Champlain accomplish? What is Champlain sometimes called?

18. When did England bestir herself regarding the new world? Who was the first navigator she sent out to join in the search for the new route to India? When? Give an account of his voyage. What of Sir Humphrey Gilbert?

19. Who was Sir Walter Raleigh? What did he do? What land was granted to Raleigh?

20. For what purpose did Raleigh send an expedition to America? Where did the settlers land? What followed? What of tobacco?

21. What was done by Raleigh in 1585? Where did they form a settlement? How did the settlers spend their time? Who was the first white child born in Virginia?

22. What did Governor White do? What detained him at home? What did he find on his return to the colony? Is it known how they perished? How did these failures affect Sir Walter Raleigh?

23. What is said of Holland? Whom did she send to the new world? What did he do? What part of America was claimed by Holland?

Chapter IV.—1. How many years after the discovery of America passed before the French, Dutch, or English planted permanent settlements in America? What had been done by Spain?

2. What was the result of the various explorations?

3. What charters were granted by King James I.? Define the respective grants.

4. What were the provisions of the charter?

5. What was done by the Plymouth Company? What followed?

6. What was done by the London Company? What was the character of these colonists?

7. What is said of John Smith?

8. Describe the fleet. Who was its commander? What of the weather?

9. What was their intention? Why did they not do so? Describe the voyage up the James River.

10. When did the landing take place? What honor attaches to Jamestown?

11. Describe the flight of the settlers. What of the Indians?
12. Describe what followed. What fate threatened Jamestown?
13. What was done by John Smith?
14. How did Captain Smith obtain food?
15. Relate Captain Smith's adventure in ascending the Chickahominy.
16. What afterward befel Captain Smith? How did the colony prosper? What was the "starving time"? What was done by some of the settlers? To what extent were their numbers reduced? What did they decide to do? What prevented their departure?
17. What changes were made in the charter of the London Company?

18. Give the subsequent history of Pocahontas.

Chapter V.—1. What bad rule prevailed in the colonies? What of Governors Dale and Argall?

2. When was the "Great Charter" granted? What did it give? What was done by Governor Yeardley?

3. Describe the new system of government in Virginia. What was done in 1621? Point out the similarity between this system and that by which the United States is now governed.

4. Describe the condition of Virginia at this time?

5. Tell how African slavery was introduced into America. Were any more slaves imported?

6. When did Pocahontas die? What followed? What saved Jamestown and the nearest settlements?

7. Describe the massacre of 1622.

8. Give a summary of the succeeding hostilities.

9. What displeased King James? What did he do? What is meant by a royal province?

10. What was done by the British Parliament? Tell what you know about the Navigation Act. What was done by the assembly?

11. What resulted from the oppressive measures of the assembly? What was the direct cause of the revolt? What of Nathaniel Bacon? What followed?

12. What happened in the midst of the hostilities? What was the result? How was Virginia affected? Show its prosperity in 1650.

Chapter VI.—1. What is said of religious persecutions in England in the eighteenth century? Who were the Pilgrims and Puritans? Who were "Separatists"?

2. What was done in 1620? Where and when did they land? What is said of the weather?

3. What kind of people were the Puritans? Describe their hardships. Did they give up?

4. Why did not the Indians molest them? What was done in the spring? What is said of Samoset? Of Massasoit?

5. Relate the anecdote of Canonius and Governor Bradford.

6. Tell what you know of Captain Miles Standish.

7. What of the health of the colonists? What did they learn from the Indians? What of the *Mayflower* and the *Fortune*?

8. What caused the colonists to suffer? What is said of the "famine year"? What was their condition in 1624? What of the plan of holding property in common?

9. What caused an improvement? What progress was made? How was the colony governed? What took place in 1692?

10. What is said of other colonists? What took place in 1628? When was Boston founded? Show the rapid increase in population in Massachusetts.

11. In what respect did the sentiments of the Massachusetts Bay Puritans differ from those of Plymouth? What were their intentions in coming to America?

12. Illustrate their intolerance. What of Roger Williams?

13. How were the Quakers treated?

14. What of the United Colonies of New England? What was the object of this union?

15. What is said of King Philip? Describe the attack at Swansea. What followed?

16. What was done by the settlers? Describe the "Swamp Fight."

17. What is said of the Narragansetts? Of King Philip?

18. What followed King Philip's death?

19. How did the Navigation Act affect Massachusetts? Did the colonists submit? What steps were taken to bring them to submission? What of Sir Edmund Andros?

20. How long did Andros govern? What then took place? What of Sir William Phipps?

21. Tell what you know of witchcraft in New England.

Chapter VII.—1. What grant of land was received by Gorges and Mason? What settlements were made? What of the patent? What country was taken by Mason? By Gorges?

2. What claim was made by Massachusetts? How did it secure a clear title? How long did Maine remain a part of Massachusetts? What is said of New Hampshire? When did it become a royal province?

3. What took place in 1631? What was done by the Dutch? By the English? When was Hartford founded? How were the Dutch shut out?

4. What of the Pequod Indians? What did Roger Williams do? What massacre took place? What was done by Captain Mason?

5. What took place in 1662? In 1687? Relate the anecdote of the Charter Oak.

6. What did Governor Andros do? What happened two years later?

7. What settlement was made by Roger Williams? By a party of exiles from Massachusetts? How did they treat the opinions of others?

8. What request was refused by the New England Union? How was the objection overcome? What was done in 1647?

Chapter VIII.—1. What of Henry Hudson? By whom and for what purpose was he sent?

2. What was done the following year? In 1611? What did they claim? What name was given to the territory?

3. What trading-posts were built? What was done by the Dutch traders? When was a colony sent to New Netherlands? Where was Fort Orange? New Amsterdam?

4. What privilege was granted to those persons who planted a colony? What was the result?

5. Who was the first Dutch governor? When did he take charge? What did he do? What was the population of New York in 1628?

6. What is said of Wouter van Twiller? Of Peter Stuyvesant? What did he do in 1655? What else?

7. What claim was made by England? On what grounds? What took place in 1664? What change was made in the name? What was the population?

8. What is said of the people? Of the rulers? When did the Dutch retake New York? What took place the following year?

9. What is said of Governor Andros? What took place in 1683? What was done by the duke of York when he became king?

10. What followed the imprisonment of Governor Andros in Boston? What was done by Captain Leister? What was his fate? What is said of New York?

Chapter IX.—1. In what was New Jersey included? What was done by the Dutch? What was done by the duke of York? Where and when was the first English settlement made in New Jersey? What other settlements were made before that date?

2. What took place in 1674? What was done by Lord Berkeley? What followed?

3. What took place after Carteret's death? What caused confusion? What took place in 1702? In 1738?

4. What can you tell about the first settlement in Delaware? What did they name the new country? What of the other settlements?

5. How came William Penn to secure the grant to Pennsylvania? What addition was made by the duke of York?

6. What was Penn's object? What did he do? When did he arrive? When was Philadelphia laid out?

7. What is said of Pennsylvania? To what was this due? Illustrate Penn's honesty.

8. What was the foundation-principle of Penn's theories? What crimes only were punishable with death? How did he regard prisons? arbitration? an oath? cockpits, card-playing, and drunkenness? lying? What did he establish? What was done where an Indian was concerned?

9. What is said of Penn's treaty with the Indians? Illustrate the prosperity of Philadelphia.

10. What is said of Delaware? What did Penn do at their request? What is said of the two provinces?

11. When did Penn die? What of his heirs? What was done in 1779?

Chapter X.—1. What was the cause of many immigrants coming to America? Who was Lord Baltimore? What grant did he obtain? When, where, and by whom was the first settlement made?

2. What was its name? What right was given by the charter? When was the "Toleration Act" passed, and what did it do? What was the result of this liberality?

3. What claim was made by Virginia? What did Clayborne do? What was his next step? What did he do in 1645? What followed?

4. What trouble existed in Maryland? What took place in 1691? How were the Catholics treated? When were Lord Baltimore's rights restored to him? How long did this administration continue?

5. What grant of land was made in 1663? Why was it named Carolina? What colony was already planted there by Virginians? When and by whom was the Carteret colony established? Where did the immigrants first settle? Where next?

6. How did the colonies increase? What friction resulted? What was done by the proprietors in 1729? What followed?

7. Which was the last of the thirteen original colonies to be settled? What was done by General Oglethorpe?

8. What was the scheme of General Oglethorpe? When was Savannah founded? What was done to aid him in England?

9. What is said of General Oglethorpe? How did he display his generalship? What is said of some of his rules? Why? What was done in 1752? How long did Georgia continue a royal province?

Chapter XI.—1. What followed the European wars? What was

the first intercolonial war? How long did it continue? What Indians helped the French? What Indians helped the English?

2. What was done by the French and Indians? What was the favorite time for attack by the Indians? Why? Show how cruel the Indians were.

3. What step was taken by the colonists? What was done by Sir William Phipps? How was the war ended? What did this treaty do?

4. What was the cause of Queen Anne's War? What of the Iroquois? What is said of New England?

5. What of Port Royal? What name was given to the place? What of the expedition against Canada? How was the war ended? What of Acadia?

6. How long did King George's War continue? What was the most noted event? How was peace secured? What angered the colonies? How were matters left?

7. How long did the French and Indian War last? What is said of it? What is said of France and England? In what way only could the struggle end?

8. What is said of the English colonies at this time? Of the French territory?

9. What is said of the fur-trade? What of the rights of the Indians? What did the French do? What forts did they build?

10. How did Virginia regard this invasion by the French? What did Governor Dinwiddie do? Whom did he elect as the bearer of the message?

11. Tell what you know of young Washington.

12. Illustrate Washington's promptness. How many companions had he? How long was the journey? Describe it.

13. Relate some of Washington's experiences on this journey.

14. How long did the journey last? What reply was brought back by Washington? Why did not the French commander obey the request of Governor Dinwiddie?

15. Whither was Major Washington sent? What was the result?

16. What was done in 1775? What is said of General Braddock?

17. What took place within less than ten miles of the fort? How did the Virginians fight? What of Braddock?

18. Illustrate Braddock's bravery. What is said of Washington? What did the regulars finally do? What was done by Washington?

19. What of Acadia? What was done with the Acadians? Why was this harsh step taken?

20. What is said of the progress of the English at the beginning of the war? What was done by Generals Amherst and Wolfe? What capture

was made in September? What was done at Fort Duquesne? Why was the English fort named Pittsburg?

21. What is said of the attack upon Fort Ticonderoga? What took place the following year?

22. What would be the deathblow to French rule in America? To whom was the task assigned? What did he do in the summer of 1759? What of Montcalm?

23. What is said of Wolfe? Of Montcalm?

24. What discovery was made by Wolfe? What did he do? What sight astounded Montcalm the next morning?

25. What was done by Montcalm? Describe Wolfe's death.

26. Describe Montcalm's death. When did Quebec surrender?

27. What attempt was made by the French? What is said of the treaty of Paris? What did the treaty secure to England? Sum up the result of the French and Indian War.

Chapter XII.—1. What is said of life during the colonial times? Of the houses? Why were they thus made? What of the windows? The doors and interiors? The stairs? The chimney?

2. Describe the fireplaces; the window-panes; the furniture; the floor. What of carpets? The latch-string?

3. What of plates among the poorer people? of forks? How was food cut and eaten? What of the pots and kettles? How was cooking done? How was meat broiled?

4. What of the ovens? How was a pig roasted? What of the floor of the best room? What is said of the furniture in the houses of the rich? the pewter dishes? the silverware?

5. What of the drinking habit? Illustrate.

6. Describe the dress of the men in good circumstances; of the laborers.

7. What of the schools? the teachers? the vacations? corporal punishment? of Sunday-schools? of the sermons? How were the listeners kept awake?

8. What is said of the laws? Illustrate. How did the people of Hartford know when to rise in the morning? How were the scolds treated? How were other offences punished?

9. Describe some of the means of entertainment among our forefathers. What was popular in the Middle and Southern colonies? In New England? What was done at funerals? What of other sports?

10. How did the people travel in colonial times? What is said of slavery? Illustrate the ignorance that prevailed. When and where was the first printing-press set up? What was the first newspaper, and when was it issued? The first daily newspaper? When was Harvard College

founded? William and Mary? Yale? Princeton? University of Pennsylvania? Columbia? Dartmouth? How did they compare with the colleges of the present day bearing those names?

Chapter XIII.—1. What is said of the North American of to-day? Describe him.

2. Are the Indians growing less in number? How many are there in our country to-day?

3. What is said of the Indian's muscular development and powers of endurance? Illustrate.

4. How have the Indians been treated by the white people? What is said of Osceola? What of William Penn?

5. What further is said of the Indians?

6. How are the Indian women treated? What does a warrior think of work?

7. What of the "scalp-lock"? Of what were the Indians fond? Why?

8. What has the American race produced? Illustrate.

9. What is said of all people? Of what is this a proof? Describe the Indian's idea of heaven. Of what is he capable?

10. Of what else is the Indian susceptible? What is said of the government schools among them? What is to be hoped?

Chapter XIV.—1. What is said of the French and Indian War? What is meant by the expression?

2. Mention some of the causes of the Revolution. What of the navigation laws? What declaration was made by England's prime minister?

3. What was inevitable? What would have postponed the separation? In what way might it have taken place?

4. What was the direct cause of the Revolution? When was this act passed? How much did the French and Indian War cost the colonies? What amount was returned to them? What was the purpose of the tax? What is meant by "taxation without representation"?

5. What disposition did England show toward her colonies? What were writs of assistance? What did the Stamp Act require? What was its object?

6. How did the Stamp Act affect the Americans? What did they do? To what did they pledge themselves?

7. What meeting was held in New York? What did the members do? What was done by England?

8. What other act was passed by Parliament? What was done with troops? Did the colonies consent? What was the result? Describe the Boston Massacre.

9. What was finally done? How was this tax arranged? For what was the mother-country contending? What actuated the Americans?

10. What determination was made by the Americans? What was done in New York and Philadelphia? At Charleston? Give an account of the Boston Tea-Party.

11. How was England affected by these proceedings? What did she do? How was Boston affected by the closing of her port? Who were the Whigs and Tories? What of Patrick Henry's words? What of revolution?

Chapter XV.—1. When and where did the first Continental Congress meet? What colony was unrepresented? What is said of the majority? What did they declare? What did they decide to do?

2. What is said of these words? What was done by General Gage? What was done by the Americans? What took place at Lexington? What followed?

3. How did the affray at Lexington affect the Americans? What did they do? What saved the British army from destruction? What was its loss? What was that of the Americans?

4. What has been said of Lexington? How was the news carried? What was the affect on the colonists? How many men gathered before Boston? What did they do?

5. What next was done by the Americans? What was done by General Gage?

6. Describe the battle of Bunker Hill.

7. What was the American loss? The British? What benefits flowed from the battle?

8. When and where did the second Continental Congress assemble? What did it vote to do? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What pay did he receive for his services during the Revolution? What did he and Gates do? When did they learn of the battle of Bunker Hill?

9. Describe the capture of Ticonderoga. What was secured? What of Crown Point?

10. What is said of the American army before Boston? Describe their condition. What did Washington do? What of the British?

11. What was done in the latter part of the summer? What places were captured? What did Montgomery next do? Describe the assault on Quebec, and the result. What took place in the spring?

Chapter XVI.—1. What did Washington do? What was his next step? What advantage was thus gained? What was done by General Howe?

2. Describe the attack on Charleston.

3. What was done on the Fourth day of July? Who wrote that paper? What was it? How was it received?

4. Did this Declaration secure the independence of the colonies? What was necessary?

5. Explain why Great Britain was obliged to wage war against her American colonies.

6. What was done by General Howe? Who else arrived in New York? What was the number of the combined forces? How did they compare with the Americans? What did Washington do?

7. What was done by the British? What of the battle of Long Island? What followed? Where did Washington take position?

8. What did Howe do? What occurred at White Plains? What of Fort Washington?

9. What was Washington compelled to do? What of his army? What of Cornwallis?

10. What was Washington's next step? How large an army had he? What is said of Cornwallis?

11. What is said of those days? What of Congress? Of the army? Of Washington?

12. What did Washington do? Describe his crossing of the Delaware. When was it? Describe the battle of Trenton.

Chapter XVII.—1. What is said of the victory at Trenton? Name some of the results. What remained to be done?

2. What did Washington do? What was done three days later? How large was his army? What of Cornwallis?

3. Describe the battle of the Assumpink.

4. What rendered Washington's situation critical? Describe the strategy he adopted. Describe the battle of Princeton. What of the portrait of King George in the college buildings?

5. What did the victory compel the British to do? How long did they remain in New Brunswick? Where did Washington go into winter quarters? How did he busy himself?

6. What of General Burgoyne? What would have been the result of success on his part? What was the prospect?

7. What of Ticonderoga? Forts Crown Point and Edward?

8. Describe the battle of Bennington. What of General Gates?

9. What of Burgoyne? The battle of Bemis Heights? Describe Burgoyne's surrender.

10. How had matters gone elsewhere? What movement was made by General Howe? By Washington? What of the battle of Brandywine? What followed?

11. Describe the battle of Germantown. When did the Americans withdraw?

12. What did Howe next do? What was done by Washington? Where were the British?

Chapter XVIII.—1. What is said of the winter of 1777-78? Contrast the situation of the opposing armies in their winter quarters.

2. What did the spring bring? What is said of some of the European nations? Name a couple of excellent foreign officers who assisted the Americans? What of Baron Steuben? Who else helped the colonies?

3. What of Benjamin Franklin? What treaty was made by France? What did she do?

4. How was England affected? What did she do? Why was not her proposition accepted?

5. How long did the British army occupy Philadelphia? Who succeeded General Howe? What did he do? What of Washington? What is said of the heat?

6. Describe the battle of Monmouth. What is said of General Charles Lee?

7. What was done by General Sullivan? What of the French fleet? What prevented a naval battle? What of Sullivan?

8. What did England now do? To what extent did she succeed?

Chapter XIX.—1. What was done by the British? What of an English governor?

2. What of D'Estaing? What of the attack? Who were among the slain? What further is said of D'Estaing?

3. What is said of the war during 1779? Describe the capture of Stony Point. How many prisoners were taken?

4. What is said of the Indians? Where did they commit many outrages? Who was sent against them?

5. What did he do? What is said of this punishment?

6. What had Great Britain long claimed? How were we equipped to fight her? What was done by the Americans?

7. What have you to say concerning Paul Jones? What exploit did he perform?

8. What did he do in 1779? By what was he accompanied? With what did he open battle?

9. What did Jones wish? Describe the opening of this naval battle.

10. How long did it last? What strange thing was done by the French commander of the *Alliance*? What is the explanation?

11. Further describe the fight.

12. What of the removal to the *Scrapis*? How many of the Americans were killed and wounded? What else can you tell concerning Paul Jones?

Chapter XX.—1. What was the most shocking incident of the Revolution? What is said of Arnold? What occurred while he was in Philadelphia?

2. What is said of Arnold's treason? What did he secure from Washington? What arrangement did he make with General Clinton? Who acted as the bearer of letters between the two? What happened to André?

3. What did he offer to his captors? What did they do with him? What is said of these papers? What did Arnold do? What was his reward? What further is said of him? What was André's fate? What is said of sympathy for him?

4. What of the war in the South? Of Charleston? Who assumed command? What is said of him?

5. What of Gates's course in the South? What of Lord Cornwallis? What followed?

6. What of the partisan fighting in the South? Name some of the partisan leaders. What did they sometimes do?

7. What is said of the winter of 1779-80? Illustrate.

8. When did La Fayette return? What news did he bring? When and where did the fleet arrive? What was done by the British fleet? Did Clinton leave New York? Why not?

Chapter XXI.—1. What is said of General Greene? What did he do? What of his command? What did he accomplish?

2. What was done at the Cowpens? What of Cornwallis? Of Greene? What is said of the race?

3. What did Greene think? What of the battle of Guilford Court-house? What is said of the American militia? The regulars? What was the result of the battle?

4. How did Cornwallis save himself? What did Greene then do? Who gave him help? With what success did he meet?

5. What had been done by Arnold? What did Cornwallis do? What were Clinton's orders?

6. Was the end near at hand? What did Cornwallis do? What of Washington and Rochambeau? The French fleet? What was the strength of the allies? When was the attack opened?

7. What of the feeling between the French and Americans? When did Cornwallis surrender? Describe the scene.

8. How was the news sent to Philadelphia? When did he reach the city? What of the watchmen?

9. Describe the effect produced by the news. What did Congress do? What of the doorkeeper?

10. How did the news affect England? When was a treaty of peace signed? What did Great Britain acknowledge?

11. What of Washington?

Chapter XXII.—1. What is said of the United States? What of the field of development? What natural advantages did the nation possess?

2. How did the Revolution leave the United States? Illustrate. What had been done by the enemy?

3. When is generally the most trying crisis in the history of a nation? What of the victory at Yorktown? Of King George III.? What of Charleston, New York, and Savannah?

4. What other peril threatened the country? Why? What did the soldiers do? What offer was made to Washington? How did he receive it? What did he do?

5. What new danger manifested itself? Illustrate. What is said of the States?

6. What was the only remedy? What was done? When was the present Constitution adopted? What was necessary to make it effective? How many promptly did so? When did it go into effect? When was it accepted by New York? By North Carolina? By Rhode Island?

7. What is said of the States? What remained to be done? Toward whom did all eyes turn?

8. Where had Washington been living? What was his wish? Why did he not do so? How was he chosen President? Who became Vice-President?

9. What of Washington's journey from his home to New York? How was he welcomed in Philadelphia? Describe his reception at Trenton. Why did he go to New York to be inaugurated?

10. When was he inaugurated? Where did the ceremony take place? What is said of it and of him?

11. Compare the nation one hundred years ago with the nation of to-day. What of the population? Of the country to the westward?

12. What of the new administration? What of money and credit? Of the Indians? Of Spain? Of our commerce in the Mediterranean? What kind of men had we at the head of the government? What of Washington?

13. What were the views of a Federalist? Of a Republican, or Democrat?

14. What of Alexander Hamilton? What did Congress do? How were funds secured? What were established?

15. Are taxes popular? Relate what you know about "the Whiskey Insurrection."

16. When did Congress remove to Philadelphia? How long did that city remain the national capital? What then became the capital? When and by whom was it laid out? What of Washington and Adams?

17. What of the Indians on the frontier? What did they do? Who was sent against them? When was a great battle fought? What followed?

18. What treaty was made in 1795? What other treaty was made? What did it do?

19. Why did the Americans feel friendly toward France? What did they wish to do? What of Washington? Of the French minister? What did Washington do?

20. When did Vermont become a State? Kentucky? Tennessee? How many States then composed the Union? What constituted the North-western Territory? When was the first census taken? What did it show?

Chapter XXIII.—1. Who was elected second President? By what party and over whom? Who became Vice-President? Why?

2. With what was Adams's administration chiefly concerned? How was our minister used?

3. What did President Adams do? How were our envoys treated?

4. What did our envoys do? What was done by our country? What laws were passed? What did the Alien Laws allow? What did the Sedition Laws authorize?

5. How near did we come to a war with France? How was it prevented? When and where did Washington die?

6. What resulted from the trouble with France? What of the Alien and Sedition Laws? How did the feeling manifest itself? What President, after Adams, was elected by the Federalist party? Who became President? Who Vice-President?

Chapter XXIV.—What is said of Aaron Burr? What of him and Hamilton? What further of Burr?

2. In what manner did we acquire Louisiana? What of the bashaw of Tripoli? What did he do? When?

3. What did he soon learn? Name some of our naval heroes in the war with Tripoli. What was done? What followed?

4. What took place in May, 1801? Tell what this expedition did. How long was it absent?

5. What memorable event took place in 1807? Name the boat, and describe the voyage she made. Who invented her? What is said of this voyage?

6. What of England and France? Of Bonaparte? What was done by England? By Napoleon? How was the United States affected?

7. What was the most exasperating indignity suffered by us? What was the so-called right of search? What often took place? What of the protests?

8. Describe the contest between the *Leopard* and the *Chesapeake*.

9. How did the news of this occurrence affect our country? How was Captain Barron regarded by many? What of him and Decatur?

10. What was done by President Jefferson? Who was sent to England? What followed?

11. When was the Embargo Act passed? What did it do? What was believed? What was the result? How was it regarded by our own citizens? What followed?

12. Who was elected President and Vice-President in 1808?

Chapter XXV.—1. What increased the resentment of the Americans against England? Why? What of Tecumseh? Of the battle of Tippecanoe? Did Tecumseh take part?

2. What of England? Describe the affair between the *Little Belt* and the *President*.

3. When was war declared? Was it popular in all parts of the country? What of Boston?

4. What was one of the first steps decided upon? How did matters go? What of Fort Mackinaw? What disgraceful deed was done by Hull? What further is said of him? What alone saved him? When did the surrender take place?

5. Describe the second attempt to invade Canada. How did the New York militia behave? What followed? What was the loss of the Americans? What of General Van Rensselaer?

6. What record was made by the army during the first year of the war? How was it with the navy?

7. Was Great Britain prepared for the war? Why? How large was her navy? How many war-vessels were on the American coast? How many sailors manned her navy?

8. What constituted the American navy? What decision was the government about to make? Who persuaded the authorities to change their minds?

9. What is said of the commander of the *President*? Describe his battle with the *Belvidere*. What misfortune befel the *President*?

10. When did the battle take place between the *Constitution* and *Guerriere*? Where did it occur? Describe it. Who commanded the *Constitution*?

11. What exploit was performed by Commodore Decatur? What of his battle with the *Macedonian*?

12. Describe the conflict between the *Constitution* and the *Jara*. What were the respective losses?

13. What naval battle took place in October? Describe it. Compare the loss of each ship. What of the *Poictiers*?

14. What took place in the autumn of 1812? Who were elected President and Vice-President? Of what was this an endorsement? How was the country affected by the naval victories?

Chapter XXVI.—1. How was the army of the United States now organized? Who commanded the Army of the North, and where was he to operate? The army of the Centre? The Army of the West?

2. What of the Armies of the Centre and North? Describe the attack on York or Toronto. What befel General Pike? What was done by General Dearborn?

3. Who succeeded Dearborn? What did he do? Why was the expedition abandoned? What further is said?

4. What happened at Frenchtown? At Fort Meigs? At Fort Stephenson?

5. Where were our chief successes during the second year of the war? Describe the conflict between the *Hornet* and *Peacock*.

6. What challenge was made by the British commander of the *Shannon*? Why was its acceptance foolish on the part of Lawrence? Describe the battle.

7. What misfortune befel Decatur? Whom did he blame for his failure to escape? What name was given to the Federal party by its opponents?

8. What was gained September 10, 1813? What have you to say about Captain Oliver Hazard Perry? What did he command? What did he set out to find?

9. Where was the battle fought? What took place shortly after the opening of the battle? Relate what was done by Perry.

10. What did he do on reaching the *Niagara*? Describe the victory.

11. What motto did he display upon opening the battle? What words did he use in sending the news to General Harrison?

12. If the British had won, what would have been done? What did Harrison do? Where did he overtake the enemy? What followed? What of Tecumseh? Of Proctor?

13. What is said of this victory? What trouble occurred in the South? Who caused the trouble? What took place at Fort Mimms?

Chapter XXVII.—1. What of the Creeks? Of General Jackson?

Tell what you know of the battle of Horseshoe Bend. What further is said of the Creeks?

2. Who made the last invasion of Canada? Describe the battle at Chippewa. Of Lundy's Lane. What was the relative strength of the armies? The losses?

3. What of the Americans? Generals Scott and Brown? What further of General Brown?

4. What of General Brown's need of reinforcements? What force marched against Plattsburg? What of the British fleet? What was the relative strength of the fleets?

5. Describe the naval battle. What followed?

6. What of the British invasion by Chesapeake Bay? What was done in August, 1814? What followed? What of the "Star-Spangled Banner"?

7. How was the country affected? What do you know of the Hartford Convention?

8. What attempt was made to capture New Orleans? Who commanded the Americans? Describe the battle. When did it take place? What was notable about this victory? When and where was the treaty of peace signed? Why was the news so long in reaching this country?

9. What is said of the treaty of Ghent? Prove the truth of this statement. What of the quarrel? Of the people?

10. Was the war costly? To what extent? What of business? What change took place?

11. What of our finances? What was done by Congress? What followed? What was the result?

12. What trouble occurred with Algiers? Who were sent to bring the ruler to terms? How well did they succeed?

13. How was the Federal party affected by the war? How was this shown in the Presidential election? Whom did the Democrats elect President? What is noteworthy concerning our first five Presidents?

Chapter XXVIII.—1. What succeeded the War of 1812? What attempts were made at the close of the Revolution? What prevented success? What was done during Monroe's administration? Explain what is meant by protection and free trade. What is said of it?

2. What of the Seminoles? What was done by General Jackson? What followed? In what manner did we acquire Florida? Who was its first governor? How did he rule?

3. What dispute arose in Congress? In what manner was Missouri admitted? What was the "Missouri Compromise"?

4. What is said of South America? What of the various provinces?

Of the United States? What did Henry Clay urge? Was this done? When? Explain the Monroe Doctrine.

5. What pleasing incident occurred during Monroe's administration? What is said of him? Where and when did he land in this country? What can you relate concerning his tour? What took place in Boston? What of the *Brandywine*? What present was made to La Fayette by Congress?

6. What took place? How many Presidential candidates appeared in 1820? What of the Republican party? The opposition? What did the Whigs favor? What of the Democrats? How did the national election result? Who were chosen President and Vice-President?

Chapter XXIX.—1. What is said of our prosperity? When did Ohio become a State? Louisiana? Indiana? Mississippi? Illinois? Alabama? Maine? Missouri? How long an interval then passed before the admission of another State?

2. What is said of immigration? Of the Mississippi Valley? The defeat of the Creeks? Of the territory east of the Mississippi? Of the territory west?

3. What two striking events occurred on the Fourth of July, 1826?

4. What question was a stirring one during Adams's administration? Why was the South opposed to a tariff? Why did the East favor it?

5. When was the Erie Canal opened? What is said of this canal? What does it connect? What followed its opening?

6. When was the first railway in this country completed? What was the motive-power of the cars? When was the first steam locomotive used? How many miles of railway were in operation in 1830? How many are in operation to-day?

7. What is said of John Quincy Adams's administration? By whom was he defeated in 1828? Who became Vice-President?

Chapter XXX.—1. Describe the character of President Jackson. In what doctrine did he believe? What did he do?

2. To what was Jackson opposed? What course did he take to destroy the bank? What else did he do? What occurred in 1832? What was the result?

3. What of the political parties? What act was passed by Congress in 1832? What course did South Carolina take? What did she declare?

4. How did President Jackson act? What steps did he take? What did he vow? What was done by Calhoun?

5. What did Henry Clay secure? What of the threatened disruption of the Union?

6. What of the Indians? The Sacs and Foxes? Black Hawk? What trouble occurred with the Seminoles? What of Osceola?

7. Describe the massacre of Major Dade and his men. Give the further history of Osceola; of the Seminole War?

8. When did Ex-President Monroe die? Ex-President Madison? What further is said of Madison?

9. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1836? When did Arkansas become a State? Michigan?

Chapter XXXI.—1. What is said of the result of the violent financial steps taken by President Jackson? What of business and speculation? What was done with the surplus in the United States Treasury?

2. Describe the consequences. What of the failures in New York and New Orleans? What followed? When did an improvement manifest itself?

3. What can you relate concerning the "Patriot War" in Canada? What overt act was committed by New York citizens? What followed?

4. What did the President do? What of General Wool? Of the rebellion?

5. What is said of the Seminole War?

6. How does Van Buren's administration compare with others? For what was it blamed? What was the consequence? Who became Vice-President? How long had the Democratic party been in power?

Chapter XXXII.—1. When did President Harrison die? Who succeeded him? What is said of him?

2. State how the President acted regarding the United States Bank. What followed?

3. What dispute had existed for a number of years? When and how was it settled?

4. How was Rhode Island governed down to 1842? What did this make necessary? When was a new Constitution adopted? Whom did the Suffrage party elect governor? Who was chosen by the other party? What followed? How was the trouble settled?

5. Who was Stephen Van Rensselaer? When did he die? Explain who the "patroons" were.

6. How did Van Rensselaer stave off trouble? How much was due his estate at his death? What did his heirs attempt to do? Describe what followed.

7. Who settled at Nanyoo, Ill., in 1840? What did they do? What did the people do? Where did the Mormons finally settle?

8. Of what was Texas formerly a part? What took place in 1836? What followed? What did she do in 1844?

9. What did the question cause in Congress? Why did the North oppose the admission of Texas? Why did the South favor it? When was a joint resolution for its admission passed? What other bills were passed?

10. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1844? How was the news sent from Baltimore to Washington? Was this the first public telegram? Who invented the magnetic telegraph? Who is generally given the credit? What did he do?

Chapter XXXIII.—1. What did the Texan Legislature do on the 4th of July, 1845? What request was made of the President of the United States? In what manner did he comply?

2. What was done by General Taylor? What of General Arista? What occurred April 26th? Where was blood first shed in the Mexican War?

3. What was General Taylor's next step? What took place on his return?

4. Describe the battle of Resaca de la Palma. What of the Mexicans?

5. What was planned by General Scott? What duty was assigned to General Kearney? To General Taylor? What duty was assumed by General Scott? What was General Wool directed to do?

6. Describe General Taylor's movements. Against what place did he next march? How many men composed the garrison?

7. When was Monterey invested? What was done two days later? On the 23d? What followed? Describe the capture of the town.

8. What of General Scott? Of Santa Anna? Where did Taylor take position? Describe the battle.

9. When did General Kearney leave Fort Leavenworth? What befell Santa Fé? What did Kearney learn while marching toward California? What followed?

10. What did General Scott begin? What was his force, and where did he land? Describe the capture of Vera Cruz.

11. Toward what city did General Scott now march? What took place at Cerro Gordo? What of Santa Anna? When was the battle of Cerro Gordo fought? What of Jalapa? The castle of Perote?

12. What is said of Pueblo? Where did the army arrive August 10th? How near was it, when at Ayotla, to the capital? What movement was made? How near did this take the army to the city of Mexico?

13. When was Contreras stormed? What of San Antonio? Of Churubusco? Of Santa Anna?

14. What of hostilities? The western defenses? Chapultepec?

15. What was done by Santa Anna? What took place the next morning?

16. When and where was a treaty of peace concluded? What territory did we gain? To what did the United States bind itself?

17. What is said of Oregon? How was the dispute settled?

18. Tell when and how gold was discovered in California. What did investigation prove? What followed? What amount of gold was received by our mint up to June 30th, 1861? Since that date?

19. What two ex-Presidents died during Polk's administration? Where and when did that of Jackson occur? Of John Quincy Adams? What of Wisconsin?

20. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1848? Whom did they defeat?

Chapter XXXIV.—1. When did President Taylor die? Who succeeded him? What of the question of slavery? What occurred when California applied for admission into the Union? What caused the dispute? What had the people of California done?

2. Who saved the Union? What did his "Omnibus Bill" provide regarding California? Regarding the Great Basin of the Rocky Mountains? Regarding New Mexico? Regarding Texas? Regarding the slave-trade in the District of Columbia? Regarding fugitive slaves?

3. What is said of the Fugitive-Slave Law? What of Daniel Webster's support of the measure?

4. What have you to say respecting Cuba? Who went thither and for what purpose? What was done by General Lopez? What was the result?

5. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1852? Who were defeated?

Chapter XXXV.—1. What was the most notable event of Pierce's administration? What bill was introduced by Stephen A. Douglas? What did it do with the question of slavery? What of the measure? When did it become a law?

2. What is said of Nebraska? Of Kansas? What was done by the pro-slavery and anti-slavery men? What further is said?

3. What else was done in 1854? What were the provisions of the new treaty?

4. What was done by General William Walker in 1853? What did he do in the following spring? What followed? What was his career in Nicaragua? Give an account of his third invasion of Central America.

5. When was the present Republican party formed? What was its foundation principle? What became of the Whig party? Of the Demo-

cratic party? Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1856? Who were defeated?

Chapter XXXVI.—1. What is said of the bitter feeling between the North and South? Of the question of slavery? Of the compromises in Congress?

2. What of the conflict in Kansas? What decision was rendered by the Supreme Court of the United States in March, 1857? What did it declare? How was this decision regarded in the South and the North? What took place in the North? What of the "Personal-Liberty" bills?

3. Who was John Brown? What did he do? What followed? Who captured Brown? What was his fate? How did his raid affect the South?

4. When was the first Atlantic cable laid? How long did it work? When was success attained? What of other cables?

5. What took place in Kansas? What of the breach between the North and South? What of the Democratic party? Who were the respective nominees of the two sections of it? What were their principles? Whom did the Republicans nominate and elect?

6. Did the South await President Lincoln's inauguration before seceding? When did South Carolina withdraw from the Union? What other States followed? What did their delegates do? Who were chosen President and Vice-President? Describe the Confederate flag. When and where was it unfurled?

7. What was done by the Confederate authorities? What of President Buchanan? Of his Cabinet? Illustrate.

8. Whither were the eyes of the nation turned? What had been done by Major Anderson? How did the South Carolinians regard this movement? What did they do? State what befell the *Star of the West*.

Chapter XXXVII.—2. By what provinces was Vermont claimed? What of the inhabitants? When did it come into the Union? What does its name signify?

3. Which was the fifteenth State admitted? When did this take place? Why was it called the "dark and bloody ground"? Where, when, and by whom was it first settled? Of what did Kentucky originally form a part? Whom did its inhabitants resemble?

4. What of Tennessee? Where was the first settlement made? What took place in 1790? When was it admitted into the Union?

5. What of Ohio? Of what was it the first? What did the North-western Territory include? Where and when was the first settlement made? When was it admitted into the Union?

6. What of Louisiana? When was it admitted into the Union? Of how many States did the American Union consist during the War of

1812? Where was the first settlement made in Louisiana? When was New Orleans founded?

7. What of Indiana? Of what was it the second? What retarded its growth? What took place after the Indian troubles were ended?

8. What of Mississippi? What took place in 1728? What continued? When was it admitted into the Union?

9. What of Illinois? What of the Indians? Of the present city of Chicago? Of the prosperity of the State since 1850?

10. What of Alabama? Where was it first settled? When was Mobile founded? When was it admitted into the Union?

11. What of Maine? When was it admitted into the Union?

12. What of Missouri? When was St. Louis settled? When incorporated? What was caused by the application of Missouri to become a State? What was the question? How was it settled? When did Missouri become a State?

13. What of Arkansas? When was it organized into a Territory? When did it become a State?

14. What of Michigan? When was Detroit settled? When was Michigan organized into a Territory? When did it become a State?

15. What of Florida? When were the Territories of East and West Florida organized? When did Florida become a State?

16. What of Texas? What of its early days? When did American emigration set thither? When did it declare, and when did it gain, its independence? What did it become? When did it become a State? What did this bring about?

17. What of Iowa? When was it organized as a Territory? When did it become a State?

18. What of Wisconsin? When was Green Bay settled? When did it become a Territory? When was it admitted into the Union?

19. What of California? When was a mission established at San Francisco? When was the power of the Franciscan monks overthrown? What of American immigrants? What took place in 1846? What was included in Upper California when ceded to us? When did it become a State?

20. What of Minnesota? When was Fort Snelling established? St. Paul? When did Minnesota become a State?

21. What of Oregon? What did the Lewis and Clark expedition do? What was soon established? What did Oregon embrace when organized into a Territory in 1848? When did it become a State?

22. What of Kansas? What of its civil war? When did Kansas become a State?

Chapter XXXVIII.—1. What had careful observers seen for

years? What of the various compromises in Congress? What of slavery?

2. How did the South regard the election of a Republican President? What did their leaders believe? What did they consider the Union?

3. Had the South any sympathizers in the North? Were there many Union men in the South? Illustrate.

4. In what were these men believers? What did they do when their respective States seceded? What do you know of the "Peace Convention" held in Washington? What other body met on the same day?

5. When was President Lincoln inaugurated? Describe the proceedings.

6. What was done by General Beauregard? Describe the bombardment and surrender.

7. What is said of the capture of Fort Sumter? How did it affect the North and South? Illustrate.

8. What was done by Virginia troops? What of Richmond?

9. What city was threatened? Tell about the attack on the Massachusetts troops in Baltimore.

10. What of Arlington Heights and Alexandria? Fortress Monroe? Describe the affair at Big Bethel.

11. What was done by General McDowell? Where were the Confederates encountered? With whom was the advantage at first? What turned the tide? What followed?

12. What did the Union disaster at Bull Run show the North? What of the South? What was done by Congress? Who was appointed commander of the Army of the Potomac?

13. To what did General McClellan devote his energies? Describe the disaster of Ball's Bluff. What was the Union loss? Who was among the slain?

14. What progress was made in the East by the Unionists in 1861? What did General Lyon do in Missouri? What was the result? What of Colonel Mulligan? What did General Fremont do? Who superseded him? What did he do? Who superseded Hunter? What was accomplished by General Halleck?

15. What was done in August? In November? What movement was made by General U. S. Grant? What followed?

16. What favor was shown the Confederacy by France and England? Who were sent as commissioners to those countries? Relate the particulars of the *Trent* affair. How was a war with England averted?

Chapter XXXIX.—1. Compare the success of the Federals and Confederates at the beginning of the war. What of the South? Her

soldiers and generals? The Union sentiment? What further of the Southerners?

2. What of the fighting of 1861? How was it to be prosecuted henceforth?

3. What were necessary to conquer the Confederates? Name something that must be accomplished. Why? What would the opening of the Mississippi do?

4. Name another necessary step. What was in that city? What would its capture be?

5. Name a third necessary step. What would this prevent? What of minor movements? To what were they meant to contribute?

6. What did the Confederates hold in the South-west? What would follow the breaking of the centre? What advance was now made?

7. What took place February 6th? What of the garrison? What followed? Describe the attack.

8. What of the fleet? What did the Confederates attempt? What followed?

9. What is said of this victory? Of General Grant? What was now done by the Confederates? Describe it. What is said of this new line?

10. What took place three days after the fall of Fort Donelson? Who were elected President and Vice-President? When were they inaugurated?

11. What did the Union army do? Who was put in command? What did the Confederates decide to do?

12. When did the battle of Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing, begin? What of Albert Sidney Johnston? What of Grant? What followed? What was done during the night? What of the next day? What is said of this battle? What was the Union loss? The Confederate? Who was killed on the latter side?

13. With whom was the advantage? What did they capture? What of Beauregard? Of General Halleck? What was done by these respective generals?

14. Describe the capture of Island No. 10. When did it surrender?

15. What was done May 10th? What was the result? What did this give to the Federals? What line did they hold?

16. What movement was made by General Bragg? By General Buell? Who won? What did Buell do? What followed? What of Buell's management of the campaign?

17. What had been done previous to this? What of Price and Van Dorn? What purpose did Grant form? What failure did Rosecrans

make? What followed? What did the two Confederate leaders do? What is said of this assault?

18. What was done later in the year? Where did the armies meet? When did the battle open? How did the first day end? Who saved the Union army? What of the second day? Of the third day? What was the result? What is said of this battle?

19. What did Grant attempt to do? What was his plan? What ruined the scheme? Describe the movement of Sherman.

20. What was done with the *Merrimac* when the Norfolk navy-yard was burned? What was afterward done with her? Describe her armament. What did she do March 8th? Tell what was done by the *Congress* and *Cumberland*.

21. Describe the rest of the fight between the *Merrimac* and *Cumberland*. What was the loss of the *Cumberland*? What then of the *Merrimac* and *Congress*?

22. What did the *Merrimac* next do? What was the feeling in Richmond and Washington and the North? What important arrival took place that night? Who invented her? Describe the *Monitor*. How long had she been on the way from New York? What did she hear when off Cape Henry?

23. What surprise awaited the *Merrimac*? Describe her fight with the *Monitor*.

24. What is said of this battle? What did it end and usher in? What of the future navies of the world?

25. What naval expedition had gone out in February? What was the result?

26. Who were sent to capture New Orleans? Describe the battle. When did the city surrender?

27. What movement was made by the Army of the Potomac in April? How did it begin the campaign against Richmond? Who checked General McClellan? What did he do? What followed?

28. Who commanded the Confederates? Describe the battle of Williamsburg. What was done by McClellan? What took place in Richmond? What checked McClellan? Who was also endangered?

29. What was done by Fitz John Porter? What of McClellan's hopes? How did Johnston prevent the junction?

30. Relate how Jackson gained the name of "Stonewall." What further is said of him? How did he perform the duty now assigned to him? Tell what he did.

31. What did the peril of Washington cause the President to do? Who were ordered to capture Jackson? How did they succeed? What did Jackson do?

32. What was done in the mean time by McClellan? What did a rain-storm prevent? What movement was made by Johnston? What was done by Sumner? What happened to Johnston? What took place the following day?

33. Who assumed command of the Confederate army? Did he continue retreating? Describe Stuart's cavalry raid.

34. What was McClellan still doing? How near did Hooker's pickets approach to the Confederate capital? What news reached McClellan at this juncture? What did he decide to do?

35. What attack was made by Lee? What was the result? What of Gaines' Mills? What effort was made by Lee? What of Savage's Station?

36. What took place at Fraser's Farm? Where did the Federals gather? What followed Lee's assault? Whither did the Federals withdraw?

37. What is said of the first campaign against Richmond? What was the effect in the North? What was done by President Lincoln?

38. What did Lee continue? What of General Pope? What orders were given to McClellan? What did Lee determine to do?

39. Describe Lee's course. Describe Pope's. What followed?

40. What did Lee next do? What of McClellan? What occurred at South Mountain? What did Lee do? Where was a severe battle fought? What was the result?

41. Who succeeded McClellan in the command of the Army of the Potomac? What is said of him? How did he compare in ability with Lee? Describe his attack on Fredericksburg. What was the Union loss? What prevented a renewal of the assault on the morrow?

42. What is said of the fighting in New Mexico? Describe the engagement at Valverde.

43. What was done by the Sioux Indians in Minnesota? Who defeated them? How were they punished?

Chapter XL.—1. What can you tell about the Emancipation Proclamation? What battle was in progress when the new year opened? How long did Rosecrans remain idle? What movement did he then make? What did Bragg do? What followed? Where did a battle take place?

2. What of Longstreet? Of the fighting September 19th? Of the fighting the second day?

3. What threatened the Federals? What averted such disaster? How long did he hold his ground? What did he do at night?

4. With whom rested the victory? What step was taken by Grant? What of Chattanooga?

5. Relate what was done by Grant. What did Thomas do on the 23d of November? Describe the "battle above the clouds."

6. What took place the next morning? What attacks were made by the Federals? What was done to repel these attacks? What did Grant do? Describe the charge.

7. How was Grant affected? Describe the victory of Chattanooga?

8. What was the effect of this triumph?

9. Whither had Burnside been sent? What of his work there? What did Longstreet do? What occurred November 29th? What followed?

10. What change did Grant make in his siege of Vicksburg? What of the gunboats?

11. Describe Grant's movement against Pemberton; against Johnston. What did Grant accomplish by this strategy?

12. Describe the capture of Vicksburg. What of Fort Hudson? What great object was now accomplished?

13. What attempt was made against Charleston? With what result? What was done by General Gillmore?

14. What of the Confederate privateers? What of the *Alabama*? When and from what point did she sail? How long was she engaged in destroying Northern shipping?

15. When did the Confederates recapture Galveston? Relate the incidents. What followed?

16. Who superseded Burnside in the command of the Army of the Potomac? When? What induced Hooker to attack Lee?

17. Describe the Federal advance. What did Lee do on discovering this movement? Describe the work of Jackson. What was Hooker forced to do? What of Lee's movement against Sedgwick? against Hooker? What of the campaign against Richmond? What great loss did the South suffer?

18. What did Lee now determine to do? Describe his advance. What of General Meade? Why did Lee threaten Baltimore?

19. What occurred July 1st? What is said of the battle of Gettysburg? What of the issues at stake? The armies and their leaders?

20. What took place on the first day? At night?

21. What of the fighting on the second day? What successes were gained by the Confederates? Describe Longstreet's movements; Ewell's movements.

22. Describe the great artillery duel.

23. Describe Pickett's advance.

24. What further is said of the Confederate charge?

25. Describe the repulse.

26. How many Confederate soldiers were lost in the charge? What of the brigade commanders? of the field officers? of the regimental officers?

27. How many were killed, wounded, and captured in the battle? Why was Lee not pursued? What did he do?

28. What is said of Gettysburg? Of the Confederacy?

Chapter XII.—1. What remained to be done before the House could be restored? What is said of the Army of Northern Virginia? Of the Federal commanders?

2. What of General Grant? What was the effect of this promotion? What further is said of Grant?

3. What of the second, formidable army of the Confederacy? What of Johnston and Sherman? Describe their manœuvres. What of Kensaw Mountain? What was done by Johnston on the 10th of August? What occurred shortly after?

4. What of Hood? What was he finally forced to do?

5. What of the conflict? What movement was made by Hood? What did he expect? What of Sherman?

6. Describe Hood's movements in Tennessee. Relate what was done by Thomas. What became of Hood's army?

7. What of Sherman? How great was the distance? Describe his march to the sea. Where and when did he reach the coast? What followed? What was the result?

8. What took place in May? Compare the two armies.

9. Where was the first shock of battle? What is said of the fighting? What of the leaders and men? What was the respective losses in sixteen days? What befell General Longstreet? General Stuart?

10. What did Grant do? How did Lee act? Describe the repulse at Cold Harbor.

11. What did this repulse cause Grant to do? What did he do? What did the capture of Petersburg mean?

12. What of the attack on Petersburg? What astonished the Federals the next morning? What did this mean?

13. What was the only way of taking Petersburg? Describe the mine explosion. What of the siege at the close of the year?

14. What is said of other military movements? What was their object? What was General Sigel to do? What of his attempt? What of General Hunter? To what point did he withdraw?

15. What movement was made by Butler in May? How was he outwitted by Beauregard? What was the result?

16. What is said of Jubal Early? What of General Wallace? When did he appear before Washington? What saved the city?

How? What followed? Whither did he withdraw? What of Chambersburg?

17. Who now assumed charge of the Union forces in the Shenandoah Valley? What occurred at Winchester? What took place three days later?

18. What was done by Sheridan? By Early? Where was Sheridan? Relate what he did. What further is said?

19. What was General Banks ordered to do in the spring of 1864? By whom was he accompanied? What was it to do? Describe Banks's movement. What did he do at Pleasantville? What followed?

20. Relate the particulars of Porter's escape. What is said of the Red River expedition?

21. What took place despite the stringency of the blockade? What was done by the Confederates at Mobile? What did Admiral Farragut do?

22. What is said of the expedition against Wilmington, N. C.? Who commanded the land forces? What took place? What then did Butler do? What of Commodore Porter? Of General Terry?

23. What is said of the Confederate cruisers? What was done by Captain Semmes while at Cherbourg? Describe the fighting between the *Alabama* and *Kearsarge*.

24. Describe the remainder of the fight. What did Captain Semmes do just before his vessel sank? Who was rescued by the *Deerhound*?

25. What befell the *Georgia*? The *Florida*? The *Albemarle*?

26. What State was admitted October 1? What member of the Union did she make? Who were elected President and Vice-President in November? Whom did they defeat?

Chapter XLII.—1. What remained to be done? What of the resistance elsewhere? What two armies only were left?

2. What was done by the Confederate Congress? What was among his first acts? What did this include?

3. What movement was made by Sherman? What did he have? What of Savannah? Toward what point did he march? What of Columbia? What followed? What of Charleston?

4. What is said of Johnston? Where did battles take place? What occurred at Goldsboro? How large then was the Union army? What did Sherman do? When did he and Grant meet?

5. What is said of Grant? What took place on the 5th of February? How large was Lee's army? How long was his line?

6. What was Lee's plan? How would his forces then compare with Grant's? Did Grant intend to allow this function to be made?

7. What was Lee's next step? What success attended it?

8. What of the 29th of March? What followed? What did Lee do on the 31st?

9. What did Lee next do? What was done by the Federals? What of Sheridan?

10. What took place April 1st? on the following day? What was the result? What is said of Fort Gregg? Describe the defence by the garrison.

11. What is said of the end? Tell how the news was given to Jefferson Davis. Relate what followed.

12. What took place April 2d? What followed a few hours later? What of the pursuit? Describe the retreat of the Confederates to Amelia Court-house.

13. Relate the misfortune that befell Lee's army at Amelia Court-house.

14. What was done by Lee? What of the council of war? What is said of Grant? Describe the surrender. What is said of the Army of Northern Virginia?

15. What event shocked the entire country? Describe the assassination. When did President Lincoln die? What was the fate of his assassin?

16. When did General Johnston surrender? On what terms? When and by whom were the remaining Confederates east of the Mississippi surrendered? What of the naval forces of the Confederacy? What of the military leaders west of the Mississippi?

17. What befell Jefferson Davis? What was done with him? What of the trial? When was he released on bail? What of the prosecution?

Chapter XLIII.—1. Describe the grand victory that followed the close of the Civil War.

2. What is said of the Union and Confederate soldiers? Illustrate. What of Northern capital? Of the South?

3. What was the total number of troops furnished the Union army during the Civil War? About how many were killed in battle? (Give round figures in the statistics that follow regarding the Union army.) How many died of wounds? Of disease? What is the total of deaths? Of desertions?

4. What is a partial statement of the Confederate deaths? What is the estimate of those crippled and disabled by disease? How many lives, therefore, did the Civil War cost?

5. When was Vice-President Johnson sworn in as President? Was there any disorder?

6. How many persons were executed for acts growing out of the Civil

War? Give the facts concerning Captain Wirz. Who else were executed? For what crime?

7. What two questions were settled by the Civil War? What can you tell concerning the thirteenth amendment to the Constitution?

8. What was done by President Johnson? What was done regarding the other States? What did the States do? What was done on Christmas Day, 1868?

9. What did President Johnson find? What did Congress claim? What did they require?

10. What did Congress do? How did the President treat the law? What was then done? What was the object of impeachment? How did the trial result? What took place in 1868?

11. What was done by Congress in July, 1866? Who became general of the army? lieutenant-general? Admiral of the navy? vice-admiral?

12. What Fenian movement was made in the summer of 1866? Give the particulars.

13. Tell what you know about the purchase of Alaska. Illustrate its size.

14. What did the Emperor Napoleon of France attempt to do during our Civil War? What warning did he receive? Whom had he selected to be emperor of Mexico? What followed?

15. Give the particulars of the successful laying of the Atlantic telegraph cable.

16. Tell what you know about the death of Ex-President Buchanan.

17. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1868? Who were defeated? What of Nebraska?

Chapter XLIV.—1. When was President Grant inaugurated? Mention a noteworthy event of his administration. Tell what you know about it.

2. What occurred October 8th, 1871? How many buildings were burned? What was the area of the fire? How many people were made homeless? How many lost their lives? What practical sympathy was shown?

3. Tell what you know about the great fire in Boston in 1871.

4. What of the fifteenth amendment to the Constitution? What is said of the claims against Great Britain because of Confederate privateers? How were they settled? What did England agree to pay?

5. Give the particulars of the settlement of the last boundary dispute with Great Britain.

6. Who were elected and defeated in the Presidential election of 1872? What further is said of Horace Greeley?

7. What trouble took place with the Modoc Indians? What occurred April 11, 1873? What followed?

8. What difficulties arose with the Sioux? What befell General Custer and his command? What of General Reno? What was the loss of the Seventh Cavalry? What followed?

9. What is said of 1876? How was it commemorated? What can you tell about the buildings erected in Fairmount Park? What of the main building? Who made exhibits? What was the daily attendance? The whole number of visitors? The total receipts? Who opened and closed the exhibition?

10. What of Colorado? What of the Presidential election of 1876? Who were the Republican nominees? The Democratic? How was the dispute settled? What was its decision?

Chapter XLV.—1. What is said of the administration of President Hayes? What policy did he pursue? Illustrate.

2. What labor trouble occurred in the summer of 1877? What started it? What is said of the rioting at Pittsburg? Where else did disturbances take place?

3. When were specie payments resumed? What of silver? What of gold?

4. Relate what you know of the fishery dispute with Great Britain.

5. What is said of General Grant's tour around the world?

6. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1880?

Chapter XLVI.—1. Describe the assassination of President Garfield. Who was his assassin?

2. Tell what you know of President Garfield's sufferings and death.

3. Who became President? What legislation took place regarding Chinese immigration?

4. What is said of Senator Edmund's bill against Mormonism? What of the Brooklyn Bridge? Of the Washington Monument?

5. Mention some other laws enacted during Arthur's administration.

6. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1884? Whom did they defeat?

Chapter XLVII.—1. What is said of Cleveland? Describe the provisions of the Presidential-Succession Bill.

2. What can you tell about the Statue of Liberty?

3. Give the particulars of the death of General Grant.

4. What of Vice-President Hendricks? General McClellan? General Hancock? Ex-Vice-President Arthur?

5. What is said of strikes and labor disturbances? Relate what took place in Chicago in May, 1886.

6. What can you tell about the earthquakes in Charleston? How many

were killed? and what was the loss? How much of the city had to be rebuilt?

7. What is said of the troubles with the Apache Indians? What of the Apaches themselves? Of Geronimo? What was done with him and other leaders?

8. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1888? Who were defeated?

Chapter XLVIII.—1. Give a description of the Johnstown flood. How many persons were drowned? and how much property was destroyed?

2. What trouble broke out in 1890? What of Sitting Bull? What afterward occurred? What of other conflicts? What of Lieutenant Casey?

3. What was done by many of the Indians? What caused the excitement among the Indians? What was done by General Miles? What fear prevailed at one time? How did the military authorities manage matters? What of the hostiles? When did the trouble end?

4. Relate what you know about the death of Jefferson Davis.

5. What of Admiral Porter? General Sherman? General Johnston?

6. When were North and South Dakota admitted into the Union? Montana? Washington? Idaho? Wyoming? What is the rule when a new State is admitted? How many stars did our flag have on July 4, 1891?

7. What was the principal question before the Congress of 1890? What legislation took place?

8. How must we feel in looking back over the hundred years and more of our national existence? Show how the population has increased. Illustrate the expansion of our territory. What cities in 1790 had a population of ten thousand or upward? How many such cities have we to-day? Can you name any having as much as a million inhabitants? What can you say about the post-offices? Illustrate the reduction that has been made in letter postage. Show the improvements made in traveling. How much money is spent annually in education? How many children attend the schools?

9. Do the Americans make many inventions? What two important ones were made before the Revolution? What can you tell about the cotton-gin? Name some of the principal American inventions? Do you think others are yet to come?

10. How have we advanced in literature and art? What did the Revolution do for us? The War of 1812? The Civil War? What of the future?

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

PREAMBLE.—State the objects of the Constitution. By whom was it ordained and established?

ARTICLE 1., *Section 1.*—In what body is the power of legislation vested? Of what does Congress consist?

Section 2.—Of whom is the House of Representatives composed? When are they chosen? By whom? What qualifications must the electors possess? What qualifications are necessary in a Representative? How are Representatives and direct taxes apportioned? How is this determined? How is the enumeration or census made? What limit is set to the number of Representatives? Can a State be deprived of a Representative? What provision is made for vacancies? How are the speaker and other officers of the House chosen?

Section 3.—Of what is the Senate composed? How and for what time are they chosen? What was the classification first made? What was the object of this plan? What qualifications must a Senator possess? Who is president of the Senate? When only can he vote? How are the officers of the Senate elected? When can the Senate elect a president *pro tem*? What sole power is possessed by the Senate? When sitting for impeachment, on what shall they be? Who presides when the President of the United States is tried? What is necessary for conviction? How far does judgment extend in cases of impeachment? To what is the party convicted still liable?

Section 4.—What body prescribes the times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives? To what extent may Congress interfere? How often and when shall Congress assemble? What exception is made?

Section 5.—Of what shall each House be the judge? What shall constitute a quorum for business? What is a smaller number authorized to do? What may each House determine? What shall each House do as regards its proceedings? When shall the yeas and nays on any question be entered on the journal? What restriction is there upon the time and place of adjournment?

Section 6.—How are the salaries of the members fixed and paid? What special privileges do they possess? Can a Congressman hold any other office at the same time?

Section 7.—What bills must originate in the House of Representatives? What power belongs to the Senate regarding such bills? Explain the three methods by which a bill may become a law. What orders, resolutions, and votes must be submitted to the President?

Section 8.—What power has Congress regarding taxes, duties, imposts,

and excises? regarding the debts, common defense, and general welfare of the United States? What is said of all duties, imposts, and excises?

What is the power of Congress regarding the borrowing of money? Regulating commerce? Naturalization? Bankruptcies? Coining money? Counterfeiting? Post-offices and post-roads? Authors and inventors? Inferior courts? Piracies? Declaring war? Raising and supporting armies? A navy? Government of the land and naval force? Calling forth the militia? Organizing the militia? Where does Congress possess exclusive legislation? What power has Congress to enforce its authority?

Section 9.—What power is denied to Congress concerning the slave trade? Writ of habeas corpus? Bill of attainder? Ex-post-facto law? Direct tax? Exports from any State? Trade between the United States? Payments from the treasury? Titles of nobility? United States officer-holder receiving presents, offices, or titles from a foreign power?

Section 10.—What power is denied to every State regarding treaties? Letters of marque and reprisal? Coinage of money? Issuing bills of credit? Making any other legal tender than gold and silver? A bill of attainder? An ex-post-facto law? The impairing of contracts? Titles of nobility? Imposts? Keeping troops? Making peace and engaging in war?

ARTICLE II., *Section 1.*—In whom is the executive power invested? How long do the President and Vice-President hold office? Who are the Presidential electors, and how are they chosen? Who are ineligible? What may Congress determine? Who only is eligible to the office of President? What was the provision for the Presidential succession? What is the provision regarding the President's salary? What is the oath or affirmation of office taken by the President?

Section 2.—What is the President's authority over the United States army and navy? The State militia? The principal officers of the executive departments? Reprieves and pardons? What is the President's power in the making of treaties? Appointment of ambassadors? Judges of the Supreme Court and others? What is the President's power in filling vacancies?

Section 3.—Define the duties of the President as respects Congress, ambassadors, United States officers.

Section 4.—For what crimes and in what manner may United States officers be removed from office?

ARTICLE III., *Section 1.*—In what bodies is the judicial power of the United States vested? How long are their terms of office? What provision is made regarding their salaries?

Section 2.—Enumerate the cases in which the judicial power of the

United States extends. In what cases does the Supreme Court possess original jurisdiction? Appellate jurisdiction? State the law regarding trial by jury.

Section 3.—Define treason. What is necessary to a conviction? Who fixes the punishment? What is the limit?

ARTICLE IV., *Section 1.*—Give the law regarding State records and judicial proceedings.

Section 2.—To what is every citizen entitled? Does flight from one State to another save a criminal from punishment?

Section 3.—State the law regarding the admission and formation of new States. What power has Congress over the territory and property of the United States?

Section 4.—What must Congress guarantee to every State? To what extent must she protect each State?

ARTICLE V.—What two ways are provided for amending the Constitution? How may these amendments be ratified? What restriction no longer exists? How are the smaller States protected?

ARTICLE VI.—What debts were assumed by the United States on the adoption of the Constitution? What constitutes the supreme power of the land? Who must take an oath or affirmation to support the Constitution of the United States? What religious test is required?

AMENDMENTS.

ARTICLE I.—What provision is made regarding religious freedom? Freedom of speech and the press? Peaceable assembling and petition?

ARTICLE II.—What provision is made concerning the right to bear arms?

ARTICLE III.—What is the provision about quartering soldiers upon citizens?

ARTICLE IV.—What is the provision about unreasonable searches and warrants?

ARTICLE V.—What are the provisions regarding a trial for capital offences? Can a person be tried twice for the same crime? Can he be compelled to witness against himself? When can private property be taken for public use?

ARTICLE VI.—What rights are guaranteed to the accused in case of criminal prosecution?

ARTICLE VII.—When is the right of trial by jury guaranteed? In what way must a fact tried by a jury be re-examined?

ARTICLE VIII.—What protection is given against excessive bail and unusual punishment?

ARTICLE IX.—In what manner does the enumeration of certain rights in the Constitution affect those not enumerated?

ARTICLE X.—What powers are reserved to the respective States?

[The foregoing ten amendments were proposed in 1789 and adopted in 1791. They were passed in answer to the demand of those who thought the Constitution did not sufficiently protect the rights of the people.]

ARTICLE XI.—Point out the restriction placed on the judicial power of the United States. [This amendment was adopted in 1798.]

ARTICLE XII.—Explain the method of choosing the President and Vice-President by electors. How is the President elected if the electors fail to make a choice? How is he elected by the House? If no President is elected by March 4th, who would act as President? [This amendment was adopted in 1804.]

ARTICLE XIII.—What was the force of this amendment? [This amendment was adopted in 1865.]

ARTICLE XIV., *Section 1*.—Who are American citizens? How are the rights of citizens protected? [This amendment was adopted in 1868.]

Section 2.—How are Representatives apportioned among the different States?

Section 3.—Who are prohibited from holding any office under the United States?

Section 4.—How is the public debt protected? What is the provision regarding the Confederate war debt?

ARTICLE XV.—What is the provision regarding universal suffrage? [This amendment was adopted in 1870.]

CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

860. America visited by the Northmen.
870. A second settlement formed in Iceland.
1492. Columbus discovered the new world, Oct. 12.
1497. The Cabots discovered Labrador.
1498. The Cabots sailed along the Atlantic coast. Columbus saw South America.
1499. South America discovered by Amerigo Vespucci.
1512. Ponce de Leon discovered Florida.
1513. Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean.
1520. Magellan first circumnavigated the globe.
1524. Verrazani sailed along the Atlantic coast.
1528. Narvaez partly explored Florida.
1535. Cartier ascended the St. Lawrence.
1539-41. De Soto explored the present States of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, and discovered the Mississippi River.
1562. Ribault established a colony at Port Royal, S. C.
1564. Laudonnière planted a colony on the St. John's River.
1565. Menendez founded the first permanent settlement in the United States.
1576. Frobisher entered Baffin Bay in his search for the passage to India.
1584-87. Raleigh made two attempts to plant a colony in Virginia, and failed.
1605. Champlain and De Monts founded a colony at Port Royal, Nova Scotia.
1607. Jamestown settled, May 13.
1608. Champlain founded Quebec.
1609. Hudson sailed up the Hudson River.
Second charter granted to Virginia.
Henry Hudson sailed up the river bearing his name.
1610. "Starving-time" in Virginia.
The Dutch began trading along the Hudson.

- 1611. The Dutch explored the coast from the Delaware to beyond Boston.
- 1612. Third charter granted to Virginia.
- 1613. First settlement made on Manhattan Island by the Dutch.
Marriage of Pocahontas.
- 1618. Third charter granted to Virginia.
Death of Pocahontas.
Dutch erected a trading-post at Bergen, N. J.
- 1619. African slavery introduced into America.
First legislative body convened in America.
- 1620. Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth.
- 1622. Indian massacre in Virginia.
- 1623. Famine year at Plymouth.
New Hampshire settled at Dover.
- 1624. King James took away the charter of Virginia.
- 1626. Peter Minuit became the first Dutch governor of New York.
- 1628. Massachusetts Company formed.
- 1630. Boston founded.
- 1633. Wouter van Twiller becomes governor of New York.
- 1633-36. Settlements made in Connecticut.
- 1634. Maryland settled at St. Mary's.
- 1635. Hartford founded.
Carolina granted to Lord Clarendon and others.
- 1636. Rhode Island settled at Providence.
- 1637. Annihilation of the Pequods.
- 1638. Swedes settled Delaware.
- 1643. "United Colonies of New England" formed.
- 1644. Second Indian massacre in Virginia.
New York surrenders to the English.
- 1646. Peter Stuyvesant becomes governor of New York.
- 1647. Liberal government adopted in Rhode Island.
- 1649. "Toleration Act" passed in Maryland.
- 1653. New York retaken by the Dutch.
- 1654. New York retaken by the English.
- 1655. Capture of the Swedish settlements on the Delaware by the Dutch.
- 1660. Navigation Act passed.
- 1662. Union of the New Haven and Connecticut colonies.
- 1664. New Jersey settled at Elizabethtown.
- 1670. South Carolina settled on the Ashley River.
- 1674. New Jersey divided into East and West Jersey.
- 1675-76. King Philip's War.
- 1676. Bacon's rebellion.
- 1682. Pennsylvania settled.

- 1683. Philadelphia laid out.
- 1684. Massachusetts made a royal province.
- 1686. Arrival of Andros, the first royal governor of New England.
- 1687. Andros annuls the Connecticut charter.
- 1689. Breaking out of King William's War.
- 1690. Invasion of Canada.
- 1691. Lord Baltimore deprived of his rights.
- 1692. Salem Witchcraft.
Union of Plymouth with Massachusetts Bay Colony
- 1697. End of King William's War.
- 1702. Breaking out of Queen Anne's War.
New Jersey united with New York.
- 1710. Capture of Port Royal, N. S.
- 1713. End of Queen Anne's War.
- 1715. Rights restored to Lord Baltimore.
- 1718. Death of William Penn.
- 1729. Surrender of the charter of Carolina to the Crown.
- 1732. George Washington born, February 22.
- 1733. Georgia settled at Savannah.
- 1738. New Jersey becomes a royal province.
- 1744. Breaking out of King George's War.
- 1745. Capture of Louisburg.
- 1748. End of King George's War.
- 1752. Georgia surrenders her charter to the Crown.
- 1754. Breaking out of the French and Indian War.
- 1755. Repulse of Braddock.
Expulsion of the Acadians.
- 1758. Capture of Louisburg.
Capture of Fort Duquesne.
- 1759. Evacuation of Crown Point and Ticonderoga.
Capture of Quebec, September 18.
- 1760. Surrender of Montreal.
- 1763. End of the French and Indian War, and the termination of French rule in America.
- 1765. Passage of the Stamp Act, March 8.
Meeting of Colonial Delegates in New York, October.
- 1766. Repeal of the Stamp Act, March 18.
- 1768. British troops quartered in the colonies.
- 1770. The Boston massacre, March 5.
Removal of taxes upon all articles except tea, April 12.
- 1773. The "Boston Tea-Party," December 16.
- 1774. The port of Boston closed, March 31.

1774. First Continental Congress met in Philadelphia, September 5.
1775. The battle of Lexington, April 19.
 Second Continental Congress met in Philadelphia, May 10.
 Capture of Ticonderoga, May 10.
 Capture of Crown Point, May 12.
 Washington appointed commander-in-chief, June 15.
 Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17.
 Capture of St. John's and Montreal, November 13.
 Defeat of Americans before Quebec.
1776. Evacuation of Boston by the British, March 17.
 Unsuccessful attack by the British on Charleston, June 28.
 The Declaration of Independence, July 4.
 Battle of Long Island, August 27.
 American defeat at White Plains, October 28.
 Capture of Fort Washington by the British, November 16.
 Washington's retreat through New Jersey.
 Victory of Washington at Trenton, December 26.
1777. Battle of Princeton, January 3.
 Fall of Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Fort Edward.
 Defeat of Hessians at Bennington, August 16.
 Defeat of Washington at Chadd's Ford, September 4.
 Battle of Brandywine, September 11.
 Capture of Philadelphia by the British, September 26.
 Battle of Germantown, October 4.
 Surrender of Burgoyne, October 17.
 Capture of forts below Philadelphia.
 Washington's army in winter quarters at Valley Forge.
1778. France acknowledged American independence, February 6.
 Evacuation of Philadelphia, June 17.
 Battle of Monmouth, June 28.
 Massacre at Wyoming, July 3.
 Arrival of French fleet in Narragansett Bay, July 29.
 Savannah captured and the Southern Colonies overrun, December 29.
1779. Capture of Stony Point by General Wayne, July 15.
 Campaign against the Indians by General Sullivan, August 29.
 Paul Jones's naval victory, September 23.
 Repulse of American and French attack on Savannah, October 9.
1780. Capture of Charleston, May 12.
 Arrival of the French fleet off Rhode Island.
 Defeat of Gates in the South.
 Treason of Benedict Arnold.
 Execution of Major André, October 2.

1781. Arnold's marauding expedition in the South, January 5.
Battle of the Cowpens, January 17.
Battle of Guilford Court-house, March 15.
Reconquest of the South by General Greene.
Surrender of Cornwallis, Oct. 19.
1783. Treaty of peace signed at Paris, September 3.
Washington resigns his commission, December 23.
1787. The Constitution of the United States adopted.
1788. The Constitution of the United States went into effect.
1789. Washington inaugurated, April 30.
1790. Philadelphia became the national capital.
1791. Vermont was admitted into the Union, March 4.
1792. Washington and Adams re-elected.
Kentucky admitted into the Union, June 1.
1793. The city of Washington laid out by General Washington.
1794. Indians defeated by Wayne, August 20.
The Whiskey Insurrection.
1795. Treaty made with Algiers.
1796. Tennessee admitted into the Union, June 1.
John Adams and Thomas Jefferson elected President and Vice-President.
1797. Adams inaugurated, March 4.
1799. Washington died at Mount Vernon, December 14.
1800. National capital removed to Washington.
Treaty made with France, September 30.
Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr elected President and Vice-President.
1801. Jefferson inaugurated, March 4.
Tripoli declared war against the United States.
1803. Ohio admitted into the Union, February 19.
Louisiana purchased from France, April 30.
1804. Lewis and Clarke's exploring expedition.
Hamilton killed by Burr, July 11.
1805. Treaty of peace with Tripoli, June 3.
1807. Fulton ascended the Hudson with the first steamboat.
The *Chesapeake* fired into by the *Leopard*, June 22.
Passage of the Embargo Act, December 22.
1808. James Madison and George Clinton elected President and Vice-President.
1809. Madison inaugurated, March 4.
Embargo Act repealed.
1811. Collision between the *President* and *Little Belt*.

1811. Defeat of the Indians at Tippecanoe, November 7.
1812. Louisiana admitted into the Union, April 8.
 War declared against Great Britain, June 19.
 Surrender of Detroit by General Hull, August 16.
Constitution captured the *Guerriere*, August 19.
 Exploit of Commodore Decatur with the frigate *United States*.
 Battle of Queenstown Heights, October 13.
 The *Frolic* captured by the *Wasp*, October 13.
 Capture of the *Java* by the *Constitution*, December 29.
 Madison re-elected President, and Elbridge Gerry chosen Vice-President.
1813. Battle of Frenchtown, January 22.
 York (Toronto) captured, April 27.
 Fort Meigs attacked, May 1.
 The *Hornet* captured the *Peacock*, February 24.
Chesapeake captured by the *Shannon*, and Lawrence killed, June 1.
 Attack on Fort Stevenson, O., August 2.
 Decatur blockaded at New London.
 Massacre at Fort Mimms, August 30.
 Perry's great naval victory on Lake Erie, September 10.
 Battle of the Thames, October 5.
1814. Defeat of the Indians at Horseshoe Bend, March 27.
 Battle of Chippewa, July 5.
 Battle of Lundy's Lane, July 25.
 Washington captured by the British, August 24.
 Victory at Plattsburg and on Lake Champlain, September 11.
 British repulsed at Baltimore, September 13.
 Hartford Convention, December 15.
 Treaty of peace signed at Ghent, December 24.
1815. Victory at New Orleans, January 8.
 Capture of the *Cyane* and *Levant*, February 20.
 War with Algiers.
1816. Indiana admitted into the Union, December 11.
 James Monroe and Daniel Tompkins elected President and Vice-President.
1817. Monroe inaugurated, March 4.
 Mississippi admitted into the Union, December 10.
1818. Illinois admitted into the Union. December 3.
1819. First steamship to cross the Atlantic left Savannah, May 24.
 Alabama admitted into the Union, December 14.
1820. Florida purchased of Spain.
 Missouri Compromise passed, March 3.

1820. Maine admitted into the Union, March 15.
1821. Missouri admitted into the Union, August 10.
1822. The South American provinces recognized.
1823. The "Monroe Doctrine" declared.
The Erie Canal opened, October 8.
1824. Visit of La Fayette.
Cornerstone of Bunker Hill monument laid by La Fayette, June 17.
John Quincy Adams and John C. Calhoun elected President and Vice-President.
1825. Adams inaugurated, March 4.
1826. Adams and Jefferson died, July 4.
The first railway in the United States completed.
1828. Andrew Jackson and J. C. Calhoun elected President and Vice-President.
1829. Jackson inaugurated.
The first steam locomotive put in operation.
1831. Ex-President Monroe died, July 4.
1832. Black Hawk War.
Jackson vetoed the charter of the United States Bank.
Nullification in South Carolina.
The Seminole War.
Jackson re-elected; Martin Van Buren elected Vice-President.
1833. Jackson inaugurated.
1835. Massacre of Dade's command by Seminoles, December 28.
1836. Arkansas admitted into the Union, June 15.
Ex-President Madison died, June 28.
Texas proclaimed her independence, March 2.
Martin Van Buren and Col. R. M. Johnson elected President and Vice-President.
1837. Michigan admitted into the Union, January 26.
Van Buren inaugurated, March 4.
Financial distress throughout the country.
Osceola captured under a flag of truce.
Rout of Seminoles at Okeechobee, December 25.
1837-38. Rebellion in Canada.
1837. Steamer *Caroline* burned and sent over Niagara Falls, December 29.
1840. General W. H. Harrison and John Tyler elected President and Vice-President.
1841. Harrison inaugurated.
President Harrison died, April 4.
1842. Dorr's rebellion in Rhode Island.
End of the Seminole War.

1842. Our North-eastern boundary question settled.
1843. Rhode Island adopted her present Constitution.
1844. The first public telegram sent.
The Mormons driven out of Nauvoo, Ill.
James K. Polk and George M. Dallas elected President and Vice-President.
1845. Florida admitted into the Union, March 3.
Polk inaugurated, March 4.
Ex-President Jackson died, June 8.
Texas admitted into the Union, December 29.
1846. Captain Thornton attacked and captured, April 26.
Victory at Palo Alto, May 8.
Victory at Resaca de la Palma, May 9.
War declared by Congress, May 11.
General Kearney left Fort Leavenworth with an army for the West, June.
Santa Fé captured, August 18.
Monterey captured, September 24.
Iowa admitted into the Union, December 28.
1847. Victory at Buena Vista, February 23.
Vera Cruz captured, March 29.
Victory at Cerro Gordo, April 18.
Victory at Contreras, August 20.
Chapultepec captured, September 13.
City of Mexico surrendered, September 14.
1848. Treaty of peace signed, February 2.
Ex-President J. Q. Adams died, February 23.
Gold discovered in California, February.
Wisconsin admitted into the Union, May 29.
General Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore elected.
1849. Taylor inaugurated, March 5.
1850. President Taylor died, July 9.
California admitted into the Union, September 9.
1851. Lopez, the filibuster, shot.
1852. General Franklin Pierce and William R. King elected President and Vice-President.
1853. President Pierce inaugurated, March 4.
1854. Kansas and Nebraska Bill passed and Missouri Compromise repealed, May 31.
Boundary between Mexico and the United States readjusted.
1856. James Buchanan and John C. Breckinridge elected President and Vice-President.

1856. Dred Scott decision rendered, December term of Supreme Court.
1857. Buchanan and Breckinridge inaugurated, March 1.
1858. Minnesota admitted into the Union, May 11.
First Atlantic cable operated, August 5.
1859. Oregon admitted into the Union, February 14.
1860. John Brown's raid, October 16.
Abraham Lincoln and Hannibal Hamlin elected President and Vice-President.
John Brown and six companions hanged, December 2.
South Carolina seceded from the Union, December 20.
Major Anderson moved from Fort Moultrie to Fort Sumter, December 26.
1861. Steamer *Star of the West* fired upon, January 9.
Kansas admitted into the Union, January 29.
Confederate Government formed at Montgomery, February 4.
"Peace Convention" held in Washington, February 4.
President Lincoln inaugurated, March 4.
Fort Sumter bombarded, April 12, 13.
President Lincoln called for 75,000 volunteers.
Virginia seceded, April 18.
Massachusetts troops attacked in Baltimore, April 19.
Arkansas seceded, May 6.
North Carolina seceded, May 20.
Tennessee seceded, June 8.
Battle of Big Bethel, June 10.
Battle of Bull Run, July 21.
Battle of Wilson's Creek, August 10.
Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., captured, August 29.
Colonel Mulligan defeated at Lexington, Mo., September 20.
Battle at Ball's Bluff, October 21.
Port Royal, S. C., captured, November 7.
Mason and Slidell seized, November 8.
1862. Fort Henry captured, February 6.
Roanoke Island taken, February 8.
Fort Donelson captured, February 16.
Electoral vote of the Southern Confederacy counted, February 19.
Battle of Valverde, N. M., February 21.
Battle of Pea Ridge, March 7, 8.
Battle between the *Monitor* and *Merrimac*, March 9.
Newbern, N. C., captured, March 14.
Army of the Potomac landed at Fortress Monroe, April 4.

1862. Battle of Pittsburg Landing, April 6, 7.
Island No. 10 taken, April 7.
New Orleans captured, April 25.
Beaufort, N. C., taken, April 25.
Yorktown occupied, May 4.
Battle of Williamsburg, May 5.
Norfolk surrendered, May 10.
Corinth occupied, May 30.
Battle of Fair Oaks, May 31–June 1.
Memphis captured, June 6.
General Stuart's cavalry raid, June 12.
Seven Days' battles, June 25–July 1.
Battle of Cedar Mountain, August 9.
Indian War in Minnesota.
Second battle of Bull Run, August 29, 30.
Battle of South Mountain, September 14.
Capture of Harper's Ferry, September 15.
Battle of Antietam, September 15.
Battle of Iuka, September 19.
Battle of Corinth, October 4.
Battle of Perryville, October 8.
Buell superseded by Rosecrans, October 30.
Battle of Fredericksburg, December 13.
Failure of the attack on Vicksburg, December 29.
Battle of Murfreesboro', December 31, and January 1, 2, 1863.
1863. Emancipation Proclamation issued, January 1.
Galveston recaptured by the Confederates, January 1.
General Hooker assumes command of the Army of the Potomac.
Attempt to capture Charleston.
Fort Sumter bombarded, April 7.
Defeat of Pemberton at Fort Gibson, May 1.
Battle of Chancellorsville, May 2, 3.
Defeat of General Johnston at Jackson, May 14.
West Virginia admitted into the Union, June 19.
Battle of Gettysburg, July 1–4.
Vicksburg surrendered, July 4.
Port Hudson surrendered, July 8.
Fort Wagner taken, September 7. Attack on Charleston.
Battle of Chickamauga, September 19, 20.
General Thomas seized Orchard Knob, November 23.
Battle of Chattanooga, November 24, 25.
Siege of Knoxville raised, December 4.

1864. Fort de Russy captured, March 14.
U. S. Grant made lieutenant-general, March 12.
Battle of Sabine Cross-roads, April 8.
Battle of Pleasant Hill, April 8.
Butler landed at Bermuda Hundred, May 5.
Battles of the Wilderness, May 5, 6.
Battle of Spottsylvania, May 8, 12.
Sigel defeated at New Market, May 15.
Grant repulsed at Cold Harbor, June 3.
Battle of Piedmont, June 5.
Battle before Petersburg, June 16.
Destruction of the *Alabama* by the *Kearsarge*, June 19.
Battle of Kenesaw Mountain, June 27.
Battle of the Monocacy, July 9.
Battles before Atlanta, July 20, 22, 28.
Explosion of the Petersburg mine, July 30.
Chambersburg burned, July 30.
Battle of Mobile Bay, August 5.
Privateer *Georgia* seized, August 11.
Capture of Atlanta, September 2.
Battle of Winchester, September 19.
Battle of Fisher's Hill, September 22.
Privateer *Florida* seized, October 7.
Battle of Cedar Creek, October 19.
Albemarle sunk, October 27.
Nevada admitted into the Union, October 31.
Sherman started on his march to the sea, November 16.
Battle of Nashville, December 15, 16.
Savannah occupied, December 20.
1865. Fort Fisher captured, January 15.
Sherman marched northward, February 1.
Lee made commander-in-chief of the Confederate armies, February 5.
Columbia taken, February 16.
Charleston captured, February 18.
Battles of Averysboro' and Bentonville, March 15, 18.
Grant and Sherman met to arrange final campaign, March 27.
Battle of Five Forks, April 1.
Fort Gregg captured, April 2.
Petersburg taken, April 2.
Richmond taken, April 3.
Lee surrendered, April 9.

1865. President Lincoln assassinated, April 14.
Johnston's army surrendered, April 26.
Confederate forces east of the Mississippi surrendered, May 4.
Confederate naval forces surrendered, May 4.
Jefferson Davis captured, May 10.
Confederate forces beyond the Mississippi surrendered, May 26.
Vice-President Johnson sworn into office as President.
1866. Grade of general in the army revived, and those of vice- and rear-admiral in the navy created.
Canada invaded by the Fenians.
Ex-President Buchanan died, June 1.
Atlantic telegraph cable laid, July 28.
1867. Alaska purchased.
French evacuated Mexico.
Nebraska admitted into the Union, March 1.
1868. President Johnson impeached.
All the seceded States admitted.
Universal amnesty declared, December 25.
1869. President Grant inaugurated, March 4.
Pacific Railway completed, May 10.
1870. The fifteenth amendment to the Constitution became operative.
1871. The great fire broke out in Chicago, October 8.
1872. The *Alabama* claims were settled.
Boundary dispute with Great Britain adjusted.
1873. General E. S. Canby and others murdered by Modoc Indians.
1875. Colorado admitted into the Union, March 3.
1876. General Custer and his command massacred, June 25.
Centennial exhibition, Philadelphia, May 10 to November 10.
1877. President Hayes inaugurated, March 4.
Labor troubles in various parts of the country.
1878. Fishing dispute with Great Britain adjusted.
1879. Specie payments resumed, January 1.
1880. General J. A. Garfield and Chester A. Arthur elected President and Vice-President, November.
1881. President Garfield assassinated, July 2.
President Garfield died, September 19.
Vice-President Arthur sworn in as President.
1882. Law passed against Chinese immigration.
1883. Brooklyn Bridge completed, May 24.
1885. Washington Monument dedicated, February 21.
General Grant died, July 22.
Letter postage reduced to two cents an ounce.

1886. Presidential-Succession Bill passed.
Anarchistic riots in Chicago, May 4.
Earthquakes in Charleston.
War with the Apache Indians.
Statue of Liberty dedicated, October 28.
1889. Johnstown flood, May 31.
North and South Dakota admitted, November 3.
Montana admitted, November 11.
Jefferson Davis died, December 6.
1890. Idaho admitted, July 3.
Wyoming admitted, July 10.
Sitting Bull killed, December 15.
1891. Sioux War ended, January 15.
Admiral Porter died, February 13.
General Sherman died, February 14.
General Johnston died, March 21.
Forty-four stars appeared in the national flag, July 4.

TOPICAL ANALYSIS FOR SLATE OR BLACKBOARD.

PART I.

THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND DEVELOPMENT.

Earliest Discoverers.	{	Discoverers from Asia.
		The Mound-Builders.
		The Northmen, { Naddod. Eric the Red.

The Era of Geographical Ignorance.

Columbus.	{	Birth and Early Training.
		His Geographical Views.
		At the Portuguese Court.
		At the Spanish Court.
		His Voyage Westward.
		His Return to Spain.
		Further Discoveries.
	{	His Death.

Other Discoverers.	{	Amerigo Vespucci.
		John Cabot.
		Sebastian Cabot.

Spanish Explorers.	{	Ponce de Leon.
		Balboa.
		Magellan.
		De Narvaez.
		De Soto.
	{	Menendez.

French Explorers.	{	Verrazani.
		Cartier.
		John Ribaut.
		Landonnière.
		Champlain.
	{	De Monts.

English Explorers.	{	Frobisher.
		Sir Humphrey Gilbert.
		Sir Walter Raleigh, { First and second at- tempts, and their fail- ures.

Dutch Explorer.	{	Henry Hudson.
------------------------	---	---------------

PART II.

THE COLONIAL PERIOD.

	{	Attention of the leading nations attracted to the New World.
		The London Company.
		The Plymouth Company.
		Method of Government.
		First Failure.
		John Smith. { His romantic history.
		{ Doubt of some portions.
		Founding of Jamestown.
		John Smith. { His services.
		{ His adventures.
		The Starving Time.
Virginia.		Arrival of Lord Delaware.
		The Third Charter.
		Pocahontas.
		Colony Badly Ruled.
		The Great Charter.
		First Legislative Body Convened.
		Method of Government.
		Period of Prosperity.
		African Slavery Introduced.
		Death of Powhatan.
		Trouble with the Indians.
		Virginia made a Royal Province.
		Oppressed by the British Parliament.
		Bacon's Rebellion.
Massachusetts.	{	Religious Persecution.
		Landing of Pilgrims.
		Character of Pilgrims.
		Sufferings of Pilgrims.
		The Indians.
	{	Growth of the Colony.
		The Puritans.
		Their Intolerance.
		The Colonies United.
		King Philip's War.
		Made a Royal Province.
		Tyrannical Government.
		Salem Witchcraft.

Maine and New Hampshire.

Connecticut.	{	Settlement. Destruction of the Pequods. The Charter Oak.
Rhode Island.	{	Settlement. Toleration Act. Charter Granted.
New York.	{	Settlement. Government under the Dutch. Government under the English.
New Jersey.	{	Settlement. East and West Jersey. New Jersey a Royal Province.
Delaware and Penn- sylvania.	{	Settlement. Philadelphia Founded. The Golden Rule in Government. Penn's Treaty. Remarkable Prosperity. Delaware. Death of Penn. Rights of his Heirs.
Maryland.	{	Settlement. Religious Difficulties.
The Carolinas.	{	Settlement. The Albemarle Colony. The Clarendon Colony.
Georgia.	{	Settlement. Oglethorpe's Experiment.
Intercolonial Wars.	{	King William's War. { Causes. Progress. Results.
		Queen Anne's War. { Causes. Progress. Results.
		King George's War. { Causes. Progress. Results.
		French and Indian War. { Causes. Progress. Results.

Life in the Colonial Times.

PART III.

THE REVOLUTION.

Causes of the Revolution.	{ Discrimination against American Interests. Navigation Acts. Stamp Act. Taxation without Representation. Writs of Assistance.
Retaliatory Measures by Great Britain.	{ Closing the Port of Boston. General Gage appointed Governor of Massachusetts.
Events of 1774-75.	{ First Continental Congress. Battle of Lexington. Battle of Bunker Hill. Second Continental Congress. General Washington made Commander-in-Chief. Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. Invasion of Canada.
Events of 1776.	{ Evacuation of Boston. Attack on Charleston. Declaration of Independence. Campaign around New York. Retreat through New Jersey. Battle of Trenton.
Events of 1777.	{ Battle of the Assumpink. Battle of Princeton. Burgoyne's Invasion. Fall of Philadelphia.
Events of 1778.	{ Washington at Valley Forge. Treaty of France with the United States. Evacuation of Philadelphia. Battle of Monmouth. Military Movements in Rhode Island. Campaign in the South.
Events of 1779.	{ The War in the South. The War in the North. Campaigns against the Indians. The War on the Ocean.

Events of 1780.	{	Treason of Arnold.
		The War in the South.
		Further Aid from France.
Events of 1781.	{	Campaign in the South.
		Surrender at Yorktown.
		Treaty of Peace.
		Washington Surrenders his Commission.

PART IV.

GROWTH OF THE STATES.

Washington's Admin- istration, 1789-97.	{	Condition of the States at the Close of the Revolution.
		Peril from the Army.
		Adoption of the Constitution.
		First President and Vice-President.
		Domestic Affairs.
		Foreign Affairs.
John Adams's Admin- istration, 1797-1801.	{	Political Parties.
		Domestic Affairs.
		Foreign Affairs.
		Presidential Election of 1800.
Jefferson's Adminis- tration, 1801-09.	{	Domestic Affairs. { Burr and Hamilton. Louisiana Purchased.
		The First Steamboat.
		Lewis and Clarke's Ex- pedition.
		Foreign Affairs. { War with Tripoli.
		England and France, Em- bargo Act.
		Presidential Election of 1808.
Madison's Adminis- tration, 1809-17.	{	Domestic Affairs.
		Foreign Affairs. { Causes of War.
		War of 1812. { Achievements of the Army.
		{ Achievements of the Navy.
		Peace. Results.
		Indian Troubles.
	{	Presidential Election of 1816.

**Monroe's Administration,
1817-25.**

Era of Prosperity.
 Domestic Affairs. { Missouri Compromise.
 { La Fayette's Visit.
 Foreign Affairs. { Acquisition of Florida.
 { Monroe Doctrine.
 Recasting of Political Parties.
 Presidential Election of 1824.

**John Quincy Adams's
Administration,
1825-29.**

Admission of States.
 Opening of the Mississippi Valley.
 Death of Jefferson and the Elder Adams.
 The Erie Canal.
 First Railway.
 First Steam Locomotive.
 Presidential Election of 1828.

**Jackson's Adminis-
tration, 1829-37.**

Domestic Affairs. { U. S. Bank.
 { Nullification.
 { Indian Troubles.
 Foreign Affairs.
 Presidential Election of 1836.

**Van Buren's Adminis-
tration, 1837-41.**

Domestic Affairs. { Panic of 1837.
 Foreign Affairs. { The Patriot War.
 Presidential Election of 1840.

**Harrison and Tyler's
Administration,
1841-45.**

Death of Harrison. { U. S. Bank.
 Domestic Affairs. { Suffrage Difficulties.
 Foreign Affairs. { Annexation { Anti-rent Excite-
 { of Texas. { ment.
 { The Mormons.
 { Magnetic Telegraph.
 Presidential Election of 1844.

**Polk's Administra-
tion, 1845-49.**

Foreign Affairs. { Causes.
 War with Mexico, { Operations of Armies un-
 { der Generals Taylor,
 { Kearney, and Scott.
 { Peace. Results of the
 { War.
 Domestic Affairs. { Discovery of Gold in
 { in California.
 { Death of Ex-Presidents
 { Jackson and Adams.
 Presidential Election of 1848.

Taylor and Fillmore's Administration, 1849-53.	{	Death of Taylor.	
		Domestic Affairs.	{ Slavery. Admission of California.
		Foreign Affairs.	{ The American Attempt to Liberate Cuba.
		Presidential Election of 1852.	

Pierce's Administration, 1853-57.	{	Domestic Affairs.	{ Repeal of Missouri Com- promise. Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Civil War in Kansas. Walker's Expeditions.
		Foreign Affairs.	Mexico.
		Presidential Election of 1856.	

Buchanan's Administration, 1857-61.	{	Domestic Affairs.	{ Slavery Question. Dred Scott Decision. John Brown's Raid. Atlantic Cable.
		The Seceding States. Fort Sumter.	
		Presidential Election of 1860.	

States admitted during this Period.

PART V.

THE CIVIL WAR.

Lincoln's Administration, 1861-65.

1861.	{	Slavery and the Doctrine of State Rights.
		Inauguration of President Lincoln.
		Peace Convention in Washington.
		Capture of Fort Sumter.
		War-spirit North and South.
		Battles of Big Bethel, Bull Run, and Ball's Bluff.
		General McClellan takes Command of the Army of the Potomac.
		General Lyon.
		Colonel Mulligan.
	{	The <i>Trent</i> Affair.

- The Union Plan of Campaign.
 - Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson.
 - Confederate Presidency and Vice-Presidency.
 - Battle of Shiloh.
 - Capture of Island No. 10.
 - Battle of Perryville.
 - Battle of Murfreesboro'.
- 1862. {
 - The *Monitor* and *Merrimac*.
 - Capture of New Orleans.
 - First Campaign against Richmond.
 - Lee's First Northern Invasion.
 - Battle of Antietam.
 - Attack on Fredericksburg.
 - The War in New Mexico.
 - Indian Outbreak in Minnesota.
- Battle of Chickamauga.
 - Battle of Chattanooga.
 - Relief of Burnside at Knoxville.
 - Attempt against Charleston.
- 1863. {
 - Confederate Privateers.
 - Recapture of Galveston.
 - Battle of Chancellorsville.
 - Second Confederate Invasion of the North.
 - Battle of Gettysburg.
 - Capture of Vicksburg.
- Sherman's Campaign: his March to the Sea.
 - Grant's Campaign—Petersburg.
 - Sigel's and Hunter's Campaigns in the Shenandoah Valley.
 - Butler's Failure at Bermuda Hundred.
 - Early's Advance.
- 1864. {
 - Sheridan's Campaign.
 - General Banks's Red River Expedition.
 - Closing of Mobile.
 - Capture of Fort Fisher.
 - Destruction of the *Alabama*.
 - Presidential Election of 1864.
- Sherman's March Northward.
 - Grant's Last Campaign against Lee.
- 1865. {
 - The Surrender of Appomattox.
 - Assassination of President Lincoln.
 - Collapse of the Southern Confederacy.

PERIOD VI.

PEACE AND PROGRESS.

Johnson's Administration, 1865-69.

The Grand Victory that Followed that of the Union.
Cost of the Civil War.
The New Ranks in the Army and Navy.
The Fenian Movement.
Purchase of Alaska.
Maximilian in Mexico.
Laying of the Atlantic Telegraph Cable.
Death of Ex-President Buchanan.
Presidential Election of 1868.

Grant's Administration, 1869-77.

The Great Fires in Chicago and Boston.
The Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution.
The Alabama Claims.
The North-western Boundary.
The Election of 1872.
Indian Troubles.
The Centennial Exhibition.
Presidential Election of 1876.

Hayes's Administration, 1877-81.

Hayes's Conciliatory Policy.
Labor Troubles.
Specie Payments.
The Fishery Dispute with Great Britain.
General Grant's Tour around the World.
Presidential Election of 1880.

Garfield and Arthur's Administration, 1881-85.

Assassination of President Garfield.
Law against Chinese Immigration ; against Mormonism.
Brooklyn Bridge.
Washington Monument.
Other Legislation.
Presidential Election of 1884.

Cleveland's Administration, 1885-89.

The Presidential Succession.

The Statue of Liberty.

Death of General Grant.

Other Distinguished Dead.

Labor Disturbances.

Earthquakes.

Indian Troubles.

Harrison's Administration, 1889-93.

The Johnstown Flood.

Indian Troubles.

Deaths of Prominent Persons.

New States Admitted.

Tariff Legislation.

Past and Future of our Country.

Inventions.

Literature and Art.

SUBJECTS FOR COMPOSITION.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.—In preparing compositions on the subjects named pupils should be required to relate every incident in their own language. They should never be permitted to use the exact words of the text-book, but should construct their own sentences, and aim at directness, clearness, and good English.

Chapter I.—The Traditional Period of Discovery; The Northmen.

Chapter II.—The Lack of Geographical Knowledge Four Hundred Years ago; The Career of Columbus; The True Rank of Columbus among the Discoverers of the World.

Chapter III.—Amerigo Vespucci; Effect produced on Leading Maritime Nations of Europe by the Discoveries of Columbus; Discoveries of the Cabots; A Brief Comparison of what was done Respectively by Spain, France, England, and Holland in the new world to the close of 1609.

Chapter IV.—Jamestown; Captain John Smith; Pocahontas.

Chapter V.—Early Times in Virginia; The First Legislative Body convened in America; African Slavery; The Indian Wars; Bacon's Rebellion; Prosperity of Virginia.

Chapter VI.—The Puritans of New England; King Philip; Witchcraft.

Chapter VII.—The Work of the Plymouth and Massachusetts Colonies in Settling New England; Early Indian Wars; Religious Tolerance and Intolerance in New England.

Chapter VIII.—The Early Settlements in New York; The Early Settlers; Governor Andros; Why the City of New York was Destined to become the Metropolis of the New World.

Chapter IX.—The Early History of New Jersey; of Pennsylvania; of Delaware; The Example of William Penn.

Chapter X.—The States whose Founding was due to Religious Intolerance; Other Causes of Settlements in the New World; The Mistakes made by the Pioneers of the Original Thirteen States.

Chapter XI.—The First Three Intercolonial Wars; The Services of George Washington Previous to the Revolution; The Conquest of America by England.

Chapter XII.—Contrast of the Colonial and Modern Dwelling-houses; Contrast of the Colonial and Modern Method of Living; Comparison of the Colonial and Modern Laws.

Chapter XIII.—The Future of the American Indian.

Chapter XIV.—England's Folly in Dealing with her American Colonies; The Patriotic Spirit of the Americans.

Chapter XV.—The First and Second Continental Congresses; Lexington and Bunker Hill; Washington as Commander-in-Chief.

Chapter XVI.—The Campaign in New England; The Declaration of Independence; The Turning-point of the American Revolution.

Chapter XVII.—Washington's Generalship at the battles of the Assumpink and Princeton; General Gates's Generalship at Saratoga; The Reverses of Washington in 1777.

Chapter XVIII.—Valley Forge; Friendship of France for the American Colonies; Monmouth; Military Movements in the North and South in 1778.

Chapter XIX.—The Campaign of 1779 in the North and South; The Part Played by the Indians in the Revolution; The Infant American Navy.

Chapter XX.—Career of Benedict Arnold; Sufferings of the American Army during the Winter of 1779-80.

Chapter XXI.—The Last Campaign of the Revolution; Washington in Retirement.

Chapter XXII.—The Birth of the Nation; The Infancy of the Nation; The Constitution; The First President and Vice-President; The First Administration, and What it Accomplished.

Chapter XXIII.—The Second Administration; The Alien and Sedition Laws; Washington.

Chapter XXIV.—The Duel between Burr and Hamilton; The War with Tripoli; The Lewis and Clarke Expedition; The *Katherine of Clermont*; The Embargo Act.

Chapter XXV.—The Causes of the War of 1812; A Comparison of the Strength of Great Britain and the United States at the Opening of the War; The Army and Navy during the First Year of the War.

Chapter XXVI.—The Achievements of the Army in 1813; The Achievements of the Navy in 1813; The Causes of Failure and of Defeat.

Chapter XXVII.—The Achievements of the Army in the War of 1812; The Achievements of the Navy in the War of 1812; The Capture of Washington; The Treaty of Ghent.

Chapter XXVIII.—Our Material Progress after the War of 1812; The Missouri Compromise; The Monroe Doctrine; La Fayette.

Chapter XXIX.—The Sixth Administration; The Death of Thomas Jefferson and John Adams; The Erie Canal; American Railways.

Chapter XXX.—Andrew Jackson; South Carolina in 1832; Osceola.

Chapter XXXI.—The Cause of the Panic of 1837; The Administration of Van Buren.

Chapter XXXII.—The Mormons; Texas; The Magnetic Telegraph.

Chapter XXXIII.—The Mexican War; The Discovery of Gold in California.

Chapter XXXIV.—The Question of Slavery in 1850; California; The Attempts to Help the Cause of Cuban Independence.

Chapter XXXV.—The Repeal of the Missouri Compromise; Bleeding Kansas; The Republican Party.

Chapter XXXVI.—The Dred Scott Decision; John Brown; The Atlantic Cable; The Secession Movements during Buchanan's Administration.

Chapter XXXVII.—Origin and Meaning of the Names of the Different States; Pioneer Settlements.

Chapter XXXVIII.—The Causes of the Civil War; The Fall of Fort Sumter; The Battle of Bull Run; Operations in the West; The War on the Coast; The Trent Affair.

Chapter XXXIX.—The War in the West; The *Monitor* and *Merrimac*; Operations on the Water; The First Campaign against Richmond; The First Confederate invasion of the North; The Fredericksburg Campaign.

Chapter XL.—The Campaign in the South-west; The Campaign in the West; The Campaign on the Water; The Campaign in the East.

Chapter XLI.—Operations in the South; Operations in the East; Operations in the South-west; Operations on the Water.

Chapter XLII.—The Final Campaign for the Union; The Assassination of President Lincoln.

Chapter XLIII.—Peace; The Cost of the War for the Union; Alaska; Maximilian; The Atlantic Telegraph Cable.

Chapter XLIV.—The Chicago Fire; The Alabama Claims; Indian Wars; The Centennial Exhibition.

Chapter XLV.—The Labor Troubles of 1877; General Grant's Tour around the World.

Chapter XLVI.—President Garfield; The Washington Monument; Arthur's Administration.

Chapter XLVII.—The Last Days of General Grant; The Labor and Strike Troubles; The Noted Dead of 1885-86.

Chapter XLVIII.—The Johnstown Calamity; Causes and Incidents of the Last Indian War; The New Members of the Union; Our Past and Our Future.

QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION.

— — —

Chapter I.—Whence came the people found in America by the first white men that visited it?

Chapter II.—What is the true place of Columbus among the great discoverers?

Chapter III.—What was the cause of the numerous failures to plant colonies in the new world? Which of the four leading maritime nations of Europe had the clearest title to the territory she claimed in America?

Chapter IV.—Would Jamestown have escaped destruction except for Captain John Smith?

Chapter V.—If the Dutch had not brought slaves to Virginia, would the system of African slavery have ever been introduced into this country?

Chapter VI.—Was King Philip justifiable in making war against the colonists? Is there any excuse for the witchcraft delusion in New England?

Chapter VII.—Was the annihilation of the Pequod Indians necessary or justifiable?

Chapter VIII.—Had England or Holland the clearest title to the New Netherlands?

Chapter IX.—Which theories of William Penn were sound, and which unsound?

Chapter X.—Why did the scheme of General Oglethorpe regarding Georgia result in failure?

Chapter XI.—Did France or England possess the better claim to the disputed territory which was the cause of the French and Indian War?

Chapter XII.—What mistakes were made in the government of our forefathers?

Chapter XIII.—What is the true solution of the "Indian Problem"?

Chapter XIV.—Suppose England had treated her American colonies with justice, when would their separation from her have taken place? Would such separation have been peaceable?

Chapter XV.—Would a victory at Bunker Hill have benefited the Americans more than a defeat?

Chapter XVI.—What would have been the result if the battle of Trenton had been a defeat for the Americans and Washington had been made a prisoner?

Chapter XVII.—Did Washington or Gates display the better generalship in 1777?

Chapter XVIII.—Where and when, down to the close of 1778, did the patriot army display the grandest heroism?

Chapter XIX.—Was it necessary that General Sullivan should punish the Iroquois Indians with such fearful severity?

Chapter XX.—Was it right to hang Major André? Would the Americans have been successful with any other than Washington in command?

Chapter XXI.—Was the help of France indispensable to the success of the American colonies in their struggle for independence?

Chapter XXII.—Since France aided the colonies in their struggle for independence, was it not the duty of our government to help France in her war with England?

Chapter XXIII.—Was the passage of the Alien and Sedition laws necessary or wise?

Chapter XXIV.—Did the United States do right in paying tribute to the Bashaw of Tripoli? Was Captain Barron blamable for surrendering the *Chesapeake* without first making battle?

Chapter XXV.—Ought General William Hull to have been executed for the surrender of Detroit?

Chapter XXVI.—Should the hero Lawrence be commended or censured for fighting, under the circumstances, the *Shannon*?

Chapter XXVII.—Ought the United States to have signed the treaty of Ghent?

Chapter XXVIII.—When is it right and when is it wrong to consent to a compromise?

Chapter XXIX.—Was there anything more than a simple coincidence in the death of Thomas Jefferson and John Adams?

Chapter XXX.—Was there any justification for the arrest of O-c-ola under a flag of truce?

Chapter XXXI.—Would it not have been right for our government to permit American citizens to aid the insurgents in Canada?

Chapter XXXII. To whom belongs the chief credit for the invention of the magnetic telegraph?

Chapter XXXIII.—Was General Scott or General Taylor entitled to the greater credit for our triumph over Mexico?

Chapter XXXIV.—Ought Daniel Webster to have supported the "Omnibus Bill"?

Chapter XXXV.—Was the repeal of the Missouri Compromise justifiable?

Chapter XXXVI.—Did John Brown deserve to be hanged?

Chapter XXXVII.—Which State, admitted during this period, made the greatest progress? Which has the most natural advantages?

Chapter XXXVIII.—Was the Federal defeat at Bull Run a benefit or injury to the Union cause?

Chapter XXXIX.—Who was censurable for the failure of the first campaign against Richmond?

Chapter XL.—What would have been the result of a Union defeat at Gettysburg?

Chapter XLI.—Was it wise to displace Hannibal Hamlin as the nominee of the Republican party for Vice-President in 1864?

Chapter XLII.—Could Jefferson Davis have been convicted of the crime of treason?

Chapter XLIII.—Did President Johnson deserve impeachment?

Chapter XLIV.—Who was rightfully elected President of the United States in 1876?

Chapter XLV.—Should silver be a legal tender?

Chapter XLVI.—Is the legislation against Chinese immigration justifiable or necessary?

Chapter XLVII.—Why do you believe (or disbelieve) in civil-service reform?

Chapter XLVIII.—Is free trade or protection the better policy for the United States?

LIST OF BOOKS RECOMMENDED TO STUDENTS OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

Schoolcraft's Indian Tribes; Bancroft's Native Races; Parkman's Historical Works; Lossing's Field-Book of the Revolution and of the War of 1812; Lewis and Clarke's Journal; Mackenzie's Life of Jackson; Cooper's History of the American Navy; Fremont's Explorations; Ripley's War with Mexico; McPherson's Political History of the United States; Jay's Mexican War; Comte de Paris's Civil War in America; Swinton's Army of the Potomac and Twelve Decisive Battles; Personal Memoirs of General U. S. Grant; Memoirs of General W. T. Sherman; Davis's Rise and Fall of the Southern Confederacy; Stephens's War between the States; Johnston's Narrative of Military Operations; Life and Letters of General Thomas J. Jackson, by his Wife; The American Statesmen Series; Ellis's Indian Wars of America; Bryce's American Commonwealth; Lossing's History of the United States Navy.

INDEX.

For the convenience of students the dates of the birth and death of all important persons have been given in parentheses immediately after the name. Many of these are disputed in various ways, and the dates accepted in Thomas's *Biographical Dictionary* have been mainly followed.

A.

- Abraham, Plains of, 62.
 Acadia attacked, 60.
 ceded to England, 57.
 original name of Nova Scotia, 60.
 Acadians, banishment of, 60.
 Acquia Creek, 191.
 Adams, John (1735-1826), admin-
 istration, 1797-1801, 113.
 chosen first Vice-President, 109.
 defeated as candidate, 1800, 115.
 elected second President, 1796,
 113.
 his death, 1826, 137.
 note on life of, 113.
 portrait, 114.
 re-elected Vice-President, 1792,
 112.
 sends envoys to France, 114.
 John Quincy (1767-1848), admin-
 istration, 1825-29, 137.
 administration not popular,
 136, 139.
 elected sixth President, 136.
 his death, 1848, 154.
 note on life of, 136.
 portrait, 137.
 Samuel (1722-1803), "Father of
 the Revolution," 71.
 portrait, 71.
 Aix-la-Chapelle, treaty of, 57.
 Alabama becomes twenty-second
 State, 1819, 137.
 its history, 166.
 secession, 163.
 traversed, 23.
Alabama, the, compensation for, 230.
 its destruction, 216.
 its successes, 201.
 Alaska purchased, 1867, 227.
 Albany, 17, 86.
 Albemarle Colony, 54.
Albemarle, the, its destruction, 1864,
 217.
 Alexandria seized by Federals, 1861,
 175.
 Algiers, treaty, 1795, 113.
 war with, 132.
 Alien and Sedition laws, 115.
 Alleghany Mountains, region west
 of, 58.
 River crossed by Washington, 59.
 Allen, Ethan (cir. 1738-89), captures
 Ticonderoga, 78.
Alliance, the, 96.
 Amelia Court-house, provision-trains
 pass through, 1865, 221.
 America, achievements of patriots in
 South, 103.
 becomes a nation, 107.
 Colonial Period, 28.
 disasters, 1812, 121.
 discovered by Columbus, 15.
 English explorations in, 25.
 events of 1774-75, 74.
 of 1776, 80.
 of 1777, 85.
 of 1778, 88.
 of 1780, 98.
 of 1781, 102.
 first discoverers of, 13.
 French explorations in, 24.
 help from abroad, 1778, 90.
 how named, 20.
 independence acknowledged by
 Britain, 106.
 intercolonial wars, 56.
 interest of other nations, 20.
 life in colonial times, 63.
 news of independence spreads, 105.
 organization of army, 1813, 125.
 other explorations in, 20.
 partisan fighting in South, 100.

- America, period of discovery and settlement, 13.
See Colonial Times.
See United States.
 slow progress of settlement, 28.
 Spanish explorations in, 21.
 unknown till fifteenth century, 15.
 war in the South, 99.
- American navy, exploits of, 1813, 126.
- Amherst, Gen. Jeffrey, Lord (1717-97), 60.
- Amnesty, universal, 1868, 226.
- Ampudia, Pedro de, defeated at Monterey, 151.
- Anarchist troubles, 1886, 239.
- Anderson, Major Robert (1805-71), 164.
 portrait, 164.
 surrenders Fort Sumter, 171.
- Andersonville, S. C., 225.
- André, Major John (1749-80), capture and execution, 99.
 portrait, 99.
- Andros, Sir Edmund (1637-1713 or '14), 48.
 deposed, 46.
 governor of New England, 1686, 41.
 imprisoned, 44.
- Annapolis, so named 1710, 57.
- Anne (1702-13), war of Queen, 56.
- Antietam, Md., battle, 1862, 195.
 Burnside's Bridge, view, 194.
- Anti-rent troubles. *See New York and Rensselaer.*
- Apache Indians, conquest of, 240.
 their endurance, 67.
 transferred to Alabama, 240.
- Appomattox, the, Lee crosses, 1865, 221.
- Aquiday, Indian chief, 46.
- Argall, Samuel (1572-1639), governor of Virginia, 33.
- Arista, General Mariano (cir. 1800-55), 149.
- Arizona, 46.
 ceded to United States, 154.
- Arkansas, 178, 225.
 becomes twenty-fifth State, 1836, 142, 167.
 its history, 167.
 organized as a Territory, 1821, 167.
 secession, 1861, 174.
 settled by French, 1685, 167.
- Arlington Heights seized by Federals, 1861, 175.
- Army, grades revived, 226.
 of Northern Virginia, 202, 208, 221.
- Army of Northern Virginia at Richmond, 1864, 213.
 its losses, 212.
 of Occupation, Mexican War, 151.
 of the Centre in Mexican War, 151.
 of the Centre in War of 1812, 125.
 of the North in War of 1812, 125.
 of the Potomac, 176, 198, 202, 204, 211.
 Burnside succeeds McClellan, 195.
 its losses, 212.
 McClellan appointed to command, 176.
 of the West in Mexican War, 151.
 of the West in War of 1812, 125.
- Arnold, Benedict (1740-1801), 80.
 captures Ticonderoga, 78.
 his death, 99.
 his marauding expedition, 103.
 his treason, 1780, 98.
 portrait, 98.
- Arthur, Chester Alan (1830-86), administration, 1881-85, 235.
 becomes twenty-first President, 1881, 235.
 elected Vice-President, 1880, 231.
 his death, 1886, 238.
 note on life of, 236.
 portrait, 236.
- Ashley River, 55.
- Assunpink, battle of the, 1777, 85.
- Astrolabe, 45.
- Atlanta occupied and fired by Sherman, 1864, 210.
 Johnston withdraws to, 1861, 209.
- Atlantic Cable, first, 1858-66, 162, 227.
- Atzerodt, George, hanged, 1865, 225.
- Averyshoro', battle, 1865, 218.
- Ayotla, 153.

B.

- Bacon, Nathaniel (cir. 1630-77), his rebellion, 1676, 36.
- Bad Lands, Indians at, 212.
- Baffin Bay discovered, 25.
- Bailey, Colonel, saves gun-boats, 215.
- Bainbridge, Captain William (1774-1833), 117, 123, 132.
 victory of, 124.
- Baker, Colonel Edward Dickinson (1811-61), his death, 177.
- Balboa, Vasco Nunez de (cir. 1475-1517), his discoveries, 1513, 21.

- Ball's Bluff, Federals defeated, 1861, 177.
- Baltimore, 118, 244.
British repulsed, 1814, 131.
disturbances, 1877, 233.
Massachusetts troops attacked, 1861, 175.
threatened by Lee, 1863, 201.
- Baltimore and Ohio Railway, 233.
- Baltimore, Cecil Calvert, Lord (— — —), 76), 53.
- Banks, Gen. Nathaniel Prentiss (1816— — —), defeated by Jackson, 1862, 191.
his expedition, 1861, 215.
portrait, 215.
- Barbary States, pirates in 1789, 111.
- B Barclay, Commodore, 127.
- Barron, Captain James (1768-1851), commander of the *Chesapeake*, 119.
killed Decatur in duel, 119.
- Battle above the Clouds, 198.
- Beantfort, N. C., captured by Federals, 1862, 188.
- Beauregard, Gen. P. G. T. (1816— — —), 181.
defeats Butler, 1861, 213.
evacuates Corinth, 1862, 183.
takes Fort Sumter, 173.
victory at Bull Run, 176.
- Belvidere*, the, 123.
- Bemis Heights, 98.
Burgoyne defeated, 87.
- Bennington, Stark's victory, 1777, 86.
- Bentonville, battle, 1865, 218.
- Bergen, Dutch trading post, 1618, 49.
- Berkeley, Gov. Sir William (— — —), 1677, 36.
Lord, 49.
sold West Jersey, 50.
- Bermuda Hundred, Beauregard's intrenchments, 213.
- Big Bethel, Federals repulsed, 176.
- Big Withlacoochee, 141.
- Biloxi, settlement at, 1699, 166.
- Birkenhead, England, 201.
- Black Hawk (cir. 1768-1838), captured, 141.
War, 141, 172.
- Bladensburg, Md., British victory, 1814, 130.
- Blaine, James Gillespie (1830 — — —), defeated as Presidential candidate, 1884, 237.
Secretary of State, 235.
- Blair, General Francis Preston, Jr. (1821-75), defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1868, 228.
"Blue Lights," 127.
- Blue Ridge, 204.
- Bonaparte. See *Napoleon*.
- Bon-Homme Richard*, the, 96.
fight with the *Scrapis*, 96.
- Boone, Daniel (1735-1822), 165.
portrait, 165.
- Boonesborough, fort at, 1775, 165.
- Booth, John Wilkes (— — — 1865), assassinates Lincoln, 221.
shot resisting arrest, 221.
- Boston, 45, 244.
and vicinity, map, 76.
evacuated by British, 1776, 80.
fire, 1871, 230.
founded, 1630, 41.
massacre, 1770, 72.
port closed, 1774, 73.
siege by Americans, 78.
war not favored, 1812, 121.
- Boston News Letter*, first paper, 1704, 67.
- Boston Tea-Party, 1773, 73.
- Braddock, General Edward (cir. 1715-55), massacre and death, 1755, 59.
- Bradford, William (1589-1657), governor of Plymouth Colony, 39.
- Bragg, General Braxton (cir. 1815-76), 184, 196.
his army overthrown, 1863, 199.
superseded by Johnston, 209.
- Brandywine, 87, 133.
- Brandywine*, the, La Fayette sails in, 136.
- Breckinridge, John C. (1821-75), defeated as Presidential candidate, 1860, 162.
elected Vice-President, 1856, 159.
- Breed's Hill fortified, 1775, 76.
- Breton, Cape, 57.
- British Guiana, 126.
- Brook, General Isaac (— — — 1812), his death, 122.
- Broke, Captain Sir Philip (1776-1841), commander of the *Shannon*, 126.
- Brooke, Lord, 45.
- Brooklyn Bridge opened, 1883, 237.
- Brown, B. Gratz, defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1872, 230.
Fort, 150, 151.
built, 149.
Gen. Jacob (1775-1828), 130.

- Brown, Gen. Jacob, invades Canada, 1814, 129.
 John (1800-59), begins raid, 1859, 161.
 executed, 162.
 Buchanan, James (1791-1868), 164, 171.
 administration, 1857-61, 160.
 elected fifteenth President, 1856, 159.
 his death, 1866, 227.
 note on life of, 159.
 portrait, 160.
 Buell, Gen. Don Carlos (cir. 1818-—), his campaign unsatisfactory, 181.
 superseded, 184.
 to reinforce Grant, 182.
 Buena Vista, victory at, 1847, 152.
 Buffalo, disturbances, 1877, 233.
 Bull Run, Federals defeated, 1861, 176.
 stone bridge over, view, 176.
 Stonewall Jackson at first battle, 191.
 Bunker Hill, 78.
 battle, 1775, 76.
 Monument, La Fayette lays corner-stone, 136.
 view, 135.
 Buren, Martin Van (1782-1862), administration, 1837-41, 142.
 administration least popular in our history, 142, 144.
 defeated as Presidential candidate, 1818, 155.
 elected eighth President, 1836, 142.
 note on life of, 142.
 portrait, 143.
 proclamation against insurgents, 141.
 renominated as President, 1840, 144.
 Burgoyne, Gen. John (—-1792), 99.
 his invasion, 1777, 86.
 portrait, 86.
 surrenders, 1777, 87.
 Burlington, Iowa, settled, 168.
 New Jersey, settlements near, 50.
 Burnside, Gen. Ambrose Everett (1824-81), assault on, by Longstreet, 1863, 199.
 repulsed at Fredericksburg, 195.
 superseded by Hooker, 202.
 Burnside's Bridge, Antietam, view, 194.
 Burr, Aaron (1756-1836), duel with Hamilton, 116.
 elected Vice-President, 1800, 115.
 Butler, Gen. Benjamin Franklin (1818-—), 175, 216.
 at New Orleans, 188.
 defeated by Beauregard, 1864, 213.
- ### C.
- Cabot, John, 20.
 called the "Great Admiral," 21.
 sails, 1497, 20.
 takes possession of Labrador, 21.
 Sebastian (cir. 1477-cir. 1557), 21.
 Cabots, the, 48.
 discoveries by them, 21.
 Cairo, 181.
 Calhoun, John Caldwell (1782-1850), elected Vice-President, 1824, 136.
 portrait, 140.
 re-elected Vice-President, 1828, 139.
 resigns office, 141.
 California, 168.
 a free State, 156.
 applies for admission to Union, 156.
 becomes thirty-first State, 1850, 168.
 ceded to United States, 154.
 conquest of, 1846, 152.
 discovery of gold, 1848, 154.
 its history, 168.
 prohibited slavery, 156.
 California, Lower, 159.
 California, Upper, ceded to United States, 168.
 Calvert, Cecil. See *Lord Baltimore*.
 Cambridge, first printing-press at, 66.
 Camden, S. C., battle, 1780, 100.
 Canada and Fenian troubles, 227.
 attempts to invade, 1812, 121, 122.
 conquest of, 63.
 invasion by English colonies, 56.
 invasion of, 79.
 last invasion, 1814, 129.
 Patriot War, 1837, 144.
 rebellion, 1837, subdued, 144.
 Canby, Colonel Edward Rich. Sprigg (cir. 1818-73), attacks Sibley, 195.
 murdered in Modoc War, 231.
 Canonicus (cir. 1565-1647), Narragansett chief, 39.
 Cape Verde Islands, secret expedition to, 16.
 Caravels, view of, 18.

- Carolina, North, 21, 24, 51, 121.
 adopts Constitution, 109.
 recovered, 103.
 secession, 1861, 171.
 settlement of, 53.
 South, 51, 103, 218.
 nullification, 1832, 140.
 recovered, 103.
 settlement of, 53.
 Carolinas, the, made royal provinces, 1729, 55.
 so named after King Charles, 51.
Caroline, the, destroyed, 1837, 144.
 Carpenters' Hall, Phila., view, 74.
 Carteret Colony, 1670, 51.
 Sir George (cir. 1600-79), 49.
 his death, 50.
 Cartier, Jacques (1491-cir. 1552), his explorations, 21.
 Casey, Lieutenant Edward W., his death, 1890, 212.
 Cass, General Lewis (1782-1866), defeated as Presidential candidate, 1848, 155.
 Cedar Creek, Federals defeated, 1864, 211.
 Cemetery Hill, 206.
 Ridge, 206.
 Pickett's charge, 207.
 Census, first, 1790, 113.
 Centennial, the, exhibition, 1876, 232.
 Cerro Gordo, defeat of Mexicans, 1847, 153.
 Chadd's Ford, Washington defeated, 1777, 87.
 Chaleos, Lake, 153.
 Chambersburg, Pa., 201.
 Lee arrives at, 201.
 partly burned, 1864, 214.
 Champlain, Lake, 86, 125.
 battle on, 1814, 130.
 discovered, 25.
 Samuel (1567-1635), 25.
 called "Father of New France," 25.
 settles Quebec, 25.
 Chancellorsville, Marye House, view, 203.
 Chapultepec, 192.
 stormed, 1847, 153.
 Charles II. of England (1639-85), 49, 51, 146.
 Charleston, 55, 173, 211.
 attacked by British fleet, 1776, 81.
 captured, 1780, 99.
 earthquakes, 1886, 239.
 failure of attack on, 1863, 200.
 Charleston fired and evacuated, 1865, 218.
 still held after the war, 108.
 tea stored at and spoiled, 73.
 troops ordered to, 1832, 141.
 Charleston harbor, 161.
 Charter Oak, the, 46.
 Charters of English companies, 29.
 "The Great Charter," 33.
 the third in 1612, 33.
 Chattanooga, 197.
 evacuated by Bragg, 1863, 196.
 occupied by Federals, 199.
 victory, 1863, 198.
 Cherbourg, France, battle of *Alabama*, 1864, 216.
Chesapeake and *Shannon*, conflict between, 126.
 Chesapeake Bay, 21, 130.
 John Smith's voyages, 31.
Chesapeake, the, captured, 126.
 fired on by the *Leopard*, 119.
 Chicago, Anarchist troubles, 1886, 239.
 Auditorium Block, 1892, view, 229.
 disturbances, 1877, 233.
 great fire, 1871, 229.
 Chickahominy River, 31, 191, 193.
 Chickamauga, battle, 1863, 196.
 Chinese immigration, bill forbidding, 1882, 236.
 Chippewa, British defeated, 1811, 129.
 Churubusco stormed, 1847, 153.
 City Point, 218.
 Civil Service examinations, 237.
 Civil War, 1861-65, 170, 215.
 a year of battles, 1862, 195.
 campaign in the East, 189, 201.
 in the West, 177.
 in the West, 1862, 178.
 in the West, 1863, 199.
 on sea and coast, 185.
 on water, 1863, 200.
 cost of, 221.
 desultory fighting in the West, 1862, 195.
 discouragement of the North, 193.
 four executions for assassination of Lincoln, 225.
 Gettysburg its turning-point, 208.
 great task of the North, 179.
 inevitable, 170.
 movements in South-west, 1862, 182.
 in South-west, 1864, 215.
 number of Confederate deaths, etc., 224.

- Civil War, number of Union deaths, etc., 224.
 on coast and South-west, 178.
 only one execution followed, 225.
 opened, 174.
 operations on water, 1861, 215.
 Peace Convention, 1861, 171.
 proclamation of pardon, 226.
 situation in South-west, 181.
 Southern ports, 180.
 Union successes, 1863, 199.
 universal amnesty, 1868, 226.
 work for 1861, 208.
 for 1865, 217.
- Clarendon, Lord, 51.
- Clark, Captain William (1770-1838), 118.
 explores Oregon, 1804, 169.
- Clay, Henry (1777-1852), 135.
 and Missouri Compromise, 131.
 further compromise measures, 111.
 his "Omnibus Bill," 156.
 portrait, 134.
- Clayborne, William, 51.
- Clermont, the, first steamboat, view, 244.
- Cleveland, Grover (1837-—), administration, 1885-89, 237.
 defeated as Presidential candidate, 1888, 240.
 elected twenty-second President, 1884, 237.
 note on life of, 237.
 portrait, 238.
- Clinton, George (1739-1812), 121.
 elected Vice-President, 1808, 120.
 Gen. Sir Henry (1738-95), 82, 93, 102, 103.
 and Benedict Arnold, 99.
 succeeds General Howe, 91.
- Coasting, 66.
- Cobb, Howell (1815-68), resigns Federal office, 164.
- Cock-fighting, 66.
- Cod, Cape, 27.
- Cold Harbor, Grant repulsed, 1864, 212.
- Colfax, Schuyler (1823-85), elected Vice-President, 1868, 227.
- Colleges, 66.
- Colonial times, church service, 65.
 cooking and food, 61.
 dress, 65.
 entertainments, 66.
 furniture and windows, 61.
 homes of our forefathers, 63.
 law and punishments, 66.
- Colonial times, life in, 63.
 means of travel, 66.
 schools, 65.
 want of education, 66.
 whipping in schools, 65.
- Colonies, disputes between English and French, 57.
 Southern, overrun, 93.
 war-spirit in 1774, 73.
- Colonists slain by Indians, 1644, 35.
- Colorado, 168.
 becomes thirty-eighth State, 1876, 232.
- Columbia surrendered and burnt, 1865, 218.
- College, founded 1754, 67.
 District of, slave-trade abolished, 156.
- River, 169.
 explored, 118.
- Columbus, 178, 181, 183.
 disturbances, 1877, 233.
- Columbus, Christopher (cir. 1435-1506), at Court of Portugal, 16.
 at Spanish Court, 17.
 first sight of land, 18.
 geographical belief of, 15.
 his birth and education, 15.
 his death, 1506, 19.
 his first voyage, 17.
 landing, Oct. 12, 1492, 19.
 portrait, 16.
 returns to Spain, 19.
 sails on first voyage, 17.
 under flag of Spain, 20.
 three other voyages, 19.
- Commercial panic, 1837, 142-144.
- Concord, colonial military stores attacked, 74.
 houses with military stores, view, 75.
- Conemaugh Valley, 244.
- Confederate States, collapse of Confederacy, 222.
 Confederacy again cut in twain, 241.
- Confederate White House, view, 182.
 electoral vote, 1862, 182.
 flag unfurled, 1861, 163.
 formation of, 171.
 formation of government of, 162.
 naval forces surrendered, 1865, 222.
 privateers, 201.
 fate of, 217.

- Confederate States recognized as belligerent by England, 178.
as belligerent by France, 178.
Secession ordinances repealed, 225.
seize government property, 164.
successes, 1862, 178, 191.
- Congress, first Continental, 1774, 71.
flies from Philadelphia, 83.
removed to Philadelphia, 1790, 112.
returns thanks for Independence, 105.
second Continental, 1775, 77.
- Congress*, the, fight with *Merrimac*, 186.
the, surrendered to *Merrimac*, 187.
- Connecticut Colony, unites with others, 1613, 12.
settlement of, 45.
Valley, attacks by Indians, 43.
- Conner, Commodore, 453.
- Constitution, adopted 1787, 108.
fifteenth amendment, negroes to vote, 1870, 230.
Madison, last survivor of signers of, 112.
thirteenth amendment, abolishing slavery, 1865, 225.
when adopted by each State, 109.
- Constitution*, battles of the, 123.
- Contreras stormed, 1817, 153.
- Corinth, Confederates repulsed, 1862, 181.
Halleck takes possession, 1862, 183.
- Cornwallis, Charles, Lord (1738-1805), 83, 85, 100, 102.
at Yorktown, 103.
surrender, 1781, 101.
- Cotton-gin, 215.
- Council of War, portraits, 211.
- Cowpens, battle, 1781, 102.
- Craig, Fort, 195.
- Creek Indians, 137.
defeated at Horseshoe Bend, 129.
troubles with, 128.
- Croghan, Major George (1791-1819), his defence of Fort Stephenson, 1813, 126.
- Crook, General, 67.
- Cross Keys, Fremont defeated, 1862, 191.
- Crown Point, Fort, 61.
captured, 1775, 78.
evacuated, 1777, 86.
- Cuba, revolt of, 157.
- Cumberland Gap, 181.
- Cumberland*, the, destroyed by *Merrimac*, 186.
- Curtis, General Samuel R. (cir. 1807-66), defeats Van Horn, 185.
- Cushing, Lieutenant William B. (cir. 1812-74), destroys the *Albatross*, 217.
- Custer, General George A. (1839-76), death, 1876, 231.

D.

- Dade, Major, 141.
- Dakota, Modocs removed to, 231.
North, becomes thirty-ninth State, 1889, 213.
South, becomes fortieth State, 1889, 213.
- Dale, Sir Thomas, governor of Virginia, 33.
- Dallas, George Mifflin (1792-1864), elected Vice-President, 1841, 118.
- Dalton, Ga., Johnston at, 209.
- Dancing, 66.
- Dare, Virginia, 26.
- Dartmouth College, founded, 1769, 67.
- Davis, Jefferson (1808-89), capture and release, 222.
elected President of Confederate States, 1861, 163.
his death, 1889, 243.
note on life of, 163.
portrait, 163.
prosecution dropped, 1869, 222.
receives telegram, 220.
unanimously re-elected President, 1862, 182.
- Dayton, William Lewis (1807-64), defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1856, 159.
- De Monts (1560-1611), 25.
- De Narvaez. See *Narvaez*.
- De Soto, Hernando (cir. 1496-1542), burial of, view, 22.
dies, 1542, 23.
his explorations, 23.
- Dearborn, Fort, massacre, 1812, 166.
now Chicago, 166.
Gen. Henry (1751-1829), 125.
- Decatur, Commodore Stephen (1779-1820), 117, 132.
killed by Barron in duel, 119.
portrait, 117.
shut in at New London, 126.
victory of, 121.
- Decimal system of currency introduced, 1783, 117.
- Declaration of Independence adopted July 4, 1776, 81.

- Declaration of Independence. See *Signers*.
 of Rights, 1765, 72.
 Delaware county, N. Y., proclaimed in state of insurrection, 147.
 Delaware, first settlement in, 49, 51.
 granted to William Penn, 51.
 under Penn's rule, 53.
 Delaware, Lord, 33.
 Delaware River, 27, 48.
 Washington's army crosses, 1776, 84.
 Democrats, 111, 111, 136, 140, 145, 148, 155, 157, 159, 162, 217, 228, 231, 232, 234, 237, 240.
 Detroit, settled, 1701, 167.
 surrender at, 1812, 122.
 Dinwiddie, Governor Robert (cir. 1690-1770), his protest, 58.
Discovery, the, 30.
 Donelson, Fort, 182.
 surrendered to Federals, 1862, 181.
 "Don't give up the ship," 126, 128.
 Dorchester Heights, fortified, 80.
 Dorr, Thomas Wilson (1805-54), chosen governor of Rhode Island, 116.
 his rebellion, 1841-43, 146.
 Douglas, Stephen Arnold (1813-61), 162.
 his bill in Congress, 158.
 Dover, settlements near, 1623, 45.
 Downie, Commodore (—-1814), his defeat and death, 130.
 Drake, Sir Francis (1540-96), 26.
 Dred Scott decision, 1857, 160.
 DuPont, Admiral Samuel Francis (1803-65), defeated at Charleston, 200.
 Duquesne, Fort, 59.
 captured by English, 61.
 Dutch East India Company, explorations, 47.
- E.**
- Early, Jubal A. (1816-—), defeated Wallace, 1864, 214.
 his defeats, 1864, 214.
 Earthquakes, 239.
 Earth-works, 13.
 Edmunds, Senator, his bill against Mormons, 236.
 Education, cost of, 214.
 Edward, Fort, evacuated, 1777, 86.
 Elizabeth, queen of England (1533-1603), 26.
- Elizabethtown, English settlement, 1661, 50.
 Emancipation Proclamation, Jan. 1, 1863, 196.
 Embargo Act, 1807, 119.
 repealed, 1809, 120.
 England alarmed, 1778, 91.
 explorations in America, 25.
 first permanent settlement, Jamestown, 30.
 settlement in America, 28.
 religious persecution in, 37.
 repulse at Ticonderoga, 61.
 retaliatory measures, 1773, 73.
 See Great Britain.
 sends out expeditions, 20.
 English, William H. (1822-—), defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1880, 234.
 Erie the Red, 14.
 Eriessen, John, 187.
 Erie Canal opened, 1825, 138.
 Lake, 138.
 victory on, 1813, 127.
 Penna., 58.
 Estaing, Charles Hector, Count D' (1729-94), 93, 94.
 European wars, United States suffers from, 118.
 Ewell, Richard Stoddard (cir. 1818-72), 191.
 at Gettysburg, 206.
- F.**
- Fair Oaks, battle, 1862, 191.
 Faneuil Hall, Boston, view, 72.
 Farragut, Captain David Glascoe (1801-70), made admiral, 1866, 226.
 Mobile captured, 1864, 216.
 portraits, 189, 211.
 receives surrender of New Orleans, 189.
 runs Vicksburg batteries, 189.
 Federalists, 111, 113, 132.
 nicknamed "Blue Lights," 127.
 Federals, retreat, 1862, 193.
 Fenian troubles, 1866, 226.
 Ferdinand and Isabella, 19.
 fighting the Moors, 17.
 Ferdinand V. of Spain (1452-1516), 17.
 Filibustering expedition, 1853, 159.
 Fillmore, Millard (1800-71), administration, 1849-53, 155.
 becomes thirteenth President, 155.

- Fillmore, Millard, elected Vice-President, 1848, 155.
 note on life of, 155.
 portrait, 157.
- Fisheries dispute, settled against United States, 1878, 231.
- Fisher's Hill, Early routed, 1864, 214.
- Five Forks, attack by Lee, 1865, 220.
- Florida, 141, 218.
 becomes twenty-seventh State, 1845, 148, 167.
 boundary fixed, 113.
 discovered, 21.
 its history, 167.
 purchased, 1820, 131.
 secession, 163.
 Territory of East Florida organized, 1822, 167.
 of West Florida organized, 1822, 167.
- Florida*, the, seized at Bahia, Brazil, 217.
- Floyd, John Buchanan (1805-63), resigns Federal office, 161.
- Foote, Commodore Andrew Hull (1806-63), and Island No. 10, 183.
 at Fort Donelson, 181.
- Fortune*, the, lands colonists, 1621, 39.
- Fox Indians, 141.
- France acknowledges independence of America, 91.
 assistance from, 1778, 91.
 explorations in America, 24.
 French and Indian War, 1754-63, 57.
 further aid from, 101.
 sends out expeditions, 20.
 trouble with, 114.
 trouble with French minister, 113.
 war averted, 1800, 115.
- Franciscan monks and California, 168.
- Franklin, 191.
- Franklin, Benjamin (1706-90), and the lightning-rod, 245.
 note on his life, 90.
- Fraser's Farm, assault on Federals, 193.
- Fredericksburg, 191, 202.
 Burnside repulsed, 1862, 195.
 plan of battlefield, map, 202.
 Sumner's crossing, view, 203.
- Free-Soilers, 155, 162.
- Free trade, 131.
- Fremont, Gen. John Charles (1813-—), 168, 177.
 conquers California, 152.
- Fremont, Gen. John Charles, defeated as Presidential candidate, 1856, 159.
 defeated at Cross Keys, 191.
- French and Indian War, money expended, 71.
 Creek, French fort at, 58.
- Frenchtown on the Raisin, 125.
- Frobisher, Sir Martin (1536-94), sails in 1576, 25.
- Frolic*, the, fight of, 124.
- Fugitive Slave Law, the, 156, 157.
- Fulton, Robert (1765-1815), his steam-boat, New York to Albany, 118.
 portrait, 118.
- Fundy, Bay of, 60.
- Funerals, 66.
- Fur-trade, 169.

G.

- Gage, General Thomas (1721-87), 74, 77.
 last royal governor of Mass., 73.
- Gaines's Mill, 193.
- Galveston recaptured by Confederates, 1863, 201.
- Garfield, James Abram (1831-81), administration, 1881-85, 235.
 assassinated, 1881, 235.
 elected twentieth President, 1880, 231.
 his death, 1881, 235.
 note on life of, 234.
 portrait, 235.
- Gates, General Horatio (1728-1806), 78, 86, 102.
 career of, 99, 100.
 portrait, 87.
- Geneva arbitration, 230.
- Geographical knowledge five hundred years ago, 15.
- George, Lake, 86.
 II. of England (1683-1760), 55.
 George's War, 1714-48, 57.
 III. of England (1738-1820), 72, 108.
- Georgia, 218.
 conquered, 1779, 93.
 made a royal province, 1752, 55.
 only colony not at first Congress, 74.
 recovered, 103.
 secession, 163, 171.
 settlement of, 53, 55.
 so named after George II., 55.
 subjugated, 1778, 93.

- Georgia traversed, 23.
Georgia, the, seized off Portugal, 217.
 Germantown, 133.
 Washington defeated, 1777, 87.
 Geronimo, leader of the Apaches, 240.
 Gerry, Elbridge (1741-1814), elected Vice-President, 1812, 124.
 Gettysburg, battle, 1863, 204-208.
 first day, 205.
 second day, 205, 206.
 third day, 206-208.
 Devil's Den, view, 206.
 map of battlefield, 205.
 "the wheat-field," view, 207.
 Ghent, treaty of peace, 1814, 131.
 Gibson, Fort, Pemberton defeated, 1863, 199.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey (1539-81), 25.
 Gilmore, General Quincy Adams (cir. 1825-—), captures Fort Wagner, 1863, 200.
 Gist, Christopher, 59.
 famous guide, 58.
 Godfrey, Thomas (1704-49), invented quadrant, 245.
God-speed, the, 30.
 Gold, amount received from California, 154.
 discovered in California, 1848, 154.
 Goldsboro', N. C., Sherman sets out for, 1865, 218.
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinando (cir. 1565-1647), settlement of Maine, 45.
 Governor's Island, 238.
 Graham, William A. (1800-75), defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1852, 157.
 Grand River, South Dakota, 241.
 Grant, Gen. Ulysses Simpson (1822-85), 181, 185, 209, 214.
 administration, 1869-77, 228.
 advance, 1864, 212.
 at Chattanooga, 197, 198.
 at Columbus, 178.
 at Fort Donelson, 181.
 battle of Shiloh, 183.
 called "man for the times," 229.
 campaign against Lee, 1865, 219.
 Richmond, 211.
 change of plan, 1864, 212.
 conference with Sherman, 1865, 218.
 elected eighteenth President, 1868, 227.
 his death, 1885, 238.
 Grant, Gen. Ulysses Simpson, his tour round the world, 234.
 inauguration, 1869, 228.
 in command, 1862, 182.
 lieutenant-general of all the armies, 1864, 208.
 made general, 1866, 226.
 note on life of, 228.
 opened and closed Centennial Exhibition, 232.
 portraits, 211, 228.
 receives surrender of Lee, 221.
 re-elected President, 1872, 230.
 siege of Vicksburg, 1863, 199.
 Great Britain, alleged right of search, 119.
 and her colonies, 82.
 fisheries dispute, 1878, 234.
 oppressive measures by Parliament, 35.
 See England.
 strength of navy, 122.
 war declared against, 1812, 121.
 War of 1812, 120, 125, 129.
 Greeley, Horace (1811-72), defeated as Presidential candidate, 1872, 230.
 his death, 231.
 portrait, 231.
 Green Bay, settled, 1745, 168.
 Greene, Gen. Nathaniel (1742-86), 103.
 character and services in South, 102.
 portrait, 102.
 Greenland, settlement of, 11.
 Gregg, Fort, 220.
 Guadalupe Hidalgo, treaty, 1848, 154.
Guerrière, the, surrender, 123.
 Guilford Court-house, Americans defeated, 1781, 103.
 Guiteau, Charles Julius (1841-82), assassinates Garfield, 235.
 hanged, 1882, 235.
 Gunboat running the batteries, view, 200.
 Gunboats, narrow escape of, 215.
 Gunnery improved, 245.

H.

- Half Moon*, the, voyage of, 47.
 Halifax, Nova Scotia, 80.
 Halleck, General Henry Wager (1814-72), 178.
 takes possession of Corinth, 1862, 183.
 Hamilton, Alexander (1757-1804), killed in duel with Burr, 117.

- Hamilton, Alexander, portrait, 111.
 Secretary of Treasury, 111.
- Hamlin, Hannibal (1809—), elected Vice-President, 1860, 162.
- Hampton, General Wade (1755-1835), 125.
 Roads, 186.
 map, 186.
- Hancock, General Winfield Scott (1824-86), at Gettysburg, 206.
 defeated as Presidential candidate, 1880, 231.
 his death, 1886, 238.
- Hanover Court-house, capture of, 190, 191.
 Stonewall Jackson at, 193.
- Harlem Heights, 83.
- Harper's Ferry, 191.
 captured by Confederates, 175.
 John Brown's fort, raid, 1859, 161.
 view, 161.
- Harpshord at Mt. Vernon, view, 66.
- Harriet Lane*, the, 201.
- Harrison, Benjamin (1833—), administration, 1889-93, 211.
 elected twenty-third President, 1888, 240.
 note on life of, 240.
 portrait, 241.
- Gen. William Henry (1775-1841), 125, 128.
 administration, 1841-45, 115.
 elected ninth President, 1840, 145.
 his death, 1841, 115.
 note on life of, 115.
 portrait, 114.
 victory at the Thames, 128.
 at Tippecanoe, 120.
- Harrison's Landing, 193.
- Hartford, 131.
 founded, 1635, 45.
- Harvard College, founded, 1636, 67.
- Hatteras, Cape, 26.
 Inlet, N. C., forts captured, 1861, 178.
- Havana, 178.
 execution of Lopez, 157.
- Hayes, Rutherford Burchard (1822—), elected nineteenth President, 1876, 232.
 note on life of, 232.
 portrait, 233.
 uneventful administration, 1877-81, 233.
- Hayti colonized, 19.
- Hendricks, Thomas A. (1819-85), defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1876, 232.
- Hendricks, Thomas A., elected Vice-President, 1881, 237.
 his death, 1885, 238.
- Henry, Cape, 188.
 Fort, captured by Federals, 1862, 181.
 VII. of England (1456-1509), aids John Cabot, 20.
- Prof. Joseph (1797-1878), 119.
- Patrick (1736-99), his "liberty or death," 73.
 portrait, 73.
- Hermitage, Tenn., home of President Jackson, 155.
- Herold, David E., hanged, 1865, 225.
- Hessians at battle of Trenton, 84.
- High Bridge, Appomattox, 221.
- Hispaniola colonized, 19.
- Holland, Dutch claimed Connecticut, 45.
 explorations in America, 27.
 governors, 48.
 early Dutch settlements, 50.
 privileges to land purchasers, 47.
 sends out expeditions, 20.
 settlements by the Dutch, 47.
- Holly Springs, Van Dorn destroys supplies at, 185.
- Honduras, William Walker executed, 159.
- Hood, General John B. (1831-79), defeated by Thomas, 210.
- Hooker, Gen. Joseph (1819-79), 192, 202.
 at Fredericksburg, 1863, 203.
 at Missionary Ridge, 1863, 198.
 at Williamsburg, 189.
 campaign against Richmond, 202.
 portrait, 198.
- Hornet*, the, 126.
- Horse-race, 66.
- Horseshoe Bend, defeat of Indians, 1844, 129.
- Howe, Admiral Richard, Earl of (1725-99), 82, 93.
- Gen. Lord William (1729-1811), 82, 91.
 at Bunker's Hill, 77.
 at Philadelphia, 1777-78, 88.
 captures Philadelphia, 1777, 87.
 evacuates Boston, 80.
- Hudson, Capt. Henry (1550-1611), his explorations, 1609, 27, 47.
 Port, surrendered, 1863, 200.
 River, exploration of, 47.
 first steamboat on, 118.

Hudson River, from Water Battery,
West Point, view, 100.
Hull, Capt. Isaac (1775-1843), com-
mander of the *Constitution*,
124.
Gen. William (1753-1825), 124.
cowardly surrender by, 122.
Hunter, General David (1802-86),
178, 211.
defeats Confederates at Pied-
mont, 213.

I.

Iceland, settlement of, 14.
Idaho becomes forty-third State,
1890, 243.
Illinois becomes twenty-first State,
1818, 137, 166.
its history, 166.
Imported goods, duties on, 140.
Independence obtained, 105.
Independence Day, Adams, John,
died on, 1826, 137.
Jefferson, Thomas, died on, 1826,
137.
Monroe, James, died on, 1831, 142.
India, trade with, by caravans, 15.
Indian corn, 39.
Indiana becomes nineteenth State,
1816, 137, 166.
its history, 166.
Indianapolis, 238.
Indians, Columbus so calls the na-
tives, 19.
conquest of, 1794, 112.
hostile on frontier, 1789, 111.
increase of, 67.
migratory, 68.
of Canada assist the French (1689-
97), 56.
on the war-path, 68.
susceptible to education, 69.
the Indian problem, 69.
the North American, 67.
their conception of heaven, 69.
endurance, 67.
oratory, 69.
wrongs, 68.
treatment of their women, 68.
troubles in Minnesota, 1862, 196.
with, 1811, 120.
with, 1835, 141.
war of extermination, 1611, 35.
Inventions of Americans, 244.
Iowa, 147.
becomes twenty-ninth State, 1846,
148, 168.

Iowa, its history, 168.
organized as a Territory, 1838, 168.
Iroquois Indians assist the English
(1689-97), 56.
Sullivan's campaign against,
1778, 95.
Irwinsville, Ga., Davis captured,
1865, 222.
Isabella of Castile and Spain (1450-
1504), wife of Ferdinand V.,
17.
portrait, 17.
promised to help Columbus, 17.
Island No. 10 surrendered, April 7,
1862, 183.
Iuka, 184, 198.

J.

Jackson, Andrew (1767-1845), ad-
ministration, 1829-37, 139.
and the United States Bank, 140.
characteristics of, 139.
elected seventh President, 1828,
139.
first governor of Florida, 134.
his death, 1845, 154.
his victory at New Orleans, 1815,
131.
nicknamed "Old Hickory," 140.
note on life of, 139.
portrait, 139.
re-elected President, 1832, 140.
strong measures, 141.
subdues Creek Indians, 1814, 129.
Gen. Thomas Jonathan (1826-63),
called "Stonewall," 191.
defeated at Pemberton, 1863,
199.
defeats Pope, 1862, 191.
his death, 202-204.
Jackson, Tenn., General Beauregard
at, 181.
Jalapa entered by Americans, 1847,
153.
James River, 193, 212, 213.
ascended by colonists, 30.
so named after James I., 30.
I. of England (1566-1625), 35.
grant of Virginia, 28.
II. of England (1633-1701), his re-
strictions, 49.
Jamestown burned, 36.
during "Starving Time" (1609-
10), 32.
first legislative body in America,
1619, 34.
founded, 1607, 30.

Jamestown, ruins of, view, 36.
 saved, 33.
 warned of threatened massacre, 35.
 Jasper, Sergeant William (1750-79),
 his death, 91.
Jara, the, defeated, 124.
 Jefferson, Thomas (1743-1826), ad-
 ministration, 1801-09, 116.
 demands satisfaction of Great
 Britain, 119.
 elected third President, 1800,
 115.
 elected Vice-President, 114.
 his death, 1826, 137.
 note on life of, 115-117.
 portrait, 116.
 writer of Declaration of Inde-
 pendence, 82.
 Jersey, divided into East and West,
 1671, 50.
 sold to Penn and Quakers, 50.
 Jesuits, their missionaries founded
 St. Mary, 1668, 167.
 John II. (1455-95), king of Portugal,
 16.
 tries to cheat Columbus, 16.
 Johnson, Andrew (1808-75), acquit-
 ted on impeachment, 226.
 administration, 1865-69, 223.
 becomes seventeenth President,
 1865, 224.
 dissatisfaction with, 226.
 elected Vice-President, 1864, 217.
 impeached, 1868, 226.
 note on life of, 224.
 portrait, 223.
 Richard Mentor (1780-1850), elect-
 ed Vice-President, 1836, 142.
 Johnston, Gen. Albert Sidney (1803-
 62), 181.
 his death at Shiloh, 183.
 Gen. Joseph Eggleston (1809- —),
 199.
 at Bull Run, 176.
 defeated at Jackson, 1863, 199.
 his death, 1891, 213.
 manœuvres with Sherman, 209.
 repulsed at Williamsburg, 189.
 restored to command, 1865, 218.
 Sherman's friend, 224.
 surrendered, 1865, 222.
 to unite with Lee, 1865, 219.
 wounded at Fair Oaks, 1862,
 192.
 Johnstown flood, 1889, 211.
 to-day, view, 212.
 Jones, Paul (1747-92), exploits of, 95.
 medal struck in his honor, 97.

Jones, Paul, portrait, 95.
 subsequent career, 97.

K.

Kalb, Johann (self-styled Baron von
 de) (1732-80), 90.
 Kansas, 168.
 becomes thirty-fourth State, 1861,
 169.
 civil war in, 158, 169.
 conflict on slavery, 160.
 its history, 169.
 Territory organized, 1851, 158.
Katherine of Clermont, first steamboat,
 118.
 Kearney, General Philip (1815-62),
 152, 168.
Kearsarge, the, battle with *Alabama*,
 216.
 Kenesaw Mountain, Federals re-
 pulsed, 1861, 209.
 Kennebec River, 45.
 Kentucky abandoned by Confeder-
 ates, 182.
 becomes fifteenth State, 1792, 113.
 gained by Federals, 183.
 its history, 165.
 signifies "dark and bloody
 ground," 165.
 Key, Francis Scott (1779-1843), wrote
 "Star-spangled Banner,"
 131.
 Kinetoscope, 245.
 King, Samuel W., chosen governor
 of Rhode Island, 146.
 William Rufus (1786-1853), elected
 Vice-President, 1852, 157.
 Kingston, Canada, fort captured by
 English, 60.
 Knoxville, siege raised, 1863, 199.

L.

Labor disturbances, 238.
 troubles, 1877, 233.
 Labrador discovered, 21.
 La Fayette, General, Marquis de
 (1757-1834), 90, 103.
 portrait, 90.
 returns from France, 101.
 visit of, 1824, 135.
 Lancaster, Pa., 227.
 La Paz, 159.
 La Salle, Robert (cir. 1635-87), the ex-
 plorer, settled Illinois, 166.
 Landouinière, Captain (16th cent.)
 his colony, 21.

- La Vega captured, 151.
 Lawrence, Captain James (1781-1813),
 capture of the *Peacock*, 126.
 his death, 126.
 his "Don't give up the ship,"
 126, 128.
 Le Beuf, 58.
 Leavenworth, Fort, 152.
 Lee, Gen. Charles (1731-82), dis-
 missed from the army, 92.
 his treachery, 92.
 Gen. Henry (1756-1816), 100.
 called "Light-horse Harry,"
 192.
 Gen. Robert Edward (1806-70), 162,
 202.
 aggressive campaign, 1862-63,
 191.
 assumes supreme command,
 1865, 218.
 at Fredericksburg, 203.
 at Gettysburg, 204-208.
 deserts the Union, 171.
 his plan, 1865, 219.
 hopeless resistance, 1865, 220.
 note on life of, 192.
 portrait, 192.
 president of Washington and
 Lee University, 224.
 retreat from Gettysburg, 1863,
 208.
 retreats, 1864, 212.
 second invasion of North, 1863,
 201.
 surrender, 1865, 221.
 takes command of Confeder-
 ates, 192.
 temporary advantage, 1865,
 219.
 wounded at Chapultepec, 192.
 Leisler, Captain Jacob (—-1691),
 his execution, 19.
 Leon, Ponce de (1460-1521), discovers
 Florida, 21.
Leopard, the, fires on the *Chesapeake*,
 1807, 119.
 Letter-postage reduced, 1885, 237.
 Lewis and Clark expedition, 1801,
 118, 169.
 Capt. Meriwether (1774-1809), 118.
 explores Oregon, 1801, 169.
 Lexington, Mass., battle, 1775, 74-76.
 its shot "was heard round the
 world," 75.
 reinforcements from Boston, 75.
 Lexington, Mo., surrender of Colonel
 Mulligan, 1861, 177.
 Liberal Republicans, 230.
 Liberty Bell, Independence Hall,
 view, 82.
 statue of, dedicated, 1886, 239.
 view, 239.
 "Light-horse Harry," 192.
 Lightning-rod, 245.
 Lincoln, Abraham (1809-65), admin-
 istration, 1861-65, 170, 178,
 196, 208, 217.
 assassinated, 1865, 221.
 call for more men, 1862-63, 191.
 early home of, at Gentryville,
 view, 172.
 elected sixteenth President, 1860,
 162, 172.
 his call for volunteers, 171.
 inauguration, 1861, 171.
 note on life of, 172.
 portraits, 170, 211.
 re-elected President, 1861, 217.
 Gen. Benjamin (1733-1810), 101.
 besieges Savannah, 93.
 Literature and art, 245.
Little Belt, engagement with the *Pres-*
ident, 121.
 Logan, John A. (1826-86), defeated
 as Vice-Presidential candi-
 date, 1881, 237.
 London Company, 28.
 expedition of, 1606, 29.
 fleet of, 30.
 grants the great charter, 1618,
 33.
 its charter, 29.
 London Council abolished, 33.
 Long Island, British victory, 1776,
 83.
 Longstreet, Gen. James (1821-—),
 202.
 at Chickamauga, 196.
 at Gettysburg, 1863, 206.
 repulsed, 1863, 199.
 wounded by his own men, 212.
 Lookout Mountain, attack on, 1863,
 198.
 Lopez expedition, 157.
 General Narcisso (1799-1851), exe-
 cuted, 157.
 London, Fort, settlement at, 1756,
 165.
 Louisburg, capture of, view, 61.
 captured, 57, 60.
 Louisiana, 169, 225.
 becomes eighteenth State, 1812,
 137, 166.
 its history, 166.
 purchase, 1803, 117, 169.
 secession, 163.

Louisville, 184.
 Lundy's Lane, battle, 1814, 129.
 Lynchburg, 213.
 Lyon, General Nathaniel (1819-61),
 his death, 177.

M.

- Macdonough, Commodore Thomas
 (1784-1825), his naval victory,
 1814, 130.
 portrait, 130.
Macedonian, the, 124, 126.
 Mackinaw, Fort, captured, 122.
 Madison, James (1751-1836), elected
 fourth President, 1808, 120.
 his administration, 1809-17, 120,
 125, 129.
 his death, 1836, 142.
 last survivor of signers of Con-
 stitution, 142.
 note on life of, 120.
 portrait, 121.
 re-elected President, 1812, 124.
 Magellan, Ferdinand (cir. 1470-1521),
 sails round the world, 22.
 Straits discovered, 1520, 21.
 Magruder, General John Bankhead
 (cir. 1810-71), 189.
 Maine, 44.
 becomes twenty-third State, 1820,
 137, 167.
 boundary settled, 1812, 116.
 explored, 29.
 its history, 167.
 settlement of, 45.
 Maize, 39.
 Malvern Hill, Lee repulsed, 193.
Manassas, the, 189.
 Manhattan Island, 1613, 47.
 bought for \$24, 48.
 Mankato, Indians hanged, 196.
 Manufactures, American, prohibited,
 70.
 Marietta, settlement at, 1788, 166.
 Mariner's compass, 15.
 Marion, General Francis (1732-95),
 the "Swamp Fox," 100.
 in the South, 103.
 inviting British officers to din-
 ner, view, 101.
 Marshall, James W., discovers gold
 in California, 154.
 Marye House, Chancellorsville bat-
 tle ground, view, 203.
 Maryland, asylum for the persecuted,
 54.
 civil war raised by Clayborne, 54.
 Maryland, claims made by Virginia,
 54.
 invaded by Lee, 1862, 194.
 made a royal province, 51.
 settlement of, 53.
 toleration in, 1715, 54.
 Mason, James Murray (cir. 1798-
 1871), arrest disavowed and
 returned, 178.
 taken from steamer *Trent*, 178.
 Captain John (1600-72), destroys
 Pequods, 1637, 46.
 settlement of New Hampshire,
 45.
 Massachusetts, 41.
 exiles from, buy land, 46.
 form union of two colonies, 40.
 made a royal province, 1684, 44.
 other settlements formed, 40.
 settlements in, 37.
 supported by colonies, 74.
 twenty thousand settlers (1630-40),
 41.
 Massachusetts Bay Colonists, 41.
 Massachusetts Bay Colony becomes
 Massachusetts, 40.
 unites with others, 1643, 42.
 Massacre of colonists by Indians,
 1622, 35.
 of French colonists, 25.
 Massasoit (——-1661), his death, 42.
 his treaty of peace, 38.
 Matamoras, 119.
 captured, 1846, 151.
 Mamee, victory over Indians at,
 1794, 112.
 Maximilian (1832-67), executed, 1867,
 227.
 May, Captain, 150.
Mayflower returns to England, 1621,
 39.
 sails from Holland, 1620, 37.
 McClellan, Gen. George Brinton
 (1826-85), at Fair Oaks, 194.
 at Yorktown, 189.
 commander of Army of Poto-
 mac, 176.
 defeated as Presidential candi-
 date, 1864, 217.
 his change of base, 192.
 his death, 1885, 238.
 portrait, 177.
 restored to command, 195.
 to place his army under Pope,
 194.
 McDowell, General Irwin (cir. 1818-
 85), 191.
 defeated at Bull Run, 176.

- Meachem, General (— — —), treacherously wounded in Modoc War, 231.
- Meade, General George G. (1815-72), at Gettysburg, 201-208, campaign against Richmond, 211, headquarters at Gettysburg, view, 204, portrait, 204, sent to Canada, 1866, 227.
- Mechanicsville, Lee's attack, 1862, 193.
- Medal struck in honor of Paul Jones, cents, 97.
- Meigs, Fort, besieged, 1813, 125.
- Memphis, 185, falls, 1862, 183.
- Memphis and Charleston Railway secured by Federals, 183.
- Menendez, Pedro, founded St. Augustine, 1565, 24, massacre of colonists, 25.
- Merrimac River, 45.
- Merrimac*, the, naval fight, 185-188, refitted by Confederates, 185, scuttled, 1861, 185.
- Messiah of Indians, 1890-91, 242.
- Mexico, 23, 118, and Maximilian, 227, boundary readjusted, 1851, 159, conquered, 1847, 154, first conflict, 1846, 149, Gulf of, reached, 22, invaded by Winfield Scott, 151, land north of, explored, 118, march on, 1847, 153, monuments in, 43, revolution, 1822, 168, war with, 1846, 149, 168, 192, 229.
- Miami, a British trading post, 58.
- Michigan, 166, becomes twenty-sixth State, 1837, 142, 167, its history, 167, organized as a Territory, 1805, 167.
- Miles, General, takes command, 1891, 242.
- Mimms, Fort, 129, massacre, 1813, 128.
- Minnesota, 166, becomes thirty-second State, 1858, 168, Indian troubles, 1862, 196, its history, 168, organized as a Territory, 1849, 168.
- Minnesota*, the, 188.
- Mint established in Philadelphia, 112.
- Minnit, Peter, Dutch governor, 1626, 48.
- Minute men, 73, 75.
- Missionary Ridge, battle, 1863, 198.
- Mississippi becomes twentieth State, 1817, 137, 166, its history, 166, secession, 163, traversed, 23.
- Mississippi Central Railway, 185.
- Mississippi River, the "Father of Waters," 137, 166, 180, free navigation secured, 113, opened, dividing the Confederates, 200, reached, 1541, 23.
- Mississippi Valley, earth-works in, 13, rapidly settled, 137.
- Missouri becomes twenty-fourth State, 1821, 134, 137, 167, its history, 167, "Missouri Compromise," 1821, 134, 167, repealed, 1854, 158, speech by Lincoln, 173.
- Mobile captured, 1864, 215, founded, 1711, 167.
- Mobile Bay, 167.
- Modoc Indians removed to Dakota reservation, 231, War, 1873, 231.
- Mohawk Valley, slaughter by Indians, 1778, 95.
- Monitor* and *Merrimac*, the, no person killed, several wounded, 188, view, 187.
- Monitor*, the, arrives from New York, 187, naval fight, 185-188.
- Monmouth, 133.
- Monmouth Court-house, battle, 1778, 92.
- Monocacy, Wallace defeated at, 1864, 214.
- Monroe Doctrine, 1823, 134.
- Monroe, Fortress, Va., 216, Davis imprisoned, 1865, 222, garrisoned by General Butler, 175.
- McClellan lands at, 189, view, 175.
- Monroe, James (1758-1831), administration of, 1817-25, 133, and "Monroe Doctrine," 135, elected fifth President, 1816, 132, his death, 1831, 142, note on life of, 132.

- Monroe, James, portrait, 133.
 re-elected President, 1820, 136.
 Montana becomes forty-first State,
 1889, 243.
 Montcalm, General (1712-59), death,
 1759, 63.
 defeated at Quebec, 1759, 61-63.
 Monterey, 229.
 fall of, 1846, 151.
 Montgomery, Ala., 163.
 Confederate States formed there,
 163.
 meeting of Confederates, 1861, 171.
 Montgomery, General Richard (1737-
 75), attacks Quebec unsuc-
 cessfully, 80.
 his death, 80.
 portrait, 80.
 takes Montreal, 79.
 Montreal, 24.
 attack on, abandoned, 1813, 125.
 captured, 1760, 63.
 captured, 1775, 79.
 Morgan, General Daniel (1736-1802),
 wins battle of Cowpens, 102.
 Mormon Tabernacle, Salt Lake City,
 view, 147.
 Mormonism, measures against, 1882,
 236.
 Mormons, settled at Nauvoo, 1840,
 147.
 Morris Island, Gillmore lands on,
 1863, 200.
 Morristown, Washington's winter
 quarters at, 86, 101.
 Morse, Samuel Finley Breese (1791-
 1872), and the telegraph, 149.
 Morton, Levi P. (———), elected
 Vice-President, 1888, 240.
 Moultrie, Fort, 81, 161.
 Osceola confined in, 141.
 Mound-Builders, 13.
 Mount Desert, settlement at, 25.
 Hope, death of Philip, 43.
 McGregor, N. Y., death of Grant
 at, 238.
 Vernon, home of George Washing-
 ton, 106.
 Washington dies at, 115.
 Washington's estate at, 109.
 Mulligan, Colonel James A. (1830-
 64), defence of Lexington,
 Mo., 177.
 Murfreesboro', battle of, 1862-63, 184,
 196.
 General Johnston at, 181.
 Mystic River, Pequot stronghold,
 46.
- N.**
- Naddod, sea-rover, 14.
 Napoleon Bonaparte (1769-1821), 114,
 117, 118.
 Ill. (1808-73) and Mexico, 227.
 Narragansett Bay, 24, 93.
 Indians, 46.
 shelter Roger Williams, 42.
 war with, 43.
 Narvaez, Pamphilo de (1470-1528),
 lands, 1528, 22.
 Nashville, 181, 182, 184, 210.
 National Bank established in Phila-
 delphia, 111.
 Nauvoo, Ill., Mormons driven from,
 1844, 147.
 Naval battle, view, 123.
 warfare, end of wooden war-vessels,
 188.
 Navigation Act, 1660, 36.
 and Massachusetts, 44.
 laws unjust and oppressive, 70.
 Navy, exploits of American, 123.
 grades revived, 226.
 Navy Island, Niagara River, New
 York insurgents at, 144.
 Nebraska becomes thirty-seventh
 State, 1867, 228.
 Territory organized, 1854, 158.
 Negroes, their vote, 226.
 Nevada, 168.
 becomes thirty-sixth State, 1864,
 217.
 New Amsterdam, 47.
 captured by English, 48.
 Newbern, 218.
 captured by Federals, 1862, 188.
 New Brunswick, formerly called
 Acadia, 60.
 quarters of British troops, 1777,
 86.
 Newburgh, N. Y., 106.
 Washington's headquarters at,
 view, 105.
 New England, 24.
 disaffection, 1814, 131.
 fresh colonies, 45.
 invasion, by French and Indians,
 56.
 opposed to War of 1812, 121.
 united colonies of, 1643, 42.
 Newfoundland, 21, 227.
 New France, 24.
 New Hampshire, 132.
 made a royal province, 1741, 45.
 settlement of, 45.
 unites with Massachusetts, 45.

- New Haven Colony unites with Connecticut, 1662, 46.
unites with others, 1643, 42.
- New Jersey, 238.
included in New Netherlands, 49.
made a royal province, 1738, 51.
retreat through, 83.
settlement of, 49.
united with New York, 50.
- New Madrid, General Polk at, 181.
- New Market, Sigel defeated, 1864, 213.
- New Mexico, 156, 168, 195.
ceded to United States, 154.
conquest of, 1846, 152.
- New Netherlands include New Jersey, 49.
so named, 1609, 27.
so named, 1611, 47.
- New Orleans, 215, 243.
ceded to Spain, 63.
founded, 1718, 166.
surrendered to Federals, 1862, 188.
victory at, 1815, 131.
- Newport attacked, 1778, 93.
French blockaded at, 101.
- Newport, Captain Christopher, 30.
- Newspapers, first daily paper, 1792, 67.
- New States admitted, 137.
- New Sweden so named, 1638, 51.
- New York, 24, 241.
adopts Constitution, 109.
anti-rent troubles, 146.
British army at, 82.
invasion by French and Indians, 56.
New Jersey united with, 50.
settlement of, 47.
so named, 1664, 48.
still held after the war, 108.
- New York City ceases to be the capital, 1790, 112.
harbor, 239.
history of, 48.
old Federal Hall, 110.
present site of, 47.
tea refused, 73.
temporary capital, 110.
- Niagara frontier, 125.
River, 122, 129, 144.
- Niagara*, the, naval battle, 127.
- Nicaragua, General Walker in, 159.
- Nicholson, Francis, lieutenant-governor of New York, 49.
- Nina* sails, Aug. 3, 1492, 17.
- Norfolk, 187.
navy-yard, 185.
captured by Confederates, 175.
- North and South, bitterness between, 160.
each united by fall of Sumter, 174.
Southern leaders' views, 170.
Union sentiment, 171.
widening of breach between, 162.
- Northman ship, view, 14.
- Northmen, visits to America, 14.
- North-western Territory, 113, 166.
- Norway, Northmen natives of, 14.
- Nova Scotia (formerly Acadia), 44.
ceded to England, 57.
Port Royal captured, 56.
founded, 1605, 25.
See *Acadia*.

O.

- Oglethorpe, General James Edward (1698-1785), his scheme, 55.
- O'Hara, General James (—1819), 104.
- Ohio becomes seventeenth State, 1803, 137, 166.
disturbances, 1877, 233.
its history, 166.
- Ohio River, 184.
- Old elm at Cambridge, view, 78.
- "Old Hickory," 140.
- "Old man eloquent," the, 136.
- "Old Rough and Ready," 155.
- "Omnibus Bill," the, 156.
- Ontario, Lake, 60, 125.
- Orange, Fort, at Albany, 47.
- Orchard Knob seized by Thomas, 1863, 198.
- Oregon, 231.
becomes thirty-third State, 1859, 169.
boundary settled, 154.
its history, 169.
organized as a Territory, 1848, 169.
- Orinoco River, 19.
- Osceola (cir. 1803-37), captured by treachery, 68, 141.
his death, 141.
Seminole chieftain, 68.

P.

- Pacific Ocean to belong to Spain, 21.
Railway completed, 1869, 228.

- Pakenham, General Sir Edward
 (—1815), his defeat and
 death, 1815, 131.
- Pallas*, the, 96.
- Palo Alto, 229.
 Mexicans defeated, 1846, 150.
- Panama, Isthmus of, 21.
- Paris treaty, 1763, 63.
 1783, 106.
- Patriot War in Canada, 1837, 144.
- "Patroons," 146.
- Payne, Lewis. See *Powell*.
- Pea Ridge, Van Dorn defeated, 185.
- Peace Convention, 1861, 171.
- Peacock*, the, defeated, 1813, 126.
- Pemberton, Gen. John C. (cir. 1818–
 81), defeated at Fort Gibson,
 1863, 199.
 headquarters at Vicksburg,
 view, 185.
 shut up in Vicksburg, 1863,
 199.
 surrenders Vicksburg, 1863,
 200.
- Pendleton, George H. (1825—),
 defeated as Vice-Presidential
 candidate, 1864, 217.
- Penn, Admiral Sir William (1621–70),
 father of William Penn, 51.
- Penn, William (1641–1718), 68.
 buys East Jersey, 50.
 his death, 1718, 53.
 his heirs sold their claims for
 \$500,000, 53.
 his house, view, 51.
 his object, 51.
 his rule, 52.
 his theories, 52.
 his treaty with Indians, 53.
 view, 52.
 lands, 1682, 51.
 portrait, 50.
 receives grant of land, 51.
- Pennsylvania, 52.
 settlement of, 49.
 University founded, 1749, 67.
- Pequods, destruction of, 45.
- Perote, castle of, surrender, 1847, 153.
- Perry, Commodore Oliver Hazard
 (1785–1820), portrait, 127.
 victory on Lake Erie, 1813,
 127.
- Perryville, battle, 1862, 184.
- "Personal Liberty" bills, 160.
- Pern, monuments in, 43.
- Petersburg, Va., 220.
 Lee's army at, 1865, 218.
 siege, 1864, 212.
- Philadelphia, 112, 241.
 captured, 1777, 87.
 ceases to be capital, 1800, 112.
 Congress flies from, 83.
 Convention for Constitution, 109.
 evacuated, 1778, 91.
 Fairmount Park, 1876, 232.
 first Continental Congress at, 74.
 founded, 51.
 Liberty Bell, view, 82.
 news of independence, 1781, 105.
 prosperity of, 53.
 second Continental Congress, 77.
 settlement near, 51.
 tea refused, 73.
 welcomes Washington, 1789, 110.
- Philip, Indian king (—1676), 69.
 his death, 43.
- Philip's War, King, 42.
 peace restored, 41.
- Phipps, Sir William (1651–95), cap-
 tures Port Royal, 56.
 governor of Massachusetts, 41.
- Phonograph, 245.
- Pickens, Gen. Andrew (1739 1817),
 100.
 in the South, 103.
- Pickett, General George E. (1825–75),
 charge, at Gettysburg, 206.
- Piedmont, Confederates defeated,
 1864, 213.
- Pierce, Franklin (1804–69), adminis-
 tration, 1853–57, 158.
 and Republican party, 159.
 elected fourteenth President,
 1852, 157.
 note on life of, 157.
 portrait, 158.
- Pike, General Zebulon Montgomery
 (1779–1813), attacks York
 (now Toronto), 1813, 125.
 killed, 125.
- Pilgrims, 37.
- Pine Ridge Agency, Indians surren-
 dered, 1891, 212.
- Pinta* sails, Aug. 3, 1492, 17, 18.
- Piscataqua River, 45.
- Pitcairn, Major, 75.
- Pitcher, Molly, her bravery, 92.
 in battle, view, 92.
- Pitt, William (1708–78), 61.
- Pittsburg, 59.
 founded, 60.
 rioting, 1877, 233.
 so named after William Pitt, 61.
- Pittsburg Landing, battle, 1862, 182.
- Plattsburg, 130.
- Pleasant Hill, encounter at, 215.

- Plymouth and Massachusetts Puritans, 41.
 Colony prospers, 39.
 unites with others, 40, 42.
 during famine year, 1623, 39.
 Forefathers' monument, view, 38.
 landing of Pilgrims, 1620, 37.
 war averted, 39.
- Plymouth Company, 28.
 attempts colonization, 1606, 29.
 its charter, 29.
- Pocahontas (—1617), marriage of,
 view, 32.
 married, 1613, 33.
 saves John Smith, 32.
- Poitiers*, the, 124.
- Point Isabel, 149, 150.
- "Pointed Arrow," 140.
- Political parties recast, 1824, 136.
- Polk, James Knox (1795-1849), ad-
 ministration, 1845-49, 149.
 elected eleventh President,
 1844, 148.
 note on life of, 148.
 portrait, 150.
 Gen. Leonidas (1806-64), also an
 Episcopal bishop, 181.
- Polygamists disfranchised, etc., 237.
- Ponce de Leon. See *Leon*.
- Pontiac, North American chief (cir.
 1712-69), 69.
- Poor Richard's Almanac*, 91.
- Pope, Gen. John (1823-—), defeat-
 ed, 1862, 194.
 defends Washington, 194.
 enters Island No. 10, 1862, 183.
- Population, first census, 1790, 113.
- Port Republic, defeat of Shields,
 1862, 191.
- Port Royal, Nova Scotia, colony
 founded, 1605, 25.
 captured, 1710, 57.
 name changed to Annapolis, 57.
- Port Royal, S. C., colony at, 24.
 Entrance, forts captured, 1861,
 178.
- Porter, Commodore David D. (1813-
 91), 185.
 ascends Red River, 1864, 215.
 at Wilmington, N. C., 216.
 his death, 1891, 243.
 made vice-admiral, 1866, 226.
 narrow escape with gunboats,
 215.
 portrait, 211.
 Gen. Fitz John (—-—-), 193.
 captures Hanover Court-house,
 191.
- Portsmouth, settlements near, 1623,
 45.
- Portugal, Columbus at court of, 16.
- Postage rates, 244.
- Potomac, the, 191, 194, 204, 208, 214.
 settlement near, 1634, 54.
- Powell, Lewis (*alias* Payne), hanged,
 1865, 225.
- Powhatan, war-chief, 32.
 dies, 1618, 35.
- President*, the, 121, 123.
- Presidential election, 1876, disputed,
 232.
- Presidential-Succession law, 1886,
 237.
- Presqu' Isle, French fort at, 58.
- Price, General Sterling (—1867),
 177.
 attack on Corinth, 184.
- Princeton College founded, 1746, 67.
- Princeton, Washington's victory at,
 1777, 85.
- Printing-presses, 245.
 first at Cambridge, 1639, 66.
- Prætor, General, 125.
 defeated on the Thames, 128.
- Protection, 133, 136.
- Providence Plantation settled, 1636,
 46.
- Providence, R. I., founded, 42.
- Puebla surrenders, 1847, 153.
- Pulaski, Count Casimir (1748-79), 90.
 his death, 94.
 portrait, 94.
- Puritans, 37, 41.
 character of, 37.
 intolerance of, 41.

Q.

- Quadrant invented, 245.
- Quakers, persecution of, 41.
- Quebec, 98.
 attacked, 1775, 79.
 captured, 1759, 61-63.
 settlement of, 1608, 25.
 surrendered, 1759, 63.
- Queenstown Heights, British defeat-
 ed, 1812, 122.

R.

- Railroads destroyed by Federals, 210.
 military possession taken, 1862,
 191.
- Railway, the first, 138.
 strike, 1877, 233.
 the first train, view, 138.

- Raleigh, Sir Walter (1552-1618), at-
 tempts at colonization, 26.
 portrait, 26.
 Rall, Colonel, his death, 84.
 Rapidan, the, 191, 208.
 Rappahannock, the, 195.
 crossed by Federals, 1863, 203.
 Reading, disturbances, 1877, 233.
 Red River, 215.
 expedition of Federals failed,
 1864, 215.
 Reno, General, 231.
 Rensselaer, Stephen Van, 122.
 his death, 1840, 146.
 his land rents, 147.
 Republican Party organized, 159.
 Republicans, 111, 111, 136, 159, 162,
 217, 227, 230, 232, 234, 237,
 240.
 Resaca de la Palma, 151, 229.
 Mexicans defeated, 1846, 150.
 Revolution, close of, 102.
 dark days, 83.
 direct cause of, 71.
 effect of the war, 107.
 indirect causes of, 70.
 inevitable, 70.
 oppressive measures by England,
 72.
 war on the ocean, 95.
 Revolutionary War, 245.
 Rhode Island, 101.
 adopts Constitution, 1790, 109.
 adopts State Constitution, 1843,
 146.
 Dorr's rebellion, 1841-43, 146.
 joins New England Union, 1647,
 47.
 Plantation established, 46.
 settlement of, 46.
 Ribaut, Captain John (cir. 1520-65),
 his colony, 24.
 joins Laudonnière, 25.
 Richmond, 176, 180, 204, 208, 212,
 213.
 alarm in, 1862, 189.
 campaign against, 1862, 189.
 campaign against, 1863, 202.
 capital of Confederacy, 175.
 Confederate capital, view, 180.
 Davis's remains at, 243.
 environs of, map, 190.
 evacuated, 1865, 220.
 failure of campaign against, 1862,
 193.
 failure of campaign against, 1863,
 202.
 final campaign against, 1864, 211.
 Richmond, Hooker's campaign
 against, 1863, 202-204.
 inauguration of Davis and Ste-
 phens, 182.
 Jefferson Davis's residence, view,
 182.
 Johnston's army south of, 218.
 Right of search, Americans forced
 into English service, 119.
 Rio Grande, 149, 151.
 Roanoke Island, 30.
 captured by Federals, 1862, 188.
 settlement near, 1585, 26.
 Rochambeau, Marshal de (1725-1807),
 101.
 "Rock of Chickamauga," 197.
 Rolfe, John, 33.
 Rosecrans, Gen. William Stark (1819-
 —), 184, 197.
 attack on, by Bragg, 196.
 occupies Murfreesboro', 1862,
 185.
 takes command, 184.
 "Rough and Ready," 151.
 Russia sold Alaska to United States,
 227.
 Russy, Fort de, captured, 1864, 215.
 Ryswick, treaty, 1697, 56.

S.

- Sabine Cross-roads, Banks routed,
 1864, 215.
 Sac Indians, 141.
 Sacramento Valley, gold discovered,
 154.
 St. Angel advances money to Colum-
 bus, 17.
 St. Augustine, city gates, view, 23.
 oldest town in United States, 23.
 St. Geneviève settled, 1755, 167.
 St. John's captured, 1775, 79.
 St. John's River, fort on, 25.
 St. Lawrence River, 125.
 discovered by Cartier, 24.
 St. Louis, 178.
 incorporated, 1809, 167.
 settled, 1764, 167.
 St. Mary's, Md., 1634, 54.
 St. Mary, Mich., founded by Jesuits,
 1668, 167.
 St. Paul, Minn., established, 1838,
 168.
 Salem settled, 1628, 41.
 witchcraft, terrors of, 1692, 41.
 Salt Lake City founded by Mormons,
 147.
 Samoset, his friendly welcome, 35.

- San Antonio garrison routed, 153.
 San Augustine, 153.
 first permanent settlement, 28.
 San Diego mission established, 1769,
 168.
 San Francisco, 159.
 mission established, 1776, 168.
San Jacinto, the, 178.
 San Juan boundary settled, 1872,
 230.
 San Salvador named by Columbus,
 19.
 Santa Anna (or Ana), Antonio Lopez
 de (1798-1876), defeated at
 Buena Vista, 152.
 dies, leaving his wooden leg,
 153.
 offers terms, 1847, 153.
 Santa Fé captured, 1846, 152.
 Santa Maria, 18.
 sails, Aug. 3, 1492, 17.
 Savage's Station, engagement at,
 1862, 193.
 Savannah captured, 1778, 93.
 evacuated by Confederates, 1864,
 211.
 occupied by Federals, 1864, 211.
 patriots repulsed, 1779, 93.
 refuge for debtors, 1733, 55.
 Sherman leaves, 1865, 218.
 still held after the war, 108.
 Saye-and-Sele, Lord (1582-1662), 45.
 Schofield, General John McAllister
 (1831- —), 210.
 takes command, 1865, 218.
 Schools, cost of, 214.
 Scott, General Winfield (1786-1866),
 171.
 and his staff, view, 174.
 at Lundy's Lane, 1844, 129.
 defeated as Presidential candi-
 date, 1852, 157.
 in command at Mexico, 152.
 invades Mexico, 151.
 ordered to Charleston, 1832,
 111.
 portrait, 152.
 Seceded States, 225.
 admitted, 1868, 226.
 Sedgwick, General John (cir. 1815-
 64), at Fredericksburg, 203.
 Seminary Ridge, 206.
 Seminole Indians, 68, 134, 141.
 Semmes, Captain Raphael (cir. 1810-
 77), commander of the *Alabama*,
 201.
 defeat and attempted suicide,
 216.
 Separatists, 37, 41.
Scrapis, the, fight with, 1779, 96.
 Sermons in colonial times, 65.
 Sewing-machines, 245.
 Seymour, Horatio (1810-86), defeated
 as Presidential candidate,
 1868, 228.
Shannon, the, 126.
 "Sharp Knife," 110.
 Sharpsburg, Md., 195.
 Shawnee Indians, 120.
 Shenandoah Valley, 191, 204.
 operations in, 1861, 213.
 Sheridan, Gen. Philip Henry (1831-
 —), 220, 239.
 operations in Shenandoah Val-
 ley, 214.
 portraits, 211, 219.
 Sherman, General William Tecumseh
 (1820-91), 185, 198.
 at Knoxville, 199.
 campaign in the South, 1864,
 209.
 conference with Grant, 1865,
 218.
 his death, 213.
 his march northward, 1865,
 218.
 his march to the sea, 1864, 210.
 Johnston's friend, 224.
 made lieutenant-general, 1866,
 226.
 portraits, 209, 211.
 receives Johnston's surrender,
 222.
 reinforces Grant, 1865, 219.
 Shields, General James (1810-79), de-
 feated at Port Republic, 191.
 Shiloh, battle, 1862, 182.
 Shreveport, 215.
 Sibley, General Henry (cir. 1815-
 —), Federals defeated,
 1862, 195.
 Colonel Henry H. (1811-63), In-
 dians defeated, 1862, 196.
 Sigel, General Franz (1821- —), de-
 feated at New Market, 213.
 Signers of Declaration of Independ-
 ence, fac-simile of signatures,
 81.
 Silver made legal tender, 234.
 Sioux Indians, 196.
 uprising, 1890-91, 241.
 war, 1876, 231.
 Sitting Bull, his arrest and death,
 1890, 241.
 massacre by, 1876, 231.
 Skating, 66.

- Skirmisher, the, wood-cut, 179.
 Slavery, 66.
 abolished in District of Columbia, 156.
 abolition ratified, 1865, 225.
 burning question, 1857-61, 160.
 debate over admission of Texas, 118.
 Emancipation Proclamation, 1863, 196.
 negroes introduced, 1619, 31.
 opposed by Republican party, 159.
 question in 1861-65, 170.
 Slavery question, 155.
 Slidell, John (1793-1871), arrest dis-
 avowed and returned, 178.
 taken from steamer *Trent*, 178.
 Sloat, Commodore, 152.
 Sloughter, Governor, 49.
 Smith, Captain John (1579-1631), 29,
 32, 33.
 captured by Indians, 31.
 his exploits, 29.
 his services, 31.
 Joseph (1805-41), killed by a mob,
 117.
 Smithsonian Institute, 149.
 Snelling, Fort, Minn., established,
 1819, 168.
 Sonora, revolt at, 159.
 Soto, Hernando de. See *De Soto*.
 South America partly discovered,
 1199, 20.
 provinces recognized as inde-
 pendent, 1822, 135.
 South Carolina, secession, 1860, 163.
 South Mountain, 204.
 Confederates overtaken at, 195.
 Southern States, secessions, 163, 174.
 Spain and Cuba, 157.
 and Florida, 134.
 controlled Mississippi, 1789, 111.
 first settles California, 168.
 sends out expeditions, 20.
 treaty, 1795, 113.
 Spanish Court, Columbus at, 17.
 Specie payments resumed, 1879, 234.
 Spottsylvania Court-house, battle,
 1864, 212.
 Springfield, 177.
 Stamp Act, 1765, 71.
 repealed, 1766, 72.
 Standish, Capt. Miles (cir. 1584-1656),
 his exploits, 39.
 his sword, etc., view, 40.
 Stark, Gen. John (1728-1822), victory
 at Bennington, 86.
Star of the West, the, fired upon, 1861,
 161.
 "Star-spangled Banner," when writ-
 ten, 131.
 State banks receive United States
 deposits, 110.
 State Rights, 170, 171.
 after Civil War, 225.
 States, admission of, 113, 137, 142.
 growth of the, 161.
 Steadman, Fort, Lee defeated, 1865,
 219.
 Steamboat, the first, 1807, 118, 215.
 Steam locomotive, the first, 1829, 138.
 Stephens, Alexander Hamilton (1812-
 83), elected Vice-President of
 Confederate States, 1864, 163.
 his Union speech, 171.
 re-elected Vice-President of
 Confederate States, 182.
 Stephenson, Fort, attacked, 1813, 126.
 Steuben, Baron Frederick (1730-94),
 inspector-general of the
 army, 90.
 Stewart, Captain Charles (1778-1869),
 117, 123.
 Stockton, Commodore Robert Field
 (1796-1866), 152, 168.
 Stony Point captured by General
 Wayne, 1779, 94.
 Strasburg, 191.
 Strikes, 238.
 Stuart, General James E. B. (cir.
 1833-64), cavalry raid, 1862,
 192.
 his death, 212.
 Stuyvesant, Peter (cir. 1602-82),
 Dutch governor, 1616, 48.
 Sullivan, Gen. John (1740-95), cam-
 paign against Indians, 1778,
 95.
 retreat, 1778, 93.
 Sumner, Gen. Edwin Vose (1796-
 1863), at Fair Oaks, 192.
 Sumner's Crossing, Fredericksburg,
 view, 203.
 Sumter, Fort, attack on, view, 173.
 captured by Confederates, 1861,
 173.
 Major Anderson at, 164.
 no person injured during thirty-
 six hours' firing, 174.
 reduced to ruins, 1863, 200.
 Sumter, General Thomas (1734-1832),
 100.
 in the South, 103.
 Sunday-schools, 65.
 Surratt, Mrs. Mary E., hanged, 1865,
 225.
Susan Constant, the, 30.

Swamp fight, the, 43.
 "Swamp Fox," the, 100.
 Swansea attacked by Indians, 43.
 Sweden, early Swedish settlements, 50.
 Northmen natives of, 14.
 settlement near Wilmington, Del., 51.

T.

- Tampa Bay, Florida, 22.
 landing at, in 1539, 23.
 Tappan, 102.
 Tariff bill passed, 1890, 243.
 duties reduced, 141.
 question, nature of, 138.
 Tarleton, Colonel Banastre (1751-1833), defeated at Cowpens, 102.
 "Taxation without representation," 71, 72.
 Taylor, General (Dick) Richard (—-1879), Banks defeated, 1864, 215.
 surrendered, 1865, 222.
 General Zachary (1784-1850), 151.
 administration, 1849-53, 155.
 called "Rough and Ready," 151.
 defeats Santa Anna, 152.
 elected twelfth President, 1848, 155.
 his death, 1850, 155.
 note on life of, 155.
 portrait, 156.
 to protect Texas, 1846, 119.
 victory at Palo Alto, 150.
 Tecumseh (cir. 1770-1813), enters British service, 121.
 his death, 128.
 war-chief of Shawnees, 69, 120.
 Telegram, first public, 148.
 Telegraph, 245.
 Telephone, 245.
 Tennessee, 225.
 becomes sixteenth State, 1796, 113, 165.
 invaded by Hood, 1864, 210.
 its history, 165.
 left open to Federals, 182.
 secession, 1861, 174.
 Tennessee, East, 179.
 opened to Federals, 1863, 199.
 River, 183.
 Western, gained by Federals, 183.
 Tensas, Lake, 128.
 Terry, General Alfred H. (1827-—), 218.
 Terry, General Alfred H., Wilmington, N. C., captured, 1864, 216.
 Texas applies for admission, 1844, 148.
 becomes independent republic, 1836, 168.
 twenty-eighth State, 1845, 149, 168.
 ceded Territory of New Mexico, 156.
 to United States, 154.
 debate over admission, 148.
 independence declared, 1835, 168.
 recognized, 148.
 its history, 167.
 secession, 163.
 War of Independence, 1835, 148.
 Thames, victory of the, 1813, 128.
 Thomas, General George H. (1816-70), at Chickamauga, 197.
 at Murfreesboro', 184.
 called "Rock of Chickamauga," 197.
 defeats Hood, 1864, 210.
 portraits, 197, 211.
 takes Orchard Knob, 1863, 198.
 Rev. Dr. (—-1873), murdered in Modoc War, 231.
 Thornton, Captain, surrender of, 149.
 Thurman, Allen G., defeated as Vice-Presidential candidate, 1888, 210.
 Ticonderoga, Fort, attack upon, 61.
 captured, 1775, 78.
 evacuated, 1777, 86.
 Tilden, Samuel Jones (1814-86), defeated as Presidential candidate, 1876, 232.
 Tippecanoe, battle, 1811, 121.
 "To the victors belong the spoils," 139.
 Tobacco introduced into England, 26.
 Toleration Act, 1649, 54.
 Tories favored royalty, 73.
 Toronto. See *York*.
 Trent, affair of the, 1861, 178.
 Trenton, battle, 1776, 84.
 welcomes Washington, 1789, 110.
 Tripoli defeated, 117.
 war declared by, 1801, 117.
 Twiller, Wouter van, Dutch governor, 1633, 48.
 Tyler, John (1790-1862), 148.
 administration, 1841-45, 145.
 becomes tenth President, 1841, 145, 146.
 elected Vice-President, 1840, 145.

Tyler, John, his unpopular acts, 115.
 note on life of, 116.
 portrait, 115.
 presides at Peace Convention,
 171.

U.

Union sentiment in North and South,
 171.

United States Bank, 110.
 charter granted, 1817, 132.
 not renewed, 1832, 110.
 new charter twice vetoed, 115.
 United States becomes a nation, 107.
 cities of 10,000 population and
 upwards, 241.
 condition of country after Revolu-
 tionary War, 107.
 Confederates seize government
 property, 161.
 cost of War of 1812, 132.
 danger from States being inde-
 pendent of each other, 108.
 eighteen States during War of
 1812, 166.
 era of prosperity, 133.
 exploits of navy, 122, 123.
 extent of territory, 1861, 241.
 first railway, 1826, 138.
 forty-four stars on flag, 1891,
 213.
 in peril from its army, 108.
 panic of 1837, 112-111.
 peace and progress, 223.
 population, 1891, 241.
 progress of country, 137.
 sixty thousand post offices, 244.
 true reunion of, 223.
 War of 1812, close of, 129.
United States, the, 124, 126.
 Utah, 117, 168.
 Territory organized, 156.
 Utes and wigwam, view, 67.
 Utrecht, treaty of, 57.

V.

Valley Forge, 101.
 Washington in prayer, view, 89.
 Washington's headquarters at,
 view, 88.
 winter quarters, 88.
 Valverde, Federals defeated, 1862,
 195.
 Van Buren. *See Buren*.
 Van Dorn, General Earl (cir. 1823-
 63), attacks Corinth, 181.

Van Dorn, General Earl, destroys
 Grant's supplies, 185.
 Vera Cruz, 229.
 fall of, 1847, 152.
 Vermont becomes fourteenth State,
 1791, 113.
 its history, 165.
 signifies "Green Mountain," 165.
 Verrazani, Giovanni (cir. 1486-1527),
 his theory of size of globe,
 21.
 Vespucci, Amerigo. *See Vespuccius*.
 Vespuccius, Americus (1451-1512), 20.
 Vicksburg captured, 1863, 199.
 environs, map, 201.
 General Pemberton's headquarters,
 view, 185.
 siege of, 1862, 185.
 surrendered, 1863, 200.
 Virginia, 103, 225.
 authorities hang John Brown, 162.
 bad government, 33.
 claims against Lord Baltimore, 54.
 section west of Alleghaniens, 58.
 colony prospers, 36.
 entered by Federals, 195.
 four of first five Presidents from,
 132.
 made a royal province, 1621, 35.
 method of government, 31.
 named after Elizabeth, 26.
 prosperity of settlers, 31.
 secession, 1861, 171.
 settlement of, 33.
 seventeen capital offences in, 66.
 sufferings during "Starving Time"
 (1609-10), 32.
 of settlers, 31.
 the Great Charter, 33.
 war breaks out between Virginians
 and French, 59.
 Virginia currency, wood-cut, 89.
 Virginia, North, 28.
 South, 28.
 West, becomes thirty-fifth State,
 1863, 201.
 Volunteers, call for, 171.
 100,000 respond in three days, 175.

W.

Wadsworth, Captain, hides charter
 in oak, 16.
 Wagner, Fort, captured, 1863, 200.
 Walker, General William (1821-60),
 executed, 159.
 his filibustering expedition,
 159.

- Wallace defeated at Monocacy, 214.
 War of 1812, 215.
 Warren, General Gouverneur K. (1825-82), 220.
 Warwick, Earl of, 45.
 Washington, 213.
 becomes national capital, 1800, 112.
 Capitol, etc. burned, 1814, 133.
 captured, 1814, 130.
 Ford's Theatre, Lincoln assassinated, 221.
 Lee's march against, 194.
 Peace Convention, 1861, 171.
 threatened, 175, 191.
 by Early, 1861, 214.
 White House, view, 112.
 Washington becomes forty-second State, 1889, 243.
 Washington, Fort, captured with 2000 Americans, 1776, 83.
 Washington, George (1732-99), 58, 86, 91, 92, 98, 99, 100, 102, 103, 104, 192.
 administration of, 1789-97, 107.
 advises General Braddock, 59.
 appointed commander-in-chief, 1775, 77.
 as a statesman, 111.
 at Morristown, 1779-80, 101.
 chosen first President, 109.
 death, 1799, 115.
 defeated at White Plains, 83.
 near Brooklyn, 83.
 his tactics, 85.
 inauguration as President, 110.
 in battle at Duquesne, 59.
 in prayer at Valley Forge, view, 89.
 journey through the wilderness, 58.
 to New York, 1789, 110.
 made commander-in-chief again, 115.
 note on his life, 109.
 portrait, 107.
 re-elected President, 1792, 112.
 retires to private life, 106.
 retreat through New Jersey, 83.
 sufferings of his army, 1777-78, 88.
 urged to become king, 108.
 visits wounded Hessian commander, view, 81.
 Washington Monument, 1885, 237.
Wasp, the, captured, 124.
 Waterford, French fort at, 58.
 Wayne, General Anthony (1745-96), called "Mad Anthony," 94.
 Wayne, General Anthony, portrait, 94.
 victory on the Maumee, 112.
 Webster, Daniel (1782-1852), supports Fugitive-slave law, 157.
 Weddings, 66.
 West Point, 99.
 Wheeler, William A. (— — — —), elected Vice-President, 1876, 232.
 Whigs, 136, 140, 145, 155, 157, 159.
 opposed royalty, 73.
 Whiskey Insurrection, 1791, 112.
 White House, 192.
 communications with, endangered, 193.
 White House Landing, 190.
 White, John, governor of colony, 26.
 White Plains, Washington defeated, 1776, 83.
 Whitehaven, Cumberland, Paul Jones at, 96.
 Whitney, Eli (1765-1825), and the cotton-gin, 245.
 Wilderness, battle of the, 1864, 212.
 Wilkes, Captain Charles (1801-77), takes Mason and Slidell from the *Trent*, 178.
 Wilkinson, General James (1757-1825), 125.
 William and Mary College founded, 1692, 67.
 Williamsburg, 58.
 battle, 1862, 189.
 Williams, Roger (1599-1683), 46, 47.
 banishment of, 41.
 his flight, view, 42.
 William's War, King, 1689-97, 56.
 Wilmington, Del., Swedes settle near, 1638, 51.
 Wilmington, N. C., 218.
 captured, 1864, 216.
 Wilson, Henry (1812-75), elected Vice-President, 1872, 230.
 Wilson's Creek, Mo., Federals defeated, 1861, 177.
 Winchester, Early defeated, 1864, 214.
 Windsor, trading-post established, 45.
 Winslow, Captain John A. (1811-73), his victory, 216.
 Winter quarters of the armies, January to May, 1777, 86.
 severe, 1779-80, 100.
 Winthrop, Governor John (1588-1619), founder of Boston, 41.
 portrait, 41.

- Wirz, Captain, hanged, 1865, 225.
- Wisconsin, 166.
 becomes thirtieth State, 1848, 155,
 168.
 its history, 168.
 organized as a Territory, 1836,
 168.
- Witchcraft at Salem, 11.
- Wolfe, General James (1726-59), cap-
 ture of Louisburg, 69.
 his death, 1759, 62.
 his death, view, 62.
 takes Quebec, 61-63.
- Wool, General John E. (1789-1869),
 151.
 sent to subdue insurgents,
 144.
- World believed to be round, 15.
- Worth, General William Jenkins
 (1794-1849), 112.
 at Monterey, 151.
- Wounded Knee Creek conflict, 1890,
 241.
- Wright, Governor Silas (1795-1847),
 147.
- Wyoming, 168.
 becomes forty-fourth State, 1890,
 243.
- Wyoming, Valley of, massacre, 1778,
 95.
- Y.**
- Yale College founded, 1700, 67.
- Yazoo River, Sherman at mouth of,
 185.
- Yeadley, Governor Sir George, 31.
- York, James, Duke of (1633-1701),
 19.
- York (now Toronto) attacked, 125.
 River, 193.
- Yorktown, 108.
 Cornwallis at, 103.
 siege of, 1862, 189.
 surrender at, 1781, 104, 106.
 surrender at, view, 101.







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 219 5